

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01008880 5

UNIVERSITY
OF TORONTO
LIBRARY

Toronto University Library

Presented by

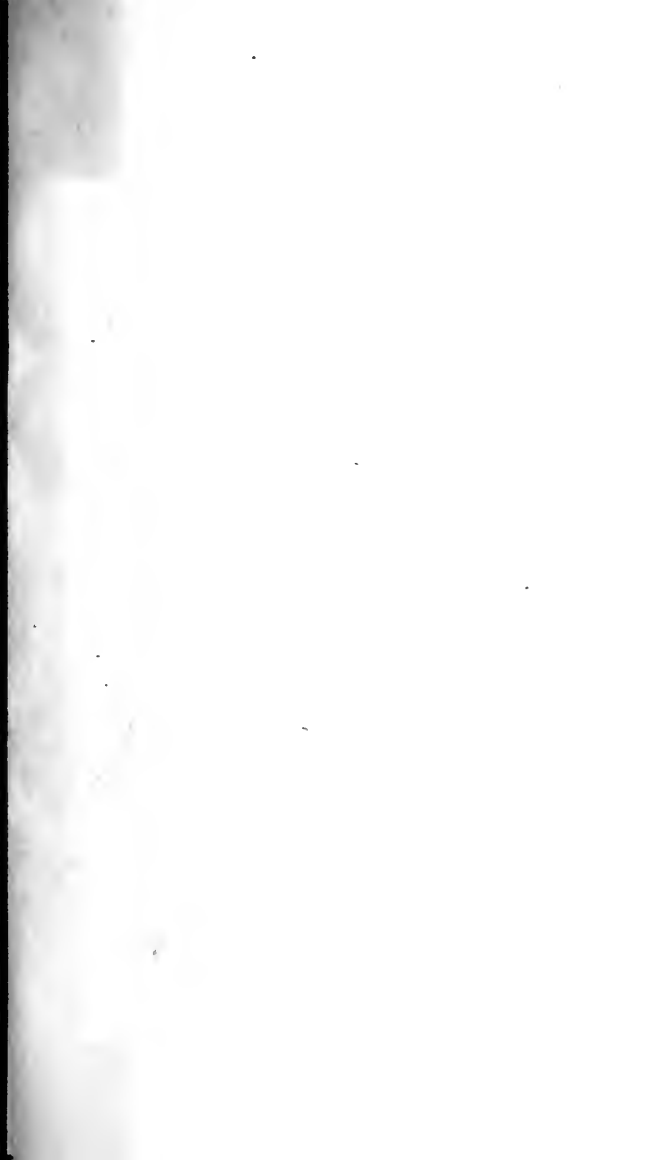
Royal Astronomical Society

through the Committee formed in

The Old Country

to aid in replacing the loss caused by

The disastrous Fire of February the 14th 1890

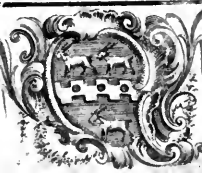


Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





To Edward
his plate is most



Louisa Maria
hum. ^{by} dedica

T. Spence

THE
HISTORY
OF THE
LIFE
OF
PETER I.
EMPEROR OF RUSSIA.

VOL. II.

By JOHN MOTTLEY, Esq;

The SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:

Printed for J. READ, in White-

M.DCC.XL.



1890

1891

1892

1893

1894

1895

1896

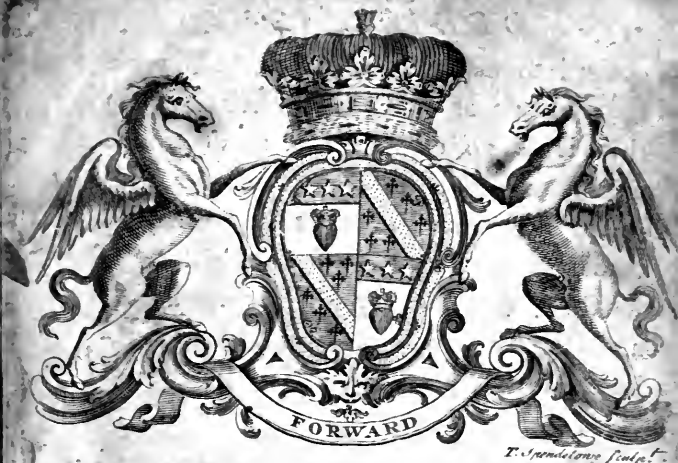
1897

1898

1899

1900

1901



TO HIS
G R A C E
THE
Duke of *Queensberry.*

MY LORD,



HAVE such Obligations to
so great a Number of Persons
of high Rank and Distinction,
for the Encouragement they
have been pleased to give to this Work by
their Subscriptions or otherwise, (for I am
obliged

DEDICATION.

obliged to many who would not allow me the Honour of publishing their Names) that it is no easy Matter to determine where to make particular Acknowledgments: And as I can pay this Compliment but to very few, I was resolved it should be to such only whose great Merits and Dignity should give me certain Assurance of having the Choice I had made approved of by every Body.

Your GRACE's Character is too well known to receive any Addition from what so obscure a Person can say of it; nor my LORD, do I pretend to have Talents sufficient to do Justice to it. That will be the Theme of Pens more equal to the noble Undertaking; and the whole Republick of Letters are indebted to your GRACE, for the Countenance and Favour you were pleased to shew to one of its most considerable Members, for whom your Kindness continued even beyond the Grave, and is most generously expressed by that beautiful Monument which your GRACE, and the DUCHESS of QUEENS-
BERRY

DEDICATION.

BERRY raised to the Memory of the late Mr. *GAY*, a Genius that was the Delight of his Countrymen, and who was admired by every one, but envy'd by none, till after his Death he received that great Honour which your *GRACE* has done to his Ashes.

I am to return Thanks to your *GRACE* not only for the Encouragement you have had the Condescension to give me on your own Account; but for the Honour of laying my humble Request before His Royal Highness the *PRINCE* of *WALES*, and obtaining his illustrious Name at the Head of the List of Subscribers prefixed to this Work.

A Favour which had been refused me by some others, but which Refusal I can no longer take amiss, since it is impossible to reflect on your *GRACE*'s courteous Manner of conferring Benefits, without being displeased at having been deprived of the Honour of approaching your *GRACE*, even by the Complaisance or good Intentions of any other not so well acquainted with that
engaging

DEDICATION.

engaging and polite Behaviour, which
stamps a double Value on the Favours you
bestow. I am,

My LORD,

with the profoundest Respect,

Your GRACE's

much obliged,

and most obedient,

humble Servant,

JOHN MOTTLEY.



THE
HISTORY
OF
PETER I.
CZAR of MUSCOVY.

BOOK I.

The CONTENTS.

The Czar offers Peace to Sweden, which is rejected. King AUGUSTUS's Manifesto preceding his Return to Poland. The Interview of the Czar and King Augustus at Thorn; of the Czar and the King of Prussia at Marienwerder. The Bombardment of Riga. The Czar's publick Entry into Moscow. The Satisfaction made for the Affront offer'd his Ambassador in London. The Marriage of the present Czarina to the Duke of Courland. Elbing taken by the Russians. Wybourg besieged and taken. Riga taken; and Dunamuden-Skantz. Pernau, Kexholm, Revel, and the whole Province of Livonia reduced to the Obedience of the Czar.



PETER so great Success as the Czar had in the Battle of *Pultowa*, there have been very few Princes besides himself, but would have insisted on high Terms of Accommodation with their vanquished Foe: But PETER the Great, who sought not

to found his Empire in Blood, but was desirous to cultivate the Arts of Peace for the Prosperity and Happiness of his People; enlarged Major-General *Meyerfeldt*, whom he had detained Prisoner for a short Time, (on the Account mentioned in the former Volume of this Work) with Permission to go to the King his Master, and sent the same King's Secretary, *Cederhielm*, to the Senate at *Stockholm*, with very moderate Proposals for a Treaty. Count *Piper* wrote Letters to the King on that Subject, at the same Time.

The Czar insisted only on the Province of *Ingria*, and Part of that of *Carelia*, which were already conquered, as a Satisfaction for the Expences of the War; the Fortrefs of *Wybourg* for a Barrier, with the Town of *Revel* in *Esthonia*, were likewise demanded, but that only with an Intention to be able to abate something of his first Demands at the Time the Negotiation was going on.

The King of *Sweden*, distressed as he was, his Troops beaten, himself an Exile in a foreign Prince's Dominions, still retained his high Spirit, or rather his Obstinacy, and wrote a Letter to Count *Piper*, in which he called these Proposals the impudent Pretensions of a foresworn Enemy, and ordered *Piper* in the haughty Style of a Conqueror, to take proper Measures that the Czar might set all his Prisoners at Liberty, agreeable to the Cartel used between other Powers at War; notwithstanding he himself could never, before this Time, be prevailed upon to establish such a Cartel, tho' the Czar had taken much Pains about it, by the Interposition of several States and Potentates.

His Czarish Majesty, finding that no Peace was to be made with this rash and implacable Enemy but by the Force of Arms, took proper Measures to continue the War, and thought it would be most effectual to carry it into the King of *Sweden*'s own Dominions. He gave fresh Orders to his Ministers residing at the Courts of *Denmark* and *Saxony*, to use their utmost Endeavours to bring the Negotiations

tions to a Conclusion for an Alliance against Charles XII. and to dispose the said Courts to enter into joint Measures with him.

He knew his own Presence would be necessary in Poland, and therefore crossed the *Borysthene*s, with the Design of being with General Goltz, and the great General *Simiowski*; but the Fatigues he had lately undergone, raised such a Fermentation in his Blood, that he fell sick at *Kiow*, and was therefore obliged to stop there for some Time: But took Care, in the Interim, to order some Regiments into Poland, to reinforce the Army of Goltz.

The Victory at *Pultowa* was so compleat and so extraordinary, that it was some Time before they could give Credit to it on the other Side the *Vistula*; but when it was no longer doubted, the Polish Partizans of the Czar, and those of the Confederacy of *Sandomir*, began to take fresh Courage: The Primate *Szembeck*, and others who had retired out of the Kingdom, had several Conferences, and sent a Deputation to King *Augustus*, to desire him to ascend the Throne. It was with no great Difficulty that he was brought to accept an Invitation of that kind, since he had before resolved to make an Attempt to recover his Crown, seeing in how great Disorder the Affairs of Sweden were, even before the Defeat of their Army at *Pultowa*. In order to which he had had several Conferences with the King of Denmark, who in his Return from a Journey to Italy, pay'd him a Visit at *Dresden*, from whence they went together to the Court of *Berlin*, where the three Kings, in several Conferences together, concerted all Things relating to the Return of King *Augustus*.

Before he entered Poland himself, he published the following long MANIFESTO, drawn up in Concert with the Czar's Plenipotentiaries, wherein he makes his coming back to the Throne a Point of Conscience, and vindicates the Conduct and Constancy of the Czar, as much as he exposes the Ambition, Obstinacy and Tyranny of the King of Sweden.

I have chose to give this Manifesto at length, that the Reader may judge of the Reasons he gave for his own Conduct, particularly with relation to the famous Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt*, and what followed upon it, which so much amazed all *Europe*, and which so highly incensed the Czar, but who, by this Time, was so well satisfy'd of the Necessity of his Affairs, which drove him to accept of any Terms for the Preservation of his People, that he was again united to him in Friendship.

WE AUGUSTUS II. by the Grace of God, King of Poland, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, *Russia*, *Prussia*, *Masovia*, *Samogitia*, *Kiovia*, *Volhynia*, *Podolia*, *Podlachia*, *Livonia*, *Smolensko*, *Severia*, and *Czenicow*; Duke of Saxony, *Fuliers*, *Cleve*, *Mons*, *Angria*, and *Westphalia*; Archi-Mareschal and Elector of the Holy Empire; Landgrave of *Thuringen*; Markgrave of *Misnia*, Upper and Lower *Lusatia*; Burgrave of *Magdeburgh*; Prince Count of *Hennebergh*; Count of *Marks Ravensbergh*, and *Barby*; Lord of *Ravestein*, &c.

Make known to all, (though it be already notorious to every Body) That in the Year 1699 we were forced to take up Arms against Sweden, in order to restore the *Freedom of Commerce*, which was one of the Conditions of the Peace of *Oliva*, and which had been stipulated for the Kingdom of *Poland*, and its Inhabitants, by the XVth Article of that Treaty. The Swedes had so far entrench'd upon the said Liberty of Trade, that after we found they had no Regard to the Complaints and Representations of our Subjects thereupon, we thought ourselves obliged in Conscience, to have Recourse to Arms, not only to make them observe that Condition before-mention'd; but also several others which they had violated, contrary to the Engagements they had enter'd into by the said Peace of *Oliva*. However, we design'd to use our Arms no otherwise than as it is allowed and practis'd among Christians; of which

‘ which our Intention we gave at first several
 ‘ Proofs. We not only endeavour’d, by gracious
 ‘ Proclamations, to recal those whom vain Fears
 ‘ had driven from the Province of *Livonia*, upon
 ‘ our Approach; but even caused Bread, and Corn
 ‘ to sow the Ground, to be distributed to those
 ‘ whom a pannick Terror had constrained to waste
 ‘ and destroy their own Goods and Lands. We
 ‘ did not reject the Proposals of Reconciliation that
 ‘ were made to us, both by the Envoy of *France*,
 ‘ who was already in the Country, and by the
 ‘ *Dutch* Minister, who arrived soon after: And
 ‘ the Complaisance we shewed on that Occasion,
 ‘ interrupted the Progress of our Arms, which were
 ‘ then attended with all the Success we could wish
 ‘ for.

‘ In the mean Time, *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden*
 ‘ meditated nothing less than to wrest the Scep-
 ‘ ter from our Hands, and oblige us to descend the
 ‘ Throne. With these Thoughts he made an Ir-
 ‘ ruption into *Poland*; and having rejected the
 ‘ Proposals that were made him, both by ourselves
 ‘ and with our Permission, by the Estates of our
 ‘ Kingdom, he made his utmost Efforts to carry the
 ‘ fatal Fireband of Sedition among our Subjects,
 ‘ and engage them in his Party. In order to gain
 ‘ his Ends, he caused Insinuations to be spread,
 ‘ That we had violated the *Pacta Conventa* (or Agree-
 ‘ ments) we had made with the Republick; and a
 ‘ Chimerical Interregnum was supposed, the law-
 ‘ ful King of *Poland* being still alive. He drew be-
 ‘ sides to *Warsaw* some Members of the Estates of
 ‘ our Kingdom, under the specious Pretence of
 ‘ treating of Peace: And although those who re-
 ‘ paired thither had received no Instructions, but
 ‘ in relation to that Affair, he endeavour’d to make
 ‘ use of their Presence to compass the impious and
 ‘ rash Design he had laid of divesting us of the
 ‘ Royal Dignity.

‘ Count *Stanislaus Lesinski*, on whose Father and
 ‘ Family we had heaped up numberless Favours;

on whom we had bestowed the Palatinate of *Poznan*; who was the main Object of our Kindness and Benevolence: In a Word, who had so often and so sacredly sworn an inviolable Fidelity to us: This very Count *Lescinski* abandon'd himself to such a Degree of Temerity and Infatuation, that he was willing to become the Instrument of the criminal Machinations that were hatching to take away the Crown from us. He had the Confidence to set up for King of the illustrious *Polish* Nation, and pretended to command many others, his Equals, not to say infinitely his Superiors; and all this against the fundamental Constitution of the Kingdom. These monstrous Designs were the Result of that diminutive Assembly, whom the Fear and Terror of the *Swedish* Army that was in the Neighbourhood, robb'd of all manner of Liberty, and which nevertheless they had the Boldness to call a Dyet of Election. But Cardinal *Radziowski*, Primate of the Kingdom, altho' he had himself not a little contributed to that criminal Design, contrary to his Allegiance and Conscience, refused, however, to assist at that chimerical Act, or be present at the vain Coronation they meditated. Those of the States of *Poland* who were there present, protested against all the Proceedings that might be made thereupon, and challenged the Laws received at all Times amongst the *Poles*, whereby all Acts of this Nature are void, and accounted absolutely null, if there were but one Opposer.

The Senators, the *Grande*es of the Kingdom, and in general, all good Patriots remain'd unshaken; nor would they violate their Faith to God, the Author of Royal Majesty, to their lawful King, and to the Laws of the Kingdom; or do any Thing derogatory of their Liberty. On the contrary, animated by a true Zeal, they caus'd, on the 28th of *July*, 1704, a Manifesto to be published in the Camp of *Landshut*; wherein, after the Example of what had been done the preceding

ceding Year at the Assembly at *Sandomir*, the pretended dethroning (as they called it) and all the Steps the ill-affected had taken in that Affair, were declared null, illegal, and criminal. By the same Manifesto, they expressed their Indignation against such Designs, protested against the Act of that forced Election; proclaimed *Lescinski*, and the Accomplices of his wicked Attempt, Traitors, Enemies of their Country, and guilty of High-Treason; confirmed the Confederacies they had entered into, in order to oppose all the unjust Efforts of the Conspirators; and engaged themselves by new Oaths inviolably to remain faithful and obedient to us: All which was still repeated and confirmed by new Decrees of the subsequent Assemblies.

There was a Conclusion (or Resolve) of the Empire, made at the Diet of *Ratisbon*, the 30th of September, 1702, confirmed by the Emperor, and by all the States of the Empire; approved by the King of Sweden himself, on Account of the Territories he possesses in Germany, by which Conclusion it is declared, *That whoever should attack or molest, in any manner whatsoever, any Elector, Prince, State, or Ally of the Empire, during the War against France, and her Adherents; shall be declared an Enemy of the Empire, and his Enterprizes looked upon as Attempts against the Emperor and the Empire themselves; and that all Electors, Princes, States, and Allies of the Empire shall be obliged to unite their Forces to oppose his Designs.* But this Conclusion was not able to withhold the King of Sweden, or hinder him from making Enterprizes against the Empire, and to carry War into our Electorate and hereditary Dominions.

The first Words the King of Sweden's Ministers addressed to our unfortunate, though innocent Subjects, were nothing but Threats of Fire and Sword: For the Declaration he published at his Camp near *Krumels*, on the 3d of September, 1706; upon his Irruption into Saxony, imported, *That whosoever should presume to sell his Houses or Lands,*

' secure his Household Furniture, or conceal under Ground
 ' his most valuable Goods, who should make the least Re-
 ' sistance, or should not readily obey the Orders of the Officers
 ' and Commissioners, such a Man, of what Condition or Rank
 ' soever, and in what Place soever he should be apprehended,
 ' or his Goods found, should be treated as an Enemy,
 ' and chastised by FIRE and SWORD. The King of
 ' Sweden had also brought along with him the Trai-
 ' tor Lescinski, accompanied with a Rabble of perfid-
 ' dious Poles.

' It is easy to judge what Fear and Terror such
 ' an unexpected Irruption struck among our Sub-
 ' jects. The forementioned Declaration, fill'd with
 ' Menaces 'till then unheard-of among Christians,
 ' which they had before their Eyes, cast them into
 ' the utmost Consternation; they durst not con-
 ' ceal any Thing they had, nor take it from the
 ' Hands of the rapacious Soldier. A Word, Ges-
 ' ture, the least Delay were charged upon them as
 ' Crimes; they were treated as refractory and con-
 ' tumacious; the Fear of losing their Lives by the
 ' Sword, and of seeing their Goods and Possessions
 ' destroy'd by Fire, kept them in perpetual Alarms.

' Things being at this Pass, who can put an ill
 ' Construction on the paternal Compassion which
 ' the Misery and Calamities of our Subjects raised
 ' in our Breast? And besides, we were powerfully
 ' solicited by another Consideration, which was our
 ' Apprehension that the said Irruption should kin-
 ' dle the War in the very Heart of the Empire,
 ' and interrupt the successful Progress of the Con-
 ' federate Arms against France. These Considera-
 ' tions obliged us to name Plenipotentiaries, and we
 ' fix'd our Choice upon such Persons, as on other
 ' Occasions had given us some Proofs of their Fi-
 ' delity and Capacity, and of whom we had the
 ' more Reason to entertain the better Hopes in
 ' this Juncture, in that they had offered them-
 ' selves, and earnestly desired to be employed in
 ' so nice an Affair. Hereupon we gave them In-
 ' structions; ordered them to attend our Enemy;

and

and for the Speedier restoring the Tranquility so ardently wish'd for, and to shew to our Plenipotentiaries themselves the good Opinion we had of their Fidelity and Abilities, we trusted them with Blank-Signs, which they might use in this Negotiation, if Occasion required. But we inserted this Clause in the full Powers we furnished them with, and which we delivered to them at the Camp near *Novogrodeck*, August 16, 1706, THAT THEY SHOULD TREAT UPON EQUITABLE CHRISTIAN CONDITIONS. A Clause which has been since often repeated by the *Suedes* themselves. Now all the World may judge whether they have observed that *Christian Equity*. For there is not one Article in that Treaty, which bears the Name of a Treaty of Peace, and was concluded at *Ranstadt* by our said Plenipotentiaries, on the 24th of *September*, 1706, that has the least Shadow either of Equity or Christianity. This was therefore the Reason why those wretched and imprudent Negotiators of the Peace, durst not deliver to, or lay before us, the Treaty they had concluded, such as it was published afterwards. On the contrary, *George Ernestus Pfingsten*, who repaired to us at *Petricow*, and was preparing to return into *Saxony* the 20th of *October*, had the Confidence to assure us, That nothing was yet concluded; That the Conditions were not agreed on, but only proposed; That although the *Suedes* insisted on some that seemed too hard, it would be easy to mitigate the same, upon our Arrival in *Saxony*, which he was persuaded of, and could prove by his Minutes; though 'tis certain, as appeared by the Sequel, that they kept none: And this is the more evident, in that the Treaty had already been signed on both Sides, the 14th of *September*, that is, before he endeavoured to persuade us of the Truth of the Assurances before-mentioned. Moreover, they maliciously, without our Knowledge, and contrary to our Intention, misused one of the Blanks we had given them,

‘ to ratify the Articles of a fraudulent Treaty, which
 ‘ we had not even seen. And to make the Thing
 ‘ the more plausible, the said *Pfingsten* caused the
 ‘ Ratification to be dated the same Day he parted
 ‘ from us, and had endeavoured to make us believe
 ‘ Things so contrary to Truth.

‘ These false Suggestions with which they de-
 ‘ ceived us, and the vain Hopes they gave us, rob-
 ‘ bed us of all the Fruit we ought to expect from
 ‘ the Victory we gained at *Kalish*, the 29th of *Octo-*
 ‘ *ber*, with our own Troops, seconded by the Va-
 ‘ lour of those of his Czarish Majesty, and with the
 ‘ Divine Assistance, over General *Meyerfeldt*, who
 ‘ thought to have surprized us, with an Army con-
 ‘ sisting of *Swedes*, and some *Polish* Rebels. We
 ‘ therefore did not pursue a Victory, from which
 ‘ we might have drawn most considerable Advan-
 ‘ tages, but gave the King of *Sweden* fresh Testi-
 ‘ monies of the same Generosity with which he had
 ‘ acted during the whole Course of the War we had
 ‘ maintained with him. We set at Liberty General
 ‘ *Meyerfeldt*, and all the other Prisoners we had
 ‘ taken: We caused their Baggage and Equipage to
 ‘ be restored to them: After which we hastened
 ‘ our Return into *Saxony*, trusting to the Assurance
 ‘ that had been given us, that Things would be
 ‘ adjusted amicably, and consonant to the Laws of
 ‘ *Equity* and *Christianity*, when we should have con-
 ‘ ferred with the King of *Sweden*, and that that
 ‘ Prince would not be insensible of the Ties of the
 ‘ same Blood which united us.

‘ Upon our Arrival, we were entertain’d with
 ‘ fair Words and Promises, but it was not difficult
 ‘ for us to discover at the Bottom an almost incre-
 ‘ dible Barbarity. Our Plenipotentiaries began then
 ‘ their Lamentations, and acknowledged, tho’ too
 ‘ late, that they had been surprized and over-
 ‘ reach’d.

‘ Things being at this Pass, what Course was
 ‘ there for us to take? We saw ourselves sur-
 ‘ rounded with Enemies, and at their Mercy: We
 ‘ had

‘ had let slip from our Hands all the Fruit we might
‘ have expected from our Victory, and we had lost
‘ the improving the advantageous Offers that were
‘ made us; that fine Treaty of Peace having al-
‘ ready been made publick throughout all *Europe*.
‘ It was not therefore in our Power to refuse pub-
‘ lishing the Declarations of the 9-20th of *Janu-*
‘ *ary*, 1707, which the King of *Sweden* wrested
‘ from us. But not being able to delay our just
‘ Resentment, we caused to be arrested, and com-
‘ mitted to the Fortress of *Sørnestien*, the pernicious
‘ Contrivers of the Treaty, having deprived them
‘ of their Dignities and Offices; and the Sentence
‘ they have justly deserved will be pronounced
‘ against them.

‘ How hard and unjust soever were the Condi-
‘ tions of Peace that had been imposed upon us;
‘ the King of *Sweden* did not even observe the En-
‘ gagements he had entered into. To be convinc’d
‘ of it, ’tis but reading the first Article of the Trea-
‘ ty, importing, *That causing all Hostilities to cease, they*
‘ *mutually promise not to do any thing by themselves or*
‘ *others, secretly or openly, directly or indirectly, that may*
‘ *prejudice one another; not to give any Assistance one*
‘ *against the other, under any Pretence whatsoever, but*
‘ *rather endeavour and do for the future, whatsoever may*
‘ *advance each other’s Honour and Advantage, &c.*

‘ Moreover, by the XVth Article of the same
‘ Treaty, it was only stipulated, *That the King of*
‘ *Sweden should be allowed to put his Troops into Win-*
‘ *ter Quarters in Saxony, and exact Subsistence for them*
‘ *there.* But the said Winter Quarters were pro-
‘ tracted to the middle of Summer, under various
‘ Pretences, and by unjust Demands, which ’twas
‘ impossible to satisfy; nor did they cease ’till the
‘ Differences which arose between the Emperor
‘ and the King of *Sweden* were adjusted by Means
‘ of Count *Wenceslaus de Wratislaw*, his Imperial Ma-
‘ jesty’s Envoy. Thus these Winter Quarters lasted
‘ above one Year: For the King of *Sweden* having
‘ pass’d the *Oder* at *Steinau*, made an Irruption into
‘ our

our Dominions the 1st of September, 1706, and did not go out of them, in order to re-enter *Poland* the same Way, 'till the 19th of September the following Year; and our Subjects were even obliged to carry, as far as *Poland*, the Forage he had provided for his Army.

We had already, before the Spring, perform'd all the Conditions of the Treaty according to the King of *Sweden*'s Request, by Letters which he caused to be delivered to us in the Month of *February*, 1707, by his Secretary *Cederhielm*. We had set at Liberty all the *Swedish* Prisoners we had taken at the Battle of *Kalish*, though we had received in Exchange none of the Men belonging to us, who had been carried Prisoners into *Sweden*; for which, however, General *Meyerfeldt* had engaged his Word, by a Promise he gave in Writing, when we set him, and those who were Prisoners with him, at Liberty. We were even forced to give up as Prisoners to the *Swedes*, such of our Soldiers and Subjects, whom they had taken at the Battle of *Fravenstadt*, and whom we had rescued at that of *Kalish*.

Although we were not in the least engag'd to it by the Treaty of Peace, yet, at the Desire of the King of *Sweden*, we condescended to write with our own Hand, a Letter to *Stanislaus*, wherein we treated him in the same manner, and gave him the same Titles as were allowed him by the King of *Sweden*. Our Intention was to testify by this Step, That we should not neglect any Means that were thought proper to ease *Saxony*, and to deliver it from the Calamities it groan'd under.

In the last Place, we yielded, as far as it lay in our Power, to the repeated Instances, which, contrary to our Expectation, were made to us in the Month of *June*, in the same Year; though not without great Grief and Struggle in our Heart.

‘ But yet we got nothing by all this: Nor had the Steps we have mentioned; or many others, which we pass over in Silence, any Effect.

‘ Although we had caus’d our Garrisons to march out of *Cracow* and *Tycorin*, two Towns of *Poland*, towards the Beginning of the Year 1707, yet those which the King of *Sweden* had put into the Castle of *Leipsic* and *Wirtemberg*, did not evacuate those Places before the whole Army retir’d, contrary to the Tenor of the XXIIId Article of the Treaty.

‘ The excessive Sums of Money which they forced from our poor Subjects, instead of abating after the Conclusion of the Peace, did rather daily increase; and after the Treaty was sign’d, they rais’d yet greater Contributions within the Space of one Month, than could reasonably have been exacted in *Sixteen*, which could not fail entirely exhausting the Country. And indeed, upon a true Computation of the Contributions the *Swedes* have exacted in *Saxony*, under the Name of *Shares* and *Rations*, it is found that they have suck’d out of that Province 23 Millions of Crowns (that is above five Millions Sterling) without including the Damages and Losses occasioned by the Licentiousness of the Soldiers, and their cruel Executions. Now did these Words of the Treaty, *Where-withal to subsist them*, signify the immense Sums of Money, and vast Quantities of Forage, which the *Swedes* exacted without either Bounds or Measure? Besides it is manifest, that when it was agreed that the *Swedish* Army should be maintained during the Winter Quarters, it was understood in the same Condition it was in at the Conclusion of the Treaty, and not as it was since augmented. ’Tis certain that the excessive Contributions that were rais’d in *Saxony*, might have been sufficient to maintain near 100,000 Men: And yet by the second Article of the Treaty, all Recompenses for the Expence of the War, were expressly renounc’d.

‘ Was it stipulated, That the *Swedish* Army should be doubled in our Dominions? That Men should be levied there, and the Country exhausted of Inhabitants? The Soldiers who deserted from our Fortresses and Garrisons with their Arms and Equipage, were publickly list’d by the *Swedes*; who had the Boldness to put upon us the Affront of tearing off, on several Occasions, and in different Places, particularly in *Lower Lusatia*, the Edicts we had caused to be affixed against Deserters, according to Custom.

‘ There was not one Word in the Treaty whereby we were engag’d to maintain that Croud of *Poles* who accompany’d *Stanislaus*, much less *Stanislaus* himself, whom they had dar’d to chuse for their Leader; nevertheless Money and Forage were violently wrested from our Subjects for their Entertainment: Besides which, those Banditti robb’d and plunder’d with such Licentiousness as grew daily worse and worse; insomuch that the King of *Sweden* was himself oblig’d to publish an Edict the 12th of *October*, 1706, for preventing those Disorders, and allowing such Robbers to be imprison’d.

‘ The *Swedish* Army was no less burthensome to our *Electorate* and Dominions: For the very Places that had been burnt down were no more exempted from Contribution than those that remain’d entire; and the Inhabitants were even oblig’d to pay for desolate Places, from whence we ourselves received no Taxes long before: Nor were the Places that had been burnt by the Fault of the *Swedes* themselves, which often happen’d, free from Contributions, of which we have a sad Instance in what happened at *Bebra*, a Town in the Circle of *Thuringia*: The *Swedes* set Fire to the Four Corners of the Town, because the Inhabitants had not furnish’d in Time all the Forage demanded of them: And what is most abominable in this barbarous Proceeding, those of the Inhabitants who say’d themselves in the Churches,

‘ think

‘ thinking they might find a secure Refuge near
‘ the Altar, were dragged from the sacred Sanc-
‘ tuary, and driven away with a Whip. We pass
‘ over what has happen’d in other Places, the
‘ Ruins whereof are sad Monuments of their fatal
‘ Destiny.

‘ We had offer’d to take upon us the collecting
‘ the Contributions, hoping thereby to prevent
‘ the Ruin with which our Subjects were threatned
‘ by the unequal and disproportionate Method in
‘ which the *Swedes* levied the Impositions called
‘ *Steure-Schock*, but we were not allow’d to do it.
‘ It was likewise our Desire that the general Im-
‘ positions call’d *Excises* should still remain on the
‘ same Foot as before, that the Sums exacted from
‘ our Subjects might be more easily gather’d, and
‘ their Poverty relieved: But the *Swedes* not con-
‘ tented with the entire suppressing of the said
‘ Excises, turn’d out of their Posts those who were
‘ appointed to collect the same, abused them several
‘ Ways, and often dragg’d them to Prison. Thus
‘ notwithstanding the Peace that had been con-
‘ cluded, we found ourselves still deprived of all
‘ our Natural Rights over our Subjects.

‘ It was not thought sufficient for the King
‘ of *Sweden*, to issue out Orders in his Quarters,
‘ for the Raising of such excessive Contributions,
‘ but his Officers must also tax our Subjects at their
‘ Pleasure, and exact the *Shares* and *Rations* they
‘ thought fit. And if any of those Officers were
‘ adjudg’d to restore the Overplus, he ever found
‘ some Pretence or other to evade it, and to fru-
‘ strate those who were entitled to the Restitu-
‘ tion, and it happen’d sometimes, that those who
‘ made Complaints of this Nature were expos’d to
‘ all manner of Insults.

‘ The *Swedes* were never satisfy’d either with
‘ the Weight or Measure; to waste the more
‘ Forage, they litter’d their Horses with Hay:
‘ No Regard was shewn to our Officers, Judges,
‘ or Magistrates, whose Persons were no where
‘ safe

safe, but rather often dragg'd to Prison, on various Pretences. If in any Corporation any Man was more substantial than the rest, he was sure to be imprison'd, and oblig'd to pay for such as were not able.

Neither the Respect due to Churches, nor the Sanctity of Holy-Days, were Protection against Insults. Persons and Places that had already furnish'd their Assessments, were forc'd to pay for those that had not done it. Cloaths, Beds, and other Household Furniture were taken away, and sold to the *Jews* purposely sent for from *Bohemia*, hardly for the fourth Part of their Value. How many of our Subjects, disregarding the Salvation of their Souls, have had Recourse to the dismal Extremity of laying violent Hands upon themselves, to free themselves at once from the Torments and Sufferings to which they were expos'd?

'Tis not to be thought what the *Swedes* exacted at their Departure. As if they had the Property of all, they demanded and took away the best Horses they could find, either to mount them, or to carry their Baggage; they either drove away Cattle, or exacted the Value thereof. They had before levied great Sums of Money, to buy Horses for their Artillery, Cloth, Tents, Bisket, and many other Things of that Nature; they forc'd our Subjects to follow them, not only as far as *Poland*, but even to *Ukrania*, from whence Part of them are not yet return'd; they got together numerous Drovers of Oxen, out of which they chose the fattest, which they carried away: We pass over in Silence Abundance of Exorbitancies of this Kind.

Nor could the King of *Sweden* himself deny, that all the Excesses before mentioned, were actually committed, since we acquainted him with the same by two Letters, one of the 1st, the other of the 12th, of *August*, 1707. But in his Answer of the 9th of the same Month to our first

first Letters, he alledg'd no other Excuse, than that it was impossible to maintain so long so numerous an Army, as his, without burthening the Country.

It was necessary to mention all these Instances, to let the whole World know how we had been dealt with, what Miseries and Calamities our Subjects (who expected quite different Fruits from Peace) have undergone, and how the King of Sweden has violated the Engagements he had entered into.

To this we shall add, That our Adversary, contrary to the Sixth Article of the Treaty, has divested many *Poles* of the Dignities and Offices they possessed in *Poland*, and in the great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and which we had bestow'd upon them before the Time prefix'd by the Treaty, viz. before the 7th of February, 1704.

Upon the whole Matter we are perswaded, That all Men of Sense in the World, have look'd with Indignation on so hard and cruel a Treaty, in which such unreasonable Conditions were impos'd upon us; a Treaty besides, which was dictated to our Plenipotentiaries; which they sign'd contrary to their Orders, and the Restriction inserted in their full Powers, not to treat but upon EQUITABLE and CHRISTIAN CONDITIONS. We are likewise perswaded, that all sensible Persons have reckon'd that Treaty of Peace among those Engagements which a Man is not bound to keep.

All the Conditions that were exacted by that fatal Treaty, are not only derogatory from the Royal Dignity and Honour, which ought to be as dear as Life itself; but besides, they are inconsistent with Equity, the Customs and Laws of Nations, and attended with insuperable Difficulties; so that they ought to be look'd upon as null and void.

Was ever any King, legally anointed, pressed or compelled to acknowledge as a true King, one of

of his rebel Subjects; who had no other Merit
 or Title to justify his Pretensions, but his Dis-
 obedience to his rightful Sovereign, contrary to
 the Oath he had so often taken, and his criminal
 Affection to the Enemy of his Country, an In-
 truder obnoxious to the Laws and Constitutions
 of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and whose Election
 was only owing to the Enemy of his Country,
 and attended with Force and Violence? Was it
 ever heard in any Age, that a King should take
 off from his own Head a Diadem lawfully ac-
 quir'd, and place it on that of a rebel Subject?
 Or that he should abandon to such a Man's am-
 bitious Lust, States who never swerv'd from their
 Loyalty, and who ever merited well of their
 Country? Besides, is it in the Power of a King
 of *Poland* to anul and abrogate Laws and Decrees
 made in the general Dyets, Councils of the Senate,
 and other grand Assemblies without the Consent
 of the States? Is it in his Power to abdicate the
 Crown, and give up his Right to another, who
 is unacquainted with these Inconsistencies with
 the Constitution of the Kingdom of *Poland*?
 And yet these were the very Things that were
 requir'd, and exacted from us by the second Article
 of the Treaty.

Moreover, by what Laws, or upon what Score
 was the King of *Sweden* allowed by the tenth
 Article, to detain within his rugged Dominions
 after the Conclusion of the Peace of *Randstadt*, free
 Natives of *Saxony*, whom the dubious Fortune of
 War had made his Prisoners; several of whom
 have still Families and Habitations in our Territo-
 ries; and whom, if he pleases, he may use as
 Slaves; when by the Ninth and Tenth Articles,
 we were not permitted to detain any of our *Swedish*
 or *Polish* Prisoners.

'Tis certainly hard, and sometimes very diffi-
 cult to break the Ties that unite Allies; how-
 ever, this is not without Example. But for the
 King of *Sweden* to exact from us the delivering
 up

up of a Minister of one of our Allies, whom we kept for no other Purpose than to send him back as soon as possible to his Master, and who was afterwards so cruelly put to Death, and to insist, that we should also give up our Auxiliaries as Prisoners of War, as was stipulated by the eleventh and twelfth Articles, 'tis what we find no Example of in History, and which cannot but strike the Reader with Horror.

Nor was this all. It is certainly an Insult upon the Majesty of Heaven itself, presumptuously to arrogate to one's self an Authority over Consciences, which belong to God alone: But not to mention the King of Sweden's withdrawing from our Obedience, Subjects who had ever been faithful, and thereby compelling them to Perjury; we only desire to know whether any one in the World, had a Right to oblige us to falsify the repeated Oaths by which we had engaged our Conscience? Had we not sworn according to the *Pacta Conventa*, to reign as long as we lived, and never to abdicate the Crown, but with Consent of the States? Was there not a particular Constitution of the Kingdom, made after the Abdication of *Casimir*, importing, that no King of *Poland* should ever be allow'd to endeavour his Abdication, or quit the Crown, without having first assembled the whole Republick for that Purpose? We had confirmed that Oath in the General Assembly of the *Postpolite Rusenie*, and had solemnly promis'd by a particular Decree, that we will never lay down the Royal Dignity, nor make a separate Peace with the King of *Sweden*. We had entred into the same Engagements at the Dyet of *Lublin*, 1703, and in the Confederate Assembly of *Sandomir*, 1704. The Oath was couched under these Terms: *In whatsoever Manner it shall please God to dispose of the Republick, we will never abandon her, but will rather defend her as long as we live, and at the Expence of our Blood. We will never consent to any Partition,*

‘ or separate Conditions of Peace. This is what we
 ‘ engage to observe religiously by a solemn Oath, from
 ‘ which none but God himself can set us free.

‘ The Swedes, who had been anxiously careful
 ‘ in the drawing up the Articles of the Treaty of
 ‘ *Alt-Ransstadt*, to insert and express in the sixth
 ‘ Article, all the Decrees and Statutes, commonly
 ‘ called *Landa*, which had been made since the 5th
 ‘ of *February*, 1704, for the Preservation of our
 ‘ Royal Person and Dignity, Laws of the King-
 ‘ dom, and publick Liberty, omitted however, (as
 ‘ it were by a particular Direction of Providence)
 ‘ the Decree made at *Landsbut* by the whole Re-
 ‘ publick, after the pretended Election of *Lescinski*.

‘ This being the true Case of the whole Matter,
 ‘ let now all the World judge whether we can in
 ‘ Justice, and with a safe Conscience, stand to a
 ‘ Treaty dictated to our Commissioners by Force
 ‘ and Fear, at a Juncture when our Affairs were
 ‘ in a very ill Posture? It is Matter of Wonder
 ‘ how the King of *Sweden* could demand such
 ‘ Things of us, and therefore he ought to thank
 ‘ himself for inserting such Conditions in the
 ‘ Treaty as must be accounted *Impossibilities*. Nay,
 ‘ did he not thereby tacitly confess, That he was
 ‘ at Liberty not to observe a Treaty which he
 ‘ made with a Prince whose Condition he could
 ‘ not be ignorant of, since it was known to all
 ‘ the World?

‘ It is a Maxim in Morality, *That no Man is*
 ‘ *obliged to Impossibilities*. Now, ought not these
 ‘ Things to be accounted impossible, which are
 ‘ contrary to the *Will of God, Faith, Conscience,*
 ‘ *Honour, Honesty, and good Manners?* There is no
 ‘ Man who has a Spark of right Reason, but
 ‘ reckons we are not bound by the forementioned
 ‘ Engagement.

‘ Those who had projected the Treaty, knew it
 ‘ in their Consciences; and so it came about, that
 ‘ in the second Article they endeavour to throw
 ‘ off all Pretence to Right, to palliate in some De-
 ‘ gree,

‘ gree, their Injustice from the Eyes of the World.
 ‘ But though Truth may sometimes suffer an Eclipse,
 ‘ yet it can never be entirely overwhelmed in
 ‘ Darkneſs.

‘ We are in this Place obliged to extol, with
 ‘ due Praise, the great Conſtancy of our Friend
 ‘ and Brother, the Czar of *Muscovy*. We muſt
 ‘ alſo do Juſtice to the Fidelity of the illuſtrious
 ‘ States of the Kingdom of *Poland*, which they
 ‘ have inviolably preſerved to us, ever ſince the
 ‘ Confederacy of *Sandomir*. Our Friend, Brother,
 ‘ and Ally, the States and faithful Subjects of
 ‘ our Kingdom, call, invite, and ſolicite us; and
 ‘ even our own Conſcience admoniſhes us, not to
 ‘ uſe any longer Delays. Nothing therefore re-
 ‘ mains for us to do but to reſtate ourſelf in
 ‘ the Poſſeſſion of a Good made over to us, by
 ‘ God and Right. For which End, after ſeveral
 ‘ Negotiations, we ſometime ſince renewed and
 ‘ ſtrengthened, by ſtricter Ties, the Friendſhip
 ‘ and Alliance between us and his Czarish Ma-
 ‘ jeſty.

‘ We do likewise acknowledge herein, that it
 ‘ was not in our Power to abdicate (without the
 ‘ Conſent of the Republick, which was not duly
 ‘ convened hereupon) the Crown of *Poland*, the
 ‘ Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and the other Pro-
 ‘ vinces thereunto belonging, which we lawfully
 ‘ hold of God and the People. And hence it
 ‘ naturally follows, That the Act of Abdication,
 ‘ dated at *Petricow*, *October 20, 1706*, with which
 ‘ they did likewise ſurreptitiouſly ſully and fill up
 ‘ one of our Blanks, is null and void. We take
 ‘ therefore what God’s Providence has given
 ‘ us, and what belongs to us of Right.

‘ Farthermore, we declare by this preſent Mani-
 ‘ feſto, that though we have received many In-
 ‘ juries from the King of *Sweden*; though our
 ‘ Subjects have been very ill uſed by him; though
 ‘ our Electorate and other Dominions, have ſuffered
 ‘ great Damage by his Means; and though the
 ‘ King

‘ King himself has infringed the pretended Treaty
 ‘ of *Alt-Ranstadt* : Nevertheless, our principal De-
 ‘ sign is, to re-establish ourself in the firm Pos-
 ‘ session of the Kingdom of *Poland*, the Great
 ‘ Duchy of *Lithuania*, and other Provinces there-
 ‘ unto belonging, to which we have a rightful
 ‘ Title ; to restore Tranquility in our Kingdom ;
 ‘ not to abandon the Republick, and to second
 ‘ our faithful Ally in his just Enterprizes.

‘ We therefore wish and hope, that the King
 ‘ of *Sweden*, upon due Recollection, and weighing
 ‘ the Divine and Human Reasons which we have
 ‘ on our Side, will undertake nothing to hinder
 ‘ the Execution of our Design, and those of ours
 ‘ who have kept their Faith to us ever since the
 ‘ Confederacy of *Sendomir*. But if the King of
 ‘ *Sweden* should persist in opposing us, and still
 ‘ thwart our Design, we take all the Earth to wit-
 ‘ ness that he will be the Author of all the Evils
 ‘ that may ensue ; since we only endeavour to pre-
 ‘ serve a Dignity which we received from God :
 ‘ That in such a Case the King of *Sweden* ought
 ‘ to blame none but himself, if we oblige him to
 ‘ repair the Damages, and make good the Wrongs
 ‘ which we and ours have suffered, or shall suffer ;
 ‘ and to give us due Satisfaction.

‘ As for the rest, we hope, that all Kings, Elec-
 ‘ tors, Princes, and Christian States will on this
 ‘ Occasion, give us Proofs of their Love of Justice ;
 ‘ that they will consider of how pernicious Con-
 ‘ sequence to all, this Example of the *Dethrone-*
 ‘ *ment* that was projected, may be ; that they
 ‘ will look upon such an Attempt with Horror ;
 ‘ and that they will not only, not oppose us in
 ‘ our just Enterprize, but even lend us their Assist-
 ‘ ance therein. We hope this the rather because
 ‘ we promise never to abandon the Princes in
 ‘ Alliance against *France* ; but firmly adhere to
 ‘ the Treaties we have made with them, and not
 ‘ to recall from their Armies any of our Troops,
 ‘ as long as those Treaties shall last. We farther
 ‘ declare,

‘ declare, that we have no Design to invade the
‘ Provinces which the King of *Sweden* possesses
‘ in the Empire.

‘ And as you, our most dearly beloved Senators,
‘ Grandees, and Palatines of the Kingdom of
‘ *Poland*, the Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and
‘ Provinces depending thereon, who since the Con-
‘ federacy of *Sandomir* have always maintain’d,
‘ with so much Fortitude and Courage, the Glory
‘ and Liberty of the Republick of *Poland*, per-
‘ severe in the Affection you have always shewn
‘ to your Country: Recal to your Minds those
‘ noble Words of the Decree made with unanimous
‘ Consent at *Grodno*, for FAITH, the LAW, and
‘ the KING. Consider how religiously we have
‘ always observed the Laws of the Kingdom since
‘ our Reign over you; and how the precious
‘ Liberty of the *Poles*, so renowned and famous
‘ throughout the World, is trampled under Foot
‘ by foreign Soldiers, to the Reproach of the
‘ whole Nation; how it is enslav’d by a Man
‘ much inferior to most of you; whose Will is
‘ entirely over-rul’d by that of a foreign Prince.

‘ Join us therefore, and our most dear Ally;
‘ unite your Forces with ours, and throw off the
‘ insupportable Burthen under which you have
‘ groan’d so many Years; this is the only Method
‘ you can take to preserve the ancient Liberty of
‘ your Country; and the only Means to retrieve
‘ your Commerce; without this it is impossible for
‘ your Republick to subsist.

‘ In order to this we are preparing to come and
‘ meet you very shortly in *Poland*. God bless
‘ and prosper our Undertakings. We put our
‘ whole Trust in his Favour and Assistance.

‘ Wherefore, as our principal Design is to restore
‘ the Tranquility of the Kingdom of *Poland*, the
‘ Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and the Provinces
‘ thereunto belonging, we do out of our fatherly
‘ Affection advise all such as have been of the
‘ contrary Party, and have offended the Majesty of
‘ God,

‘ GOD, and that which we hold of him to return
 ‘ to the good Way, repent of their Crimes, and
 ‘ come in to their lawful Sovereign. We grant
 ‘ them three Months Time to return to their
 ‘ bounden Duty, and promise toobliterate and for-
 ‘ get all that is past, and to receive them to our
 ‘ Favour; provided that within that Time they
 ‘ give us true Marks of their Obedience and
 ‘ Fidelity.

‘ But if on the contrary they despise this our
 ‘ paternal Admonition, let them even blame them-
 ‘ selves when we shall treat them with the utmost
 ‘ Rigour, and punish them as Enemies and Trai-
 ‘ tors to their Country, by Executions, Confisca-
 ‘ tions, and other Penalties as may be inflicted
 ‘ according to the Laws of the Land, already in
 ‘ Force, upon such as are guilty of a Crime like
 ‘ theirs. But we wish, with all the Earnestness we
 ‘ are capable of, we may not be forced to come to
 ‘ that Extremity.

‘ In Witness whereof we have sign’d with our
 ‘ own Hands the present Manifesto, and have also
 ‘ affix’d thereto our Royal and Electoral Seal.

Sign’d

Done at *Dresden*,
August 8, 1709.

AUGUSTUS, Rex.

King AUGUSTUS also published the following
 circular Letter :

‘ **W**E AUGUSTUS II. by the Grace of GOD,
 ‘ King of *Poland*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, &c.
 ‘ to all and every one this may concern, and in parti-
 ‘ cular to the most Venerable, the Venerable in JESUS
 ‘ CHRIST; the most Illustrious, Magnificent, and
 ‘ Generous Senators, States, and Officers of the
 ‘ Nobility; and to all the Inhabitants of the King-
 ‘ dom of *Poland* and Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, of
 ‘ what Condition soever they be, we make known
 ‘ what

what follows: You may have easily understood from our Proceedings, though we did not declare it, that although through a hard, but unavoidable Necessity, we were obliged to absent ourselves from you with the Body, yet you always remained in our Heart: However, seeing that God who has been moved with Compassion on one Part for our Sufferings and Misfortunes, and provoked on the other, by the excessive Pride of our Enemies, begins to promise more favourable Days to the Kingdom of *Poland*, and seeing on the other Hand, that in maintaining the Confederation of *Sandomir* in all its Parts, you have used your utmost Endeavours for preserving the Republick in the same Condition in which we left it, according to the Example of true and faithful *Polanders*, who have on all Occasions expressed their Loyalty to their Kings; and, lastly, seeing that after an Heroical Patience, and so long a Trial, you are continually exhorting us to return and resume the Government of the Kingdom of *Poland*, we on our Part being no less desirous than you, or any Member of the Republick, to express our paternal Affection and Fidelity, being so indispensably obliged thereunto by the *Pacta Conventa*, that according to the express Terms thereof, it is not left in our Power, although we should have a Mind to it, to renounce a Crown which was so lawfully set upon our Head; inso-much that whatever has been done contrary thereunto is to be looked upon as null and void, as you have declared in the Dyets of *Leopold* and *Lublin*; therefore we are returned into *Poland*, to assert and defend the Honour of the Crown. And we declare by these Presents, that as we have therein no other Aim, than chiefly to maintain the Holy Orthodox Faith, defend the ancient Rights and Privileges of the Nation, and preserve the Bounds of the Kingdom; of all which we are ready to give full Assurances in the next Assembly or Council, by confirming the *Pacta*

‘ *Conventa* as to the Points aforesaid, according to
 ‘ the Desire of the States. Therefore we earnestly
 ‘ invite all such as are faithful to us, and adhere
 ‘ to our Majesty, either Burghers or Military Men,
 ‘ to assist us, and in this we think to give them
 ‘ Proofs of our paternal Gratitude. At the same
 ‘ Time, we offer our Clemency and paternal Af-
 ‘ fection to all those who before we left the King-
 ‘ dom, or since, have quitted our Party, upon any
 ‘ Pretence whatsoever; representing unto them,
 ‘ that unless they are willing, through a desperate
 ‘ Attempt, to expose the Republick to a general
 ‘ Subversion, they have no Reason to decline the
 ‘ accepting this Act of Indemnity, being willing
 ‘ to forget their Offences, and promising to receive
 ‘ them into our Favour and Protection. Further-
 ‘ more, we assure the States of the Republick;
 ‘ That in the Passage and Quartering of our Troops,
 ‘ we shall keep them under an exact Discipline,
 ‘ and will have all possible Regard to the Estates
 ‘ of the Clergy and others, as long as the War
 ‘ will continue; and after the Conclusion thereof,
 ‘ which we pray to God to hasten, we promise upon
 ‘ our Royal Word, to send them, without Delay,
 ‘ out of the Kingdom, being willing wholly to
 ‘ conform ourselves therein to the Intentions of
 ‘ the Republick. We comamand all Officers, Civil
 ‘ and Military, and others, to cause these Presents
 ‘ to be read and published in all Places.

Signed,

Given *August 1,*
1709.

AUGUSTUS, *Rex.*

During his Czarish Majesty's Illness at *Kiew*, he
 sent some Regiments into *Poland*, as hath been said
 before, to join General *Goltz*, and ordered others to
 march to *Riga*, and block up that Place. On his
 Recovery which was soon, he set out himself to exe-
 cute his Designs; and learnt on the Road, that Ma-
 jor-

Major-General *Crassau* and King *Stanislaus*, upon the News of the Defeat of the *Swedish* Army, had presently retired to the Frontiers of *Pomerania*.

His Czarish Majesty having renewed his Friendship and Alliance with King *Augustus*, arrived at *Lublin* on the 5th of *September*, with the Hereditary Prince and several Persons of Distinction; the same Evening, the Princes *Menzikoff*, *Gallowin*, and *Dolgoruki*, the *Sieur Oginski Velt-Mareschal* of *Lithuania*, and several other Generals, arrived also in the same Town; as did the next Day the Velt-Mareschal *Goltz*, having left the Army under his Command, at a small Distance, on the other Side the River. This General was very favourably received by the Czar, who the next Day review'd his Army. His Majesty held a Council here, when a thousand Dragoons were order'd to be detached to go towards *Warsaw*, to secure some Posts on the Road, and 400 more were sent to take a Post on the *Vistula*. From hence his Majesty thought proper to publish the following DECLARATION, summoning all those of the adverse Party, to come in and unite themselves with the *Republick*, and their lawful King, within the Space of four Weeks.

PETER I. by the Grace of God, Czar, and sole Hereditary Lord of *Russia*, to all and singular, but especially the Nobility, Gentry, and Military Officers, and to all others who are in the Service and receive Pay, as well within *Poland* as without, either in the Crown-Army, or that of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, and at present adhere to the opposite Side, we make known and testify: Whereas the supream Ruler of the Universe, in whose Hand Victories and Triumphs are contained and dispensed, hath vouchsafed to give a Blessing to our Arms (justly entered into) against the Army of *Sweden*, the common Enemy of us and our Confederate the *Republick*, in the late Battle of *Pultowa*, which said Army being after a general Engagement overthrown and defeated

C 2

with

' with mighty Slaughter, the Remains whereof,
 ' who with their King and General *Leuvenhaupt*
 ' fled towards the *Borysthenes*, seeing no Possibility
 ' of escaping, surrendered themselves without Re-
 ' sistance. But the King, with some few Attendants,
 ' having with great Difficulty passed the *Borysthenes*,
 ' escaped to the Confines of *Turkey*; tho' all his
 ' Followers were not equally fortunate; for some
 ' Squadrons, by our Command, pursuing the Run-
 ' aways, one Moiety of them were either kill'd or
 ' brought in Prisoners. And altho' the King him-
 ' self with only some very few Persons, got off safe,
 ' yet he still continues in *Bender*. Since therefore
 ' the Almighty Arm of the most high God, toge-
 ' ther with our constant Application and watchful
 ' Care, as also the Bravery of our Troops co-operat-
 ' ing, hath given us a most compleat Victory over
 ' so fierce an Enemy, we, returning our hearty
 ' and humble Thanks to his Divine Majesty, have
 ' had no other Intention, directly or indirectly, than
 ' by asserting the subverted Rights and Liberties of
 ' this famous Nation, and especially their Freedom
 ' of electing their Kings to restore Things to their
 ' former excellent Course, and replace a King freely
 ' and fairly chosen, so that Peace and Tranquility
 ' may again be settled in this distracted Kingdom.
 ' In this View, we with our Forces have personally
 ' entered the Dominions of the Republick, to the
 ' End, that the Relicts of an Enemy who thirsts af-
 ' ter the Blood and Substance of others, and whose
 ' Marks are still remaining in this unhappy Repub-
 ' lick, being intirely rooted out, we may reconcile
 ' and unite the disagreeing Citizens one with ano-
 ' ther: Wherefore, all and singular the above
 ' specified Persons having to do with either the *Po-
 ' lish* or *Lithuanian* Armies belonging to this Re-
 ' publick, and who are deluded and drawn in to
 ' take Part with Traitors, to wit, the Palatine of
 ' *Kiew*, Prince *Wiesnowski*, and *Sapiehas*, *Smigielski*,
 ' and other Incendiaries of the same Leaven (among
 ' whom, however, there are very many innocent
 ' Persons

Persons who join with them, not so much through Inclination as Force) by this our Declaration we exhort and admonish that they acknowledge their Error, would reflect thereon, and returning to the Well-wishers of their Country, re-assemble and render themselves, viz. the *Polanders* under the Command of the most illustrious Lord *Simiacowski*, General of the Crown-Army; and the *Lithuanians* under the Banner of the most illustrious Lord *Gregory Oginski*, General of the Army of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*. We do furthermore declare and promise them all manner of Security from us and our Forces, as well in their Persons as Estates. In like manner, the most serene King *AUGUSTUS*, our most dear Brother, (who is known in the Provinces of this Kingdom) is willing and resolved to forget all, and all manner of Injuries and Offences against himself, and to pardon the same with Clemency, provided they return to their Allegiance, or to their lawful Sovereign within the Space of four Weeks: But on the contrary, if they or any of them, contemning our Præmonition, shall audaciously refuse to list themselves within the appointed Time under the aforesaid Standards, or to unite themselves with the Republick (our Confederate) or to repair to their true King, all and every of them shall suffer Condemnation as Enemies to the Republick, and according to the Laws, be most severely punish'd both in Body and Goods: That therefore no Person may pretend Ignorance, we command this our Declaration to be publish'd at the usual Places.

Dated at Lublin, September, ---- 1709.

AUGUSTUS.

AUGUSTUS now passed the *Oder*, in his Way to *Thorn*, a Town in *Royal Prussia*, situated on the *Weissel* or *Vistula*, but under the Protection of the *Poles*, where a grand Council was assembling, and

where the Czar had agreed to have an Interview with him. The Troops of his Czarish Majesty being divided, took the Routs of *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, and he himself approaching *Thorn*, on the 8th of *October*, with a numerous Train of *Grandeess* and *Generals*, King *Augustus* went about half a League up the *Vistula*, to meet his *Restorer*. The Czar went into the King's Yacht, and these two Princes felicitated each other on the Satisfaction of meeting again. The King complimented the Czar on the glorious Victory he had gained, and the Czar made his Compliments to the King on his Return, without any Reproaches on the Affair of *Alt-Ranstadt*, or any other: For these *Augustus* had taken Care to prevent, by the Manner in which he treated the *Russian* Plenipotentiaries, and by the Reasons which he alledged, for all he had done, in his Manifesto. Their Majesties being landed, the Czar received the Compliments of the Magistrates in a Body, and after having returned them an Answer by the Great Chancellor Count *Gallowin*, went with King *Augustus*, to the House that was prepared for him, thro' the continual Acclamations of the People, of *Long live the Czar and the King*.

The *Saxon* Ministers afterwards made their Compliments of Congratulation, and assured his Czarish Majesty, that they had always made their Vows to Heaven for the Success of his Arms; but that they had never dared to hope it would have been so compleat. To which he answered, with as much Grandeur as Piety; *Your Vows, Gentlemen, were proportioned to the Weakness of Men; but God has given me a Victory which shews his own Omnipotence.*

Whilst the Czar was in this Town, the *Grandeess* of *Poland* sent a Deputation likewise, to congratulate him, in the Name of the Republick, on the total Defeat of his Enemy; to whom he made Answer, 'That no Body had gained more by the Blessing which God had bestowed on his Arms, than the Republick, since by That they had their lawful King restored to them.' The Senators desiring

firing the Czar would appoint Commissaries for their Affairs, which being done, the *Polanders* proposed, That his Majesty, according to his Promise, should leave but twelve thousand Men in *Poland*, because the Country was so ruined, that it could not maintain a greater Number; that the *Russians* should give an Account to the Proprietors of the Management of their Estates, which they had seized; that his Majesty should restore to the Republick their Fortresses in the *Polish Ukrain*; and that he should set Prince *Wiesnowisky* at Liberty, whom he had imprisoned, with others, who deserting the Confederation of *Sandomir*, to embrace the Party of *Stanislaus*, had been the Occasion of many of those Evils which the *Russians* and the Confederates had since suffered.

It cannot be said, that these Propositions were unreasonable in themselves, but the Nature of them was changed by the Circumstances that attended them. The Czar was no longer to be considered as an Ally to the greatest Part of those who talked in this Style, since they had sided with his Enemies, and as it was only their own Convenience and Interest that now brought them to *Thorn*; and as not one of them perhaps would have submitted to him, as they now did, less out of Inclination than Fear, if the King of *Sweden* was at the Head of those Troops commanded by General *Craffau*, which now fled every where before him. To this Purpose his Czarish Majesty answered them, without waiting to be told by the Grandees, *That the Laaws of their Kingdom would not permit of any foreign Power to intermeddle with their domestick Affairs.* He made no Reply at all to the Proposition of restoring the Places in the *Ukrain*, which in effect he had conquer'd by driving the *Swedens* out of that Province.

The first Days of the Meeting between *Peter* and *Augustus* were spent in Feasting and Rejoicing, during which Time the Czar appeared with a Sword by his Side, which King *Augustus* had presented to the King of *Sweden*, when he was in *Saxony*, and which

was found among the Baggage of *Charles XII.* after the Battle of *Pultowa.* While the Czar was in this City, he went all over it on Foot, visiting every Place of Note, particularly the Church of the *Jesuits*; and when these two Monarchs had taken those Measures they thought proper at *Thorn,* they parted, *Augustus* to return to his own Dominions in *Saxony,* and the Czar to meet the King of *Prussia* at *Marienwerder.*

When his *Prussian* Majesty, who was arrived in that Town first, through very bad Roads, was informed that the Czar was coming down the *Vistula,* he went about half a Mile out of the Town, and received him at his Landing, giving him the upper Hand, and expressing all imaginable Respect. The two Princes got into the same Coach, in which sat also the *Sieur Keyserling,* Envoy of the King of *Prussia,* and proceeded to the Castle, the Garrison and Burghers being on their Arms, and saluting them with three Salvoes. Prince *Menzikoff* and Count *Wartemberg* followed in the next Coach, and after them the chief Officers of both Monarchs, who dined together. They had some Conferences by themselves, and afterwards held a Council with their chief Ministers, in which was confirmed the Alliance before projected between them and the King of *Denmark* and King *Augustus.* Another Negotiation of great Importance was likewise concluded here in favour of the King of *Prussia,* by which the Duke of *Courland,* his Nephew, had his Duchy restored to him, by an Agreement of Marriage with the Czar's Niece.

The Czar left *Marienwerder* on the 5th of November, to go to *Mittaw,* in order to join his Generals, and regulate the Operations to which his Troops were destinated. The General Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetof* arrived about this Time, near *Polock,* with 52,000 Men; his Van-Guard, consisting of seven thousand, were advanced as far as *Mittaw,* upon whose Approach, General *Stromberg,* who commanded in *Riga,* not doubting but the Czar's first

first Efforts would be made in *Livonia*, recalled the *Swedish* Troops that were in *Courland*, whose Place was immediately after taken by the *Muscovite* Lieutenant-General *Allard*.

The *Russian* Troops, which consisted of 120,000 Men in the whole, were capable of undertaking the most difficult Conquests, under so many experienced Generals as they then had, commanded in Chief by Prince *Menzikoff*, who was Generalissimo, or rather Adjutant-General to the Czar. Sixty-three Mortars, three hundred Pieces of large Cannon, and 60,000 Bombs followed this Army, ordered to rendezvous before *Riga*, the Magazine of *Sweden*, and its Bulwark on the *Baltick Sea*, which Place the Czar was resolved to besiege.

When the *Russian* Troops were first spread over *Livonia* and *Curland*, and General *Stromberg* saw himself surrounded by them on all Sides, he began to burn the Suburbs, and demolish Fort *Kobber*; but before that, he put forth the following Piece, a kind of *Universal*, filled with Complaints of the Outrages of the *Muscovites*.

BEING informed that the *Muscovite* Generals have published Letters in this Country, to animate the Subjects of my most gracious Sovereign, to resign their Allegiance to him, we are persuaded, that the said Subjects are not ignorant how far they may credit his Insinuations and Promises; especially if they consider the terrible Proceedings of this perfidious Enemy, during this War, contrary to Faith and Christianity, by Murders, Burnings and Tortures; the carrying away of innocent Persons into a barbarous Captivity, and his inhuman Treatment of so many Thousands of Souls. I have therefore thought it necessary to forewarn the Subjects of his *Swedish* Majesty to forbid them to put themselves under the Protection of the Enemy, on any Pretext whatever, and much less to furnish him with Necessaries; on the other Hand, they are hereby or-

' der'd to join the Forces of his Royal Majesty, and
 ' courageously to assist in opposing the Enemy ;
 ' but if they neither can nor will join the Army,
 ' they are order'd to retire with their Families,
 ' Provisions, and other Effects, to the next Places of
 ' Strength, and to contribute towards their De-
 ' fence, with full Assurance that the Almighty
 ' God will reward their Loyalty, and that his
 ' *Swedish* Majesty will duly acknowledge it, by con-
 ' ferring his Royal Favours upon them; but such
 ' as act contrary to their Allegiance must expect
 ' God's Vengeance, and his Majesty's highest Dis-
 ' pleasure.'

The *Muscovite* General, the Velt-Mareschal Czere-
 metof answered this Piece as follows :

' I AM amazed to hear that the *Swedish* Governor-
 ' General at *Riga*, has published a Mandate,
 ' dated *October 22*, wherein he has presumed to use
 ' several injurious Expressions against his Czarish
 ' Majesty and his Generals. This Way of pro-
 ' ceeding is so much the more surprizing, as such a
 ' haughty Humour very ill suits the present Cir-
 ' cumstances of the *Swedes*, since they may see
 ' very plainly, that God, being provoked by
 ' their Arrogance, has for a long Time sufficiently
 ' chastised them; so that they ought to be more
 ' humble : But this Arrogance seems so natural to
 ' them, that the greatest and most sensible Disasters
 ' cannot oblige them to leave it. Though all possi-
 ' ble Respect and Moderation have been used to-
 ' wards his *Swedish* Majesty and his Generals, and
 ' that we have taken Care to avoid their arrogant
 ' Methods, yet the Nature of the Mandate above-
 ' said requires an Answer. It is true the *Muscovite*
 ' Generals have published circular Letters in *Livonia*,
 ' wherein an Offer is made to deliver that Country
 ' from the Slavery and Oppression under which it
 ' has groaned so long. This Design of his Czarish
 ' Majesty being Christian and just, will doubtless
 ' be

' be seconded by the Divine Assistance: And as to
 ' what concerns the publishing of these circular
 ' Letters, the Justice of this Way of proceeding is
 ' referred not to the Governor-General of *Riga*,
 ' but to the impartial World. Let them but only
 ' consider, that the King of *Sweden* has treated the
 ' poor *Livonians* as Step-Children, thought them
 ' unworthy of his Protection, and exposed them
 ' to Rapine and Plunder for eight Years together;
 ' that instead of defending them, he flatter'd them
 ' with Hopes of Revenge, and ambitiously exposed
 ' them to all the Calamities of War, withdrew his
 ' Army so many Hundreds of Leagues, and sacrific-
 ' ed his brave Troops, without any Compassion,
 ' to Cold, Hunger, and other Calamities; that he
 ' has ruined many other Countries, reduced many
 ' Thousands of Persons to Poverty, rejected all
 ' Proposals of Peace, and contrary to the Rules
 ' of Humanity and true Christianity, looked upon
 ' the Effusion of Human Blood as an inconsidera-
 ' ble Thing: So that I would fain know to whom
 ' the *Swedish* Governor-General can ascribe Bar-
 ' barity more properly than to his own Master;
 ' and if he will consider that the Law of Nature
 ' absolves from their Allegiance poor deserted Sub-
 ' jects, exhausted by unsupportable Oppressions,
 ' he has no Reason to force them to join his
 ' Troops, and oppose their Deliverer: For accord-
 ' ing to a noted Maxim, *Where the Protection of a*
 ' *Sovereign ceases, the Allegiance of the Subjects ceases at*
 ' *the same Time, since the Obligation is mutual.* Time
 ' will shew whether the Czar has not restored the
 ' *Livonians* to their Liberties and Rights, invaded
 ' by the *Swedish* Government, and whether they
 ' ought not to render perpetual Thanks and Honour
 ' to their seasonable Deliverer. As to the Gover-
 ' nor-General's Imputation of Murders, &c. 'tis a
 ' false Charge; when arrogant Officers and Soldiers
 ' (which no Army is free from) transgress Rules
 ' and Orders, they ought to be punish'd for the
 ' Terror of others. The great Numbers of Pri-
 ' soners

soners that were taken in the Battle of *Pultawa*, own, that they are mercifully treated by the Czar, though they did not deserve it, considering the unchristian Behaviour of the *Swedes* towards such *Muscovites* as were their Prisoners. I cannot comprehend the Meaning of the Governor-General, first to animate the *Livonians* to defend themselves, and afterwards to enjoin them to retire to the Army: It may be answered, That Threats without Power are ridiculous: And we may ask where the *Swedish* Army is to be found? 'Tis much to be doubted whether they have one single Company to appear in the Field. If the Governor expresses himself more modestly hereafter, I shall imitate his Style.

Dated from our Head-Quarters at Mittaw.

When the Czar was arrived at *Mittaw*, he gave Ear, with much Condescension, to the Complaints of the *Courlanders*, and greatly moderated the Contributions which his Generals had levied upon them. On the 21st of *November* he went to his Army, and on the 25th came before *Riga*, where every Thing was ready for bombarding it, and his Czarish Majesty himself set Fire to the first Bomb.

The Magistracy sent out their Deputies to divert, if possible, this Storm, but to no Purpose. The Czar continued but a short Time in this Place, where no Honour was to be acquired: His Subjects impatiently expected him at *Moscow*, to which City an infinite Number of Foreigners were come to honour the Triumph of this great Monarch, for which Reason his Majesty hastened his Journey thither; he went through *Livonia* to *Dorpt*, and from thence to *Petersburgh*, where he gave Orders for the fitting out of such Ships as were to serve in the ensuing Campaign, and at the same Time for the forming such Magazines at *Narva*, as he judg'd necessary

to carry on his grand Design in the Siege of *Riga*. Lastly, his Majesty made very considerable Remittances to the King of *Denmark*, to enable him to push on the War vigorously on that Side against *Sweden*.

On the 11th of *December*, attended by Admiral *Apraxin*, and several of the Nobility, he arrived at a Country-Seat call'd *Kolomski*, about five *English* Miles distant from *Moscow*. Prince *Menzikoff* came thither on the 14th, and, on the 16th the whole Court took up their Lodgings in one of the Suburbs, separated from the Town by the River *Moscow*. His Czarish Majesty had appointed to receive the Compliments of all the foreign Ministers on the 17th, but a great Fire happening in the Neighbourhood, the *British* Envoy was obliged to defer his Visit 'till the Day following, at which Time the Czar received him with great Distinction at Prince *Menzikoff*'s Apartment, and conferred with him several Hours. His Majesty finding that it was very inconvenient for the Court to stay long in a Place where they were so ill accommodated, gave Orders that the publick Entry into *Moscow* should be on the 21st, although the triumphal Arches, and other Preparations for this grand Ceremony were not quite finished.

I. The Procession was begun by Prince *Michael*, eldest Son of Prince *Galiczin*, Lieutenant-General, and Colonel of the Guards, on Horseback, at the Head of the *Semionowski* Regiment of Foot, newly clothed; the Prince's led Horses finely caparison'd were follow'd by the Cannon, Colours, and Officers that were taken in the Battle against General *Leuvenhaupt*; these were closed by a Company of the *Preobrazinski* Horse-Guards richly mounted.

II. The Prisoners taken in the Battle of *Pultowa*, and those surrender'd by the Capitulation of *Perewolozca* march'd in the next Place; the non-commission'd Officers of this Body led the Way; next to them the Ensigns and Second Lieutenants; in the

the third Place came the Lieutenants, and next to them the Captain-Lieutenants, after whom the Captains of both the Foot and Horse : These were followed by the Officers and others Attendants of the Train of Artillery, who preceded the Ordnance. After which were carried the Kettle-Drums and Colours. Then marched the Majors, Lieutenant-Colonels, Colonels, and General-Adjutants, who were succeeded by the King of Sweden's Household and Equipage, together with the Litter and Bed that he used in the Day of Battle ; after which came the chief Officers, each marching single, in the following Order : M. *Poofe* Colonel of the Guards, Major-General *Hamilton*, Major-General *Stackelberg*, Major-General *Rose*, Major-General *Gruss*, Major-General *Creutz*, Major-General *Schlippenback*, General *Leuwenhaupt*, Velt-Mareschal *Renchild* ; and last of these, Count *Piper*, the King of Sweden's first Minister of State.

III. In the next Place came his Czarish Majesty, mounted on a stately *Englisch* Horse, which had been presented to him by King *Augustus*, having Prince *Menzikoff* on his right, and Prince *Doigoruki* on his left Hand, both likewise on Horseback.

There were seven triumphal Arches erected in the City, at the first of which his Majesty was received by the Magistrates ; at the second by Prince *Gayarin*, Governor of the Town ; at the third, by the Nobility ; at the fourth, by the principal Merchants ; at the fifth, by the Clergy ; at the sixth, by the Empresses Dowager, and the Princesses of the Blood ; and at the last by the Burghers. The foreign Ministers had separate Houses allotted them for the Ceremony ; and his Majesty made a short Stand at the respective Places where they stood. The Cannon were fired several Times round the Town during the Procession ; and the whole was conducted with the utmost good Order and Magnificence. About eight or nine Thousand Prisoners were brought into the Town, upon this Occasion, the Day before.

As the ancient Custom of making publick Spectacles of unhappy Men made Prisoners by the uncertain Fate of War, had been long abolished among Christian Princes, it may seem unaccountable, that the Czar, who had treated these Gentlemen, the *Swedish* Prisoners, before with so much Regard, should now lead them, in such a cruel Manner, through the publick Streets to grace his Triumphs, unless we consider two Things, first that the Prisoners taken at the Battle of *Narva* were used somewhat in the like Manner at *Stockholm*; and secondly, that how great an Enemy soever he might be to vain Pomp himself, yet as the Vulgar are struck by these Things, it was absolutely necessary among his rude People, to present them with a Show of this Sort, which might at one Time give them a proper Idea of his own Greatness, and let them see that the *Swedes*, whom they dreaded so much, were very far from being invincible.

The Officers of the King of *Sweden*'s Foot-Guards not having arrived from *Kioo* soon enough to appear in his Majesty's triumphant Entry, they were publickly conducted through the City a few Days after.

1710. On the first Day of the New Year his Czarish Majesty treated all the chief Persons of Quality and foreign Ministers at a very grand Entertainment. In the Evening a sumptuous Fire-Work was prepared, on which were several Representations and Inscriptions which all went off with great Exactness. The chief Machines were a *Phaeton* struck with a Thunder-Bolt, and another Figure alluding to a Medal struck in *Sweden*. Two Pillars were first lighted, which supported Imperial Crowns, and were adorned with a great Variety of blue, green, and pale Flames; when they had burnt some Time a Lion moved forward, on whose Approach the first Pillar broke short at the Pedestal; but as he advanced near the second, a Spread-Eagle, representing the Czar's Arms, launched a Rocket, which

which blew up the Lion's Head and Neck, and the Pillar remained firm to the last.

The Rejoicings at *Moscow* continued several Days, and his Majesty amidst them had the Pleasure to make publick the Satisfaction which the Queen of *Great-Britain* had made him, for the Affront offer'd to his Ambassador at *London* in the Year 1708. But to give the Reader the whole of this Affair, it will be necessary to go a little back, and lay before him some Letters on this Business, which followed those we have given him in the former Volume of this History. The first is,

A Letter written by Mr. Boyle, Minister and Secretary of State of the Queen of Great-Britain, to his Excellency M. Matueof, Ambassador and Plenipotentiary of his Czars Majesty, at the Court of their High Mightinesses the States-General of the United Provinces. Dated from Whitehall the 11th Day of January, 1708-9, O. S.

Sir,

I DID not think fit to return a speedy Answer to the two Letters of the 27th of November, and 4th of December last, N. S. with which your Excellency was pleas'd to honour me; because I could not inform you, what Satisfaction our Laws would afford, against those who put that grievous Affront upon your Excellency's Person. But forasmuch as I am apprehensive, that too long a Silence may be taken for a Want of due Respect for your Excellency; or that I have not been sufficiently sollicitous to put in Execution every Thing that is incumbent upon the Queen's Majesty, in order to procure the promised Reparation; I could no longer forbear making Answer to your Excellency, to assure you that the Resentment you express of the said outrageous Affront (particularly in your Letter of the 27th of

of November, ult.) cannot be greater than the Indignation which Her Majesty has conceiv'd upon that Account: And I doubt not but Mr. *D'Ayrolles*, according to the Instructions he received, has already notify'd to your Excellency, That the indispensable Forms of the Laws of this Kingdom cannot admit of a final Determination of that Affair, till the next Sessions of our Courts of Judicature; which is so well known, and so firmly regulated here, that in order to punish any Malefactor for the most enormous Crimes, even Treason against her Majesty's sacred Person, he must be brought to his Trial according to the usual Forms established in this Country. I am persuaded that your Excellency's Sagacity and Equitableness will induce you ever to distinguish between the Insolence and Brutishness of some particular senseless Men, and the Marks of a very particular Esteem and Respect which you have upon all Occasions received, as well from the Queen, as from Persons employ'd in the highest Offices of the Government; and that your Excellency will be so just as to believe, that they would not have failed to give you the most ample Satisfaction long ago, if the Means of doing it were as ready at hand and practicable, as the Queen's Inclination is forward to satisfy his Czarish Majesty thereupon.

Therefore I hope your Excellency will represent the State of this Affair to his said Czarish Majesty, after the most favourable Manner; assuring him, That nothing has been neglected by, and that nothing for the future shall be omitted which tends to procure all the Reparation, that the utmost Rigour of the fundamental Laws of this Kingdom can afford. And farther, if this be not found sufficient, and any thing else can be suggested, that be in the Queen's Power, whereby she may express her high Displeasure against those who committed so notorious an Insult, which may contribute to the maintaining of Amity and good
'Cor-

Correspondence between her and his Czarish Majesty; she will not fail on her Part to be always ready to do it. Upon that Account I lately propos'd, by the Queen's special Order, to the Parliament of *Great-Britain*, that a *Bill* might be brought in for establishing and securing the Privileges of Ambassadors and other foreign Ministers, as well to prevent the like Outrages for the future, as to notify, at the same Time, to the whole World, how far her Majesty, and the whole *British* Nation, detest the Violence that was offered to your Excellency's Person and Character: But forasmuch as her Majesty is desirous of nothing more than to be in a Capacity of giving sufficient Satisfaction in this Affair, and she is absolutely disposed to do all that lies in her Power for that Purpose; we are persuaded that his Czarish Majesty will not forbear having so just a Regard to the Queen's Friendship, and the ancient Alliances between the two Crowns, that he will not insist upon her attempting Impossibilities; and that he will not undertake any Thing which may in any wise be prejudicial to the good Correspondence that has been hitherto maintained between both their Majesties, and which (as I hope) will continue for ever.

I have the Satisfaction to inform your Excellency, That the Queen had no sooner Notice, that two young *Muscovite* Princes*, the Relations of his

* These two *Muscovite* Noblemen arrived in England the latter End of January, 1709, and the Queen, to shew them particular Distinction, gave Orders for their being receiv'd and entertain'd at her Charge, and attended by her Officers. They were introduced to an Audience of the Queen by Mr. Boyle, and each made his Compliments in Latin, expressing with great Respect, the grateful Sense they had of the Honour her Majesty was pleased to do them. They congratulated her Majesty upon the signal Success of her victorious Arms; they wished her a long and

his Czarish Majesty, were arriv'd in this Kingdom, but she forthwith gave Orders for their Reception and Entertainment, with that particular Distinction and Respect which is due to their high Birth. As for what Concerns I myself may have in executing the Queen's Orders on this Emergency, I shall discharge my Duty with a great deal of Delight; and I can assure your Excellency at the same time, that no Person in the World can be more forward in expressing to you upon all Opportunities which shall offer themselves, with how great Esteem and Respect, I am,

Sir, Your Excellency's, &c.

Sign'd,

H. BOYLE.

The Answer of the Ambassador of Muscovy, to Mr. Boyle, Secretary of State; written at the Hague, the 25th of Jan. O. S. and 5th of Feb. N. S. 1709.

Sir,

I HAD the Honour to receive your Letter, dated from *Whitehall* the 11th Instant, O. S. and I find therein many Declarations and Promises for the future, as to what relates to the Reparation of the unparalleled Assault made upon me by the Rabble; which Promises are directed to his Czarish Majesty my Master, on the Part of the Queen of *Great-Britain*: But for the rest, all that

and prosperous Continuance of the same. To which the Queen made Answer, That she had so much Esteem and Friendship for his Czarish Majesty, that she could not but be very well pleased to see any so nearly related to him in her Kingdoms, and have an Opportunity of shewing her Kindness and Distinction to them. Her Majesty thanked them for their Congratulations and good Wishes, and told them she would endeavour to make their Stay here as agreeable to them as she could.

' that I can observe most considerable is the Propo-
 ' sal you have tender'd to the Parliament of *Great-*
 ' *Britain* by the Queen's Instructions, in order to
 ' get a Law enacted for the Security and Main-
 ' tenance of the Sacred Privileges of Ambassadors
 ' and other foreign Ministers residing in her Ma-
 ' jesty's Court. Indeed this is a very proper Means
 ' to dissipate the Fears with which they were seized
 ' since the Insult that was made on a Minister of
 ' the first Rank: However, give me Leave to tell
 ' you farther, That nothing carries less Appear-
 ' ance of the Satisfaction which his Czarish Majesty
 ' requires; since the definitive Resolution is still
 ' wanting, and he is referred to the particular Laws
 ' of the Country; so that the Business is protracted,
 ' by putting it off from Time to Time, and from
 ' one Delay to another. If it were in the Queen's
 ' Power to consult the Parliament about the enacting
 ' of a new Law, touching the Immunity of foreign
 ' Ministers, and to prevent the Outrages which
 ' might be hereafter offered to them; could not
 ' due Measures have been taken at the same time,
 ' for the Reparation of the pass'd Affront, which
 ' (according to your Letter) is detested by the
 ' Queen and the whole *British* Nation? Certainly
 ' 'tis a very easy Matter to do it, in case her Ma-
 ' jesty has the least Inclination to hold an amicable
 ' Correspondence with his Czarish Majesty, as his
 ' Czarish Majesty is disposed to do with her, and to
 ' maintain the Law of Nations in its Vigour, as
 ' the whole Universe does; which ought to be the
 ' rather expected from the Queen, since she has for-
 ' merly contributed very much to the Preservation
 ' of the same, by firmly demanding of the Repub-
 ' lic of *Verice*, Satisfaction for the Violence offer'd
 ' to the Earl of *Manchester* her Ambassador, altho'
 ' the Insult was only made upon his Bark and
 ' domestick Servants: So that the Senate, notwith-
 ' standing the most antient Laws of the Republick,
 ' was prevail'd upon to follow the Law of Nations,
 ' by

by satisfying the Ambassador after the Manner he desir'd and demanded.

SIR, You desire by the same Letter that I should acquaint his Czarish Majesty with the Delay of your Courts of Judicature, which binders this Affair from being brought to an Issue; although it might have been very conveniently adjusted in the Space of Six Months since which time the Accident happen'd. But forasmuch as your Letter contains nothing Definitive, with respect to the Satisfaction, I am extreemly concerned that it is not in my Power to comply with your Desires in that Particular. And I am so much the more incapable of doing it, in regard that I have received his Czarish Majesty's positive Resolution upon the Business, as also later Orders, earnestly to press for the Queen's Answer to my Master's Letter, a categorical Determination, whether the Law of Nations, with respect to other Powers, will be observed or not? Therefore pursuant to the said Orders which I have newly received, I would entreat you, Sir, to honour me with an Answer to the above-mention'd Articles, after you have shewn the Contents to the Queen, to the End that this Affair may be no longer deferred; for the Delay occasion'd by your Laws cannot give any Manner of Satisfaction to his Czarish Majesty.

As to the Honours that have been lately done, by the Queen's special Command, to two Young Noblemen, who are taken for *Muscovite* Princes, related to his Czarish Majesty, and are now at *London*; I can assure you, that his Majesty reckons none but the Imperial Hereditary Prince within the Verge of his august House. They are two young Lords of illustrious Birth, who have the Honour of being a-kin to him, and are travelling *Incognito* to see the World. His Czarish Majesty does not desire that they should be defray'd by any Power: They have wherewithal to bear their own Charges; and if, without their Master's Or-

der,

der, they think fit to accept of Lodging, or any thing else of that Nature; they are to be accountable for the same. It only remains, that I return you Thanks for the Kindness and Good-will you profess to have for me, of the future Continuance of which you are also pleased to assure me; offering you my reciprocal Readiness to express to you the particular Esteem, and unlimited Affection, wherewith I am, &c.

Sign'd,

DE MATUEOF.

A LETTER written by Mr. D'Ayrolles, Secretary of the Queen of Great-Britain to his Excellency the Ambassador of Muscovy, dated from the Hague the 10th Day of March, N. S. 1709.

MY LORD,

Y^Esterday in the Evening came in five Posts from England; whereupon being informed, that your Excellency will not be here till the End of the Week, I would not fail to give you an Account without Delay, according to my Promise, and for the due Execution of my Orders, of what has happened last of all in England, concerning your Affair.

I shall therefore acquaint your Excellency, That on the 14-25th of the last Month, the Persons engaged in arresting your Excellency, appeared before the Lord Chief Justice Holt, in the Court which we call the *Queen's Bench*. Her Majesty's two Secretaries of State, the Lord Sunderland, and Mr. Boyle were present there, with a great Number of other Persons of Note, who were no less desirous of seeing the Criminals brought to condign Punishment, than they were concerned at the Insult offered to your Excellency. The Indictment was

‘ was laid against *Thomas Morton*, and other Creditors of your Excellency ; as also against one *Benson* an Attorney, employ’d in taking out the executory Orders for arresting your Excellency, and the two Bailiffs who actually arrested you. The Parties being heard, after a long and considerable Plea made by the Queen’s Attorney-General, Solicitor-General, and other Persons learned in the Law, acting for her Majesty ; the Jury consisting of Gentlemen of Distinction, and plentiful Estates in the County, more especially chosen upon that Occasion, declar’d the Persons mentioned in the Indictment (except one named *Young*, against whom no Evidence appear’d) to be convicted of having conspired and conspired together to arrest your Excellency’s Person, notwithstanding they knew the same to be invested with the Character of an Ambassador ; as also of having by that means occasioned a Misunderstanding between the Queen and his Czarish Majesty ; and of having insulted, arrested, imprisoned and abused the said Person of your Excellency. The Jury having thus given in their Verdict, and the Case being so extraordinary, of very great Importance, altogether new, and without Precedent in our Courts of *England* ; the Lord Chief Justice could not take upon him to determine it, but referr’d the Point relating to the Privileges of Ambassadors, that is to say, how far the Laws of the Realm may reach, for the Punishment of those who violate them ; to a Scrutiny which is to be made the next Term, before him, assisted by the other Judges of the Kingdom.

‘ This is the present State of the Business : It is not absolutely decided, but the indicted Persons are found guilty of the Fact, and the Punishment will be solemnly debated before all the Judges of the Kingdom ; the Case having never been before known in our Law. Therefore (if you please) ’tis requisite that your Excellency have a little more Patience to see the final Determination of this

' this Process, and content yourself in waiting with
 ' your wonted Prudence and Moderation, for the
 ' Issue of the Queen's Efforts in prosecuting the
 ' Criminals, since her Majesty has omitted nothing
 ' on her part for that Purpose. For if our For-
 ' malities of Justice appear slow and tedious, 'tis
 ' what cannot in any wise be remedied, it being
 ' Part of our Constitution, to which every indivi-
 ' dual Person in the Kingdom is obliged to submit.
 ' I have already had the Honour to treat with
 ' your Excellency so often upon this Subject, that
 ' I hope you are sensible thereof, and of the Queen's
 ' most sincere Intentions to do every Thing that
 ' lies in her Majesty's Power, for repairing the
 ' Injury done to your Person and Character. I
 ' doubt not but the Whole will terminate in the
 ' common Satisfaction. I am with profound Re-
 ' spect,

My Lord,

Your Excellency's, &c.

Sign'd,

J. A. D'AYROLLES.

*The Ambassador's Answer, written at Amsterdam the
 28th of February, O. S. and 11th of March, N. S.*

Sir,

' I Could wish that your Letter, which came to
 ' my Hands Yesterday, had brought me a more
 ' definitive Answer than is contained therein.
 ' However, waiting for an Opportunity to receive
 ' from you a full Information of the Matter by
 ' Word of Mouth, which will be as soon as I shall
 ' arrive at the *Hague*; I would entreat you to
 ' write again this Day to your Court, that I desire
 ' an Answer to the Letter which his Czarish Ma-
 ' jesty, my Master, sent to the Queen of *Great-
 ' Britain*, and to that which I wrote last of all to
 ' M. *Boyle*, her Secretary of State, according to my
 ' Instructions.

‘ Instructions. I have Reason to apprehend, that
 ‘ this Business having follow’d the Course of former
 ‘ Negotiations, will also come to the same Issue.
 ‘ I am, with a great deal of Respect,

Sir, &c.

Sign’d,

DE MATUE OF.

This troublesome Affair was at length terminated by her Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain’s* Minister, Mr. *Whitworth*, whom she invested with the Character of her Ambassador-Extraordinary, to deliver her Letter in a publick Manner to his Czarish Majesty, to make her Excuse for the Affront he received in the Person of his Ambassador; and accordingly, the 8th of *February* being appointed for the Solemnity at *Moscow*, M. *Basilis de Soltikof*, chief Carver to his Czarish Majesty, accompany’d by M. *Athanasius de Dimtreof Mamianof*, Cup-bearer, who officiated as Master of the Ceremonies, went from the Court in one of his Czarish Majesty’s Coaches, to the House of her *Britannick* Majesty’s Ambassador, being followed by twenty other Coaches of the Grandees and principal Lords of the Court, some only to make up a Train for Show, and others for the Ambassador’s Secretary and Gentlemen, who were all richly cloathed, answerably to the Magnificence of the Coaches in which they rode.

Being come to the Ambassador’s House, the chief Carver and Cup-bearer went up to his Apartment, where they declared to his Excellency the Business they were come about; and after some Moments Conversation, they went into the Coach with the Ambassador, who took the Place of Honour, the chief Carver sat by his Side, and the Cup-bearer over-against him: The Secretary and Gentlemen of the Embassy went in the Coaches appointed for them, each according to his Rank, and the Train
 VOL. II. D being

being increased by the Ambassador's Coaches proceeded to the Court.

Arriving there, the two Regiments of Guards, *Precbrazinski* and *Semionofsky*, who were drawn up within the Court, made the Salutes of Honour to the Ambassador, according to Custom, and remain'd standing in Parade during the whole Audience; making a very fine Show, the Richness of their Cloaths, and the Neatness of their Arms and Accoutrements setting off the comely Men of which those Regiments were composed. The Officers at their Head made the most splendid Appearance that can be imagined; and the whole Extent of the Court, as large as it is, could hardly afford them Room enough.

M. de Naraskin, Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber to his Czarish Majesty, received the Ambassador at the Foot of the Stair-Case, where his Excellency came out of the Coach, and complimented him. *Prince George de Scherbaty*, Counsellor of State, perform'd the like Honours to him at the Top of the Stair-Case, and his Excellency *Monsieur de Muffin Puchkin*, Privy-Councillor, complimented him in the Anti-chamber, and the Ambassador was conducted, according to the Ceremonial, to the Hall of Audience, where his Czarish Majesty was standing uncover'd under a Canopy, leaning against a Table, having an arm'd Chair behind him, the Grandees and Ministers of the Court, with the Generals of his Army, standing on each Hand of him.

As soon as the Ambassador came in Sight of him, he made his first Obeisance, in the middle of the Hall his Second, and the Third when he had ascended the Estrade on which his Czarish Majesty stood; where standing, and with his Hat off, his Excellency made a Speech in *English*, of which the Secretary of the Embassy read aloud a Translation in the *German Tongue*, sign'd with the Ambassador's Hand; to the End the foreign Ministers, who had been formally invited to assist at this Solemnity, might understand the Contents of it; and then

then one of his Czarish Majesty's Secretaries read it out in the *Russian* Language, for the Information of the Lords and Gentlemen of the Empire. The Speech was as follows :

Most High and most Powerful Emperor,

' **T** I S not without a very sensible Grief that
' I am obliged to mention to your Imperial
' Majesty the Affront which was lately offer'd to
' your Ambassador in *Great-Britain*. And I should
' be much more concern'd at it, were I not fur-
' nish'd with express Orders and full Power to de-
' clare, with how great Diligence her Majesty the
' Queen of *Great-Britain*, my most gracious Mis-
' tress, has endeavour'd to give sufficient Satisfac-
' tion for it, proportioned as well to her Equity,
' as to her Greatness of Soul, and such as may serve
' as an evident Mark of her constant Friendship
' which she has always had for your Imperial Ma-
' jesty, and which she is desirous inviolably to con-
' tinue to you.

' The first Advice of that unfortunate Accident
' was no sooner brought to Court, but the Guilty
' were sensible of her Royal Indignation; they
' were immediately arrested; they were examined
' before the Queen in her Council; they were im-
' prisoned, and prosecuted with the utmost Seve-
' rity of our Laws; and though these were found
' to be not extensive enough, yet they were de-
' clared infamous, with the unanimous Consent of
' the whole Nation assembled in Parliament, who
' declared to the World, by a publick Act, how
' much they abhorred the Indignity of the Fact,
' and took the necessary Precautions to prevent the
' like Insolencies for the future. Neither did they
' stop there; for those Criminals were afterwards
' declared unworthy any Favour or Protection, and
' excluded from the general Pardon which her Ma-
' jesty the Queen caused to be published for all her
' Subjects, even for those who had, in the most

enormous Manner, attempted against her sacred Person; and though other Criminals do actually enjoy that Benefit, those are still under her Majesty's high Displeasure.

And to the end that her Royal Equity and Amity may reach further, and become the more shining in the World, her Majesty has graciously been pleased to honour me with the high Character of her Ambassador-Extraordinary, Commissary, and Plenipotentiary, and to give me the Power to represent her Royal Person, as if herself were present. In the first Place, to testify the Sorrow and the just and high Abhorrence she has for that rash Deed, perpetrated against a publick Minister, especially against such a one as her Majesty the Queen has a most particular Esteem for; and afterwards to beg Excuse for the Defect and Insufficiency of our ancient Constitution, in the Case of so extraordinary a Violation of the Laws of Nations, for which the Criminals should with Justice have been punished with the utmost Rigour, according to your Imperial Majesty's Desire: And, in the last Place, to assure your Imperial Majesty, in the most sincere manner, how much her Majesty the Queen is inclined to maintain the ancient Friendship and good Correspondence which for so long a Time have been between the two Crowns; of which your Imperial Majesty may please to take further Notice in this her Letter, which is a Testimony of the great Affection and high Esteem her Majesty the Queen has for your Imperial Majesty.

Wherefore I most instantly desire, in the Name of her Majesty the Queen, that your Imperial Majesty may vouchsafe to accept the aforesaid Excuse, with the usual Fraternal Affection, and not to impute either to her Majesty the Queen, or the *British* Nation, an Action of which some disorderly Persons are the Authors, but that intirely putting the same in Oblivion, your Imperial Majesty may again generously continue your high

‘ high Affection to the Queen my Mistress, and her Subjects.

‘ For my own Part, I shall esteem myself most happy, if I may any way contribute towards so great a Work, so advantageous to both the Crowns, and so necessary to the present State of *Europe*.

‘ Several great Benefits and Marks of Favour which I have already received during the Discharge of my former Employment, of which I shall ever retain a thankful Remembrance, make me hope for the same favourable Reception during the Remainder of my stay here, in the Exercise of my new Commission, as often as I shall have the Honour to make any new Proposals to your Imperial Majesty’s Court, by Order of my most gracious Queen.

‘ In the Conclusion, I beg leave to recommend the *British* Subjects who live in this Country, to your Imperial Majesty’s high Protection, with respect of the Free Trade which their Ancestors began, first by the way of *Archangel*, with great Expence, and Loss of abundance of Men.

Signed,

CHARLES WHITWORTH.

After the Speech was made, and two Translations of it read, his Excellency the Ambassador delivered to his Czarish Majesty, her Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain*’s Letter to the Effect following.

(*After the usual Titles*)

‘ **W**E have already written to your Imperial Majesty, to declare to you the great Grief we conceived for the unhappy Affront which was offer’d to your Ambassador, before he left our Court. We have since received the Letter your Imperial Majesty wrote

wrote to us upon that Subject ; and we can assure your Imperial Majesty, that we were touched with true Sorrow, when we saw how highly you resented the Violence which had been offered to your Imperial Majesty's own Person, in the Character of your Ambassador ; and we were the more grieved on this Occasion, when we reflected on the Insufficiency of our Laws, to give as ample a Satisfaction as we desired to make, as well for the just Sense we our Self had of the Indignity which had been offer'd, as to convince your Imperial Majesty how much we were inclined to make a suitable Reparation of the Injury done so good a Friend and Ally. But we must confess, that at the same Time we had a singular Pleasure in observing your Imperial Majesty's Desire to prevent the Misunderstanding which might arise therefrom ; and the great Esteem you shew'd for our Friendship ; as well as the Care you express'd to preserve and cultivate it, by reciprocal Marks of Friendship and Affection.

Wherefore, we promise our Self from your Goodness, that upon the Representations which from Time to Time have been made to you in our Name, by our Envoy-Extraordinary at your Imperial Court, your Imperial Majesty will be pleased to examine into the Nature of this Affair ; where your Imperial Majesty will see, that we have not the least Inclination to favour the Criminals, nor to screen them from Justice ; but that there are insuperable Difficulties, with respect to the ancient and fundamental Laws of the Government of our People, which, we fear, do not permit so severe and rigorous a Sentence to be given, as your Imperial Majesty at first seemed to expect in this Case : And we persuade our Self, that your Imperial Majesty, who are a Prince equally famous for Clemency and for exact Justice, will not require us, who are the Guardian and Protectress of the Laws to inflict a Punishment upon

‘ upon our Subjects, which the Law does not empower us to do.

‘ Nevertheless, we have not been wanting, at the same Time, to use all the Means which we judged most effectual, to persuade your Imperial Majesty, and the whole World, of the Sincerity of our Intentions, and of our Endeavours in this Affair. And to the End the Guilty might be punished so far as the Laws and Constitutions of our Kingdoms which were then in Force, would permit; we gave exprefs and repeated Orders to our Officers of Justice, and to our Ministers, to prosecute them with the utmost Severity.

‘ The Prosecution has been long continued with very great Diligence, and nothing has been omitted to bring it to as speedy a Conclusion as possible. But after all, the Matter is such, that we find our Self obliged to inform your Imperial Majesty, That as well because of the different Pleadings in Favour of the Criminals; the slow, but indispensable Manners of proceeding in a Law-Suit of so great Importance; as of the Case itself, which is of an extraordinary Nature, against which no sufficient Provision is made in the ancient Statutes of these Kingdoms; it has not hitherto been in the Power of our Council learned in the Law, to obtain a Sentence, nor a final Decision of this Affair.

‘ Wherefore considering all these Inconveniences, and foreseeing the Delays which might probably happen in the ordinary Course of Law; and desiring, at the same Time, to give you signal Marks of our Sorrow, as also to shew you the Indignation of all our Subjects on this Occasion, we have passed an Act of Parliament made in the most solemn Manner, by the great Council and Assembly of our Kingdom of *Great-Britain*, wherein is made a Declaration, as authentick as possible, of the just Horror which our Subjects in general have against this violent Insult; and all the Acts

and Proceedings which relate to the Arrest of the Person of your Imperial Majesty's Ambassador, are annull'd and raz'd out of the Registers of our Courts of Justice; and those who had a Share therein, are branded as infamous Criminals, and obnoxious to the Laws which were then in Force; and if any Person hereafter durst commit the like Offence, or any ways violate the Privileges of Ambassadors, and other foreign Ministers, they will be liable to the most severe Penalties and Punishments, which the arbitrary Power of the Judges shall think fit to inflict upon them, and to which no Bounds are given in this new Act. So that all Insults of this Nature will be prevented for the future, and the Security which all Princes Ministers ought to enjoy, will be firmly established and preserved by this famous Law. And this will remain as a Monument to all Posterity, of the Deference which has been shewn to your Imperial Majesty; and all the Ministers which shall come for the future, will be indebted for this extraordinary Act for their Protection, to the particular Consideration which we and our People have for your Imperial Majesty's Honour. As therefore your Imperial Majesty cannot but see, that we have used our utmost Endeavours in prosecuting the Criminals, and in causing them to be punish'd, tho' not with the Success we could have wish'd: And since we have procured an Act to be made by the Representatives of all our Subjects of *Great-Britain*, as well for Reparation of what has been done, as to prevent the like Insolencies for the future; we instantly pray your Imperial Majesty to accept of all that we have done on our Side, as the most we could do here for your Satisfaction; whereby your Imperial Majesty will give us the strongest Proof that can be of your constant Affection towards us; and you may be assured, that we shall not fail on our Side, to do all that lies in our Power, on

on all Occasions, to shew you our Gratitude by our firm Frindship and Esteem.

And to the End that nothing may be omitted, which is in our Power to do farther, by way of suitable Reparation, we have thought fit to make choice of some worthy and able Person, to declare to your Imperial Majesty in the most publick and solemn Manner, the Indignation we conceived at the Affront offered, and our Concern that it is not in our Power to cause the Criminals to be punish'd according to their Deserts. And as our Trusty and Well-beloved Mr. *Charles Whitworth* has merited our Royal Approbation by his Ability and Experience in all the Affairs which have been intrusted with him, as also by his good Conduct at your Imperial Majesty's Court, for several Years past; we have therefore given him a special Power and Commission to represent our Person, as our Ambassador-Extraordinary upon this Occasion, and to make such Excuse and Declarations in our Name, as will, we hope, give your Imperial Majesty entire Satisfaction. And we do hereby desire your Imperial Majesty to be pleased to admit and receive the said Mr. *Charles Whitworth* as our Ambassador-Extraordinary for this End, and to give Credit to all that he shall say to you in our Royal Name, as if we were present to do it in Person. We will only add, as a Mark of our Esteem for your Ambassador himself, who suffer'd this Insult, that as we were sensible of his Personal Virtues and great Qualities during his Residence at our Court, so we were more particularly concern'd, that such an Injury should be offer'd to a Gentleman of so great Merit and Consideration, being, besides, the Ambassador of so great a Prince, and so good an Ally. And so praying, that the great Dispenser of all good Things will vouchsafe to pour forth his Heavenly Benedictions upon the Person and Kingdom of your
D 5 Imperial

Imperial Majesty, we recommend you to his holy Protection.

Given at our Palace
at *Windsor*, the —
Day of *August*,
1709.

Your Imperial Majesty's
most affectionate Sister,

ANNE, R.

His Czarish Majesty having received this Letter from the Hands of the Ambassador, deliver'd it to the Count *de Golowin*, Great Chamberlain of his Empire, and was pleased to make the following Answer in his own Tongue.

His Czarish Majesty's Answer.

IT was but requisite, that her Majesty the Queen should have given Us Satisfaction, by punishing the Criminals conformably to our Demands, in the most rigorous Manner, as is the Custom in such Cases throughout the Universe; but seeing her Majesty has order'd you to make Excuses in the Quality of her Ambassador-Extraordinary, conferr'd upon you expressly for this Purpose, and to remonstrate, That her Majesty could not inflict such a Punishment upon them, because of the Defect in that Particular, of the former establish'd Constitutions of her Kingdom; and that with the unanimous Consent of the Parliament, her Majesty has caused a new Act to be pass'd, to serve as a Law therein for the future; we accept all this for a Proof of the Affection her Majesty has for us, and for sufficient Satisfaction; and we will give Orders to our Ministers to settle entirely this Affair with you in a Conference.

His Czarish Majesty having concluded his Answer, his Excellency the Ambassador retired backwards out of the Hall, making three Obeisances in the same Manner as when he came in, and was conducted

ducted back to his House with the same Ceremony, and the same Train, and accompanied by the chief Carver and the Cup-bearer; the former of whom treated him three Days successively, by express Order of his Czarish Majesty, with the greatest Plenty, Delicacy, and Magnificence, the Officers of his Czarish Majesty's Household serving at Table.

The 9th of the same Month, O. S. his Excellency the Ambassador came to the House of his Excellency the Count *de Golovin*, Great Chamberlain of the Empire, and there had a Conference with him, and other Ministers of his Czarish Majesty; in which this troublesome Affair was terminated, to the mutual Satisfaction of the two Powers; the Differences which had been occasion'd by so ill an Accident were compos'd, and the ancient Friendship and good Correspondence between the two Crowns renew'd, on Condition that the following Articles, which were stipulated, should be perform'd, the Ambassador of her *Britannick* Majesty engaging to procure the Execution of the last but one.

I. That his Czarish Majesty, Emperor of *Great-Russia*, will send Orders to M. *de Matueof*, his Ambassador Plenipotentiary at the *Hague*, to notify provisionally, by a Letter to her Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain*, that Mr. *Charles Whitworth* being vested with the Character of her Ambassador-Extraordinary, Commissioner and Plenipotentiary, expressly and purposely to make Excuses on Occasion of the Affront in Question, has perform'd that Commission, and that his Majesty having Regard to the Instances of her Majesty the Queen, has been pleased to accept the said Excuses made in her Name, for Satisfaction of the Outrage done at *London* to the Ambassador of his Czarish Majesty; with an Intention thereby to shew the high Value he puts upon the Friendship of her *Britannick* Majesty, and on the Continuance of that Friendship, and in hope of the like Return on her Part in Occasions wherein his Czarish Majesty may be concern'd; and that in Consequence hereof, his Czarish Majesty is willing

willing to forget the Criminal Proceedings of the Authors and Accomplices of the said Affront, and desires her Majesty the Queen to be pleased to order them to be discharged from the Process issued against them, and from the Sentence pronounced, and the Penalties to which they are condemn'd for the said Insult.

II. His Czarish Majesty having a just Regard to the faithful and signal services which his said Ambassador, who was insulted, has perform'd, and in a gracious Remembrance of the laudable Zeal of his deceased Father, his Excellency M. *Artemon Sergiciewitz de Matueof*, first Minister and Boyarin in the Reign of his Czarish Majesty's Father and Grandfather of glorious Memory, who, in exhorting Rebels to Obedience, crown'd his faithful and important Services with his Blood, shed by the Mutineers; he cannot but (in Token of his Favour, and of his great good Will towards him) demand, after his own Satisfaction, the particular Satisfaction of his Minister, namely, the Reparation of his Honour and that of his Family, by the Expedient of a Letter from her Majesty the Queen, and the Re-imbursement of all the Costs and Damages which he had been oblig'd to be at, and to suffer on Account of the said Affront.

III. His Czarish Majesty will give Order to his said Ambassador to demand his Letter of Recre-dence, which he refus'd to accept when he left *London*, as well as the usual Present, and the Yacht which her Majesty caus'd to be offer'd to him, and this because of the aforesaid Affront.

IV. All that is above specified being executed, his Czarish Majesty will acquaint her Majesty the Queen that he is content with the aforesaid Satisfaction by a Letter which shall be delivered to the Ambassador. Mr. *Whitworth*.

Thus was the Difference ended between the Czar and the Queen of *Great-Britain* to the Satisfaction of both Crowns.

Soon after his Czarish Majesty's Arrival in his Capital, his Niece *Anne Feodorovna*, the fourth Daughter of his elder Brother the Czar *John*, was married to the Duke of *Courland*, *Frederick-William* the Son of *Frederick II.* fifth Duke of *Courland*, and *Elizabeth-Sophia* of *Brandenbourg* Sister to *Frederick I.* King of *Prussia*. But this young Prince falling ill, left her a Widow a few Days after their Marriage. This Lady is at present Empress of *Russia*, and seems to have the Glory of her Country as much at Heart as the Great *PETER* her Uncle; she very early shewed her Ability to govern, and while Duchess Dowager of *Courland*, by her prudent Behaviour gained the Love of her Subjects there, as much as she has that of the *Russians*, and the Esteem and Admiration of the rest of the World.

About the same Time his Majesty received the agreeable News of the taking of *Elbing*, a considerable Town in *Polish Prussia*, where there was a Garrison of eight or nine hundred *Swedes*.

General *Nositz* at the latter End of *January* being posted within three *Russ* Miles on the Avenues leading to the Town, kept it shut up in such a Manner that nothing could be carried into it, nor any Person come out. As it froze very hard, and the double Fosse of the Town was covered with a thick Ice, the *Russian* Commandant, to make the best of that Circumstance, formed a Design of scaling the Town with Sword in Hand; the better to succeed in which he commanded out 2000 Men, and divided them into seven Bodies, to make so many Attacks at five o' the Clock in the Morning; that is to say, five real Attacks and two feign'd, with Orders in Case one of them should succeed, to push the *Swedes* home without giving them Time to recollect themselves: Pursuant to this Order the Troops moved under the Command of Brigadier *Balk*, and after they had passed the Ditches, they scaled the Wall on the Side of the new Town and of the Corn Magazines, and enter'd the Place, notwithstanding the Fire of the Cannon, with which the

the Ramparts were well furnished, and the Opposition of the main Part of the Garrison, besides which the Bastions and Works had Mines under them.

The *Suedes* were pushed to the Bridge of the old Town over the River, where for some Time they made an obstinate Resistance; but in the End they were obliged to give Way, and were pursued to the great Square of the old Town, where Brigadier *Balck* made all the Garrison Prisoners, with the two Lieutenant-Colonels who commanded them. This Action was the bolder, because the Town was fortify'd with twelve Royal Bastions, two Ditches filled with Water, and a high Wall with Ramparts of Turf.

Major-General *Nostitz*, in Consideration of the gallant Behaviour of the commanding *Swedish* Officers in this Action, returned them their Swords till the Czar's Pleasure should be known. Those Officers confessed that they could not conceive how the Major-General came to hazard such an Enterprize, and yet less how it came to succeed so happily, attributing the Success entirely to the good Conduct and Bravery of the Officers and Soldiers of his Czarish Majesty's Troops; who in this Conquest did not lose above twenty-eight Men, while they took Prisoners the Lieutenant-Colonels *Bethun* and *Fager*, ten Captains, thirteen Lieutenants, twelve Ensigns, ninety-five Subalterns and Gunners, and seven Hundred and seventy-six Soldiers.

The Czar departed from *Moscow* the latter End of *February*, in order to go into *Poland* by the Way of *Petersburgh* and *Livonia*; the *Czarewicz*, who had been some Time in *Poland*, was gone from *Cracow* to *Warsaw*, the Czar designing he should visit several Courts of *Europe* before his Marriage with the Princess of *Wolfembuttel*, which was then in Treaty.

In this Interval King *Augustus* held a Diet at *Warsaw*, the Members of which were greatly divided among themselves, the greatest Part of whom made the Continuance of the *Russian* Troops in *Poland* their Pretext for fomenting Divisions in the Republick;

Republick; which alone would have obliged the Czar to keep his Troops there, that he might not lose the Fruit of his Conquests, one great End being to drive *Stanislaus* quite out of *Poland*.

The Forces before *Riga* kept the Town in a manner block'd up, throwing several Bombs into it from Time to Time, the Besieged made a few useless Sallies, and the Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetof* seemed resolved to reduce this important Place by Famine. The Czar being now at *Petersburgh* undertook himself a very bold and difficult Enterprize, which was to penetrate into the Great Duchy of *Finland*, to which Purpose he thought proper to begin with the Siege of the principal Town on that Side, and having got together about twenty Thousand Men, he advanced with them, some by Water, and some by Land, towards *Wybourg*, the Capital of *Swedish Carelia*, and a Port of great Importance to the *Swedes* on the Gulf of *Finland*.

Admiral *Apraxin* came before the Town in the Night between the 2d and 3d of *April*, and attacked the Suburbs, which the Besieged abandon'd after having set Fire to two of their Magazines; the *Russians* taking Possession of the Place quitted by the *Swedes*, extinguished the Flames, and seized on three Ships that were in the Port. His Czarish Majesty came before the Town with Part of his Fleet, which brought Provisions, and Ammunition, and the necessary Artillery, consisting of eighty Pieces of Cannon, twenty-six Mortars, and two Hundred and fifty Coehorns. A Squadron of thirteen *Swedish* Men of War presented itself to oppose their landing, but dar'd not undertake any thing. The Siege was pushed on with Vigour, which nevertheless continued till *June*, when the Garrison desired to capitulate. The Governor obtained Leave to march out with Arms and Baggage; but Count *Apraxin* when he came out, caused him and his Garrison to be detained Prisoners of War, as a Reprisal for several Practices of the *Swedes* contrary to the Laws of Nations and the Use of War.

That

That General published a Sort of Manifesto, containing the Reasons which induced him to this seeming Breach of a Capitulation; it consisted of three Articles.

I. That a *Muscovite* Ship being sent to the *Swedish* Fleet with a Flag of Truce, commanded by Lieutenant *Smith*, with Letters from the *Swedish* Prisoners in *Russia*, to receive in Exchange those of the *Russian* Prisoners in *Sweden*, as had been often practised in the like Cases, the said Ship was detained without any manner of Reason, and the Flag of his Czarish Majesty pulled down and torn.

II. That contrary to the Usage of Christian Princes, the Czar's Resident *Chilkow* had been arrested at *Stockholm*, and his Effects confiscated; notwithstanding his Czarish Majesty had sent back the *Swedish* Resident *Knipercroon*, on Condition that he should procure the Enlargement of the *Russian* Minister, who, on the contrary, was more closely confined than ever.

III. That at the Time when the War was declared, all the *Russian* Merchants and their Effects were seized in *Sweden*, some were condemned to hard Labour, and some had dy'd of Hunger.

General *Apraxin* declared that as soon as the Regency of *Sweden* gave Satisfaction on these three Complaints, the Garrison should enjoy all the Advantages that had been promised them by the Capitulation. Nevertheless he permitted all the Officers that were wounded, and all the Widows and Children of those that had been killed, to go where they pleased with all that belonged to them.

The Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetof* was no sooner informed of the Surrender of this important Place, but he gave Notice of it to the Governor of *Riga*, to whom he had some Days before wrote a very civil Letter to exhort him to prevent a greater Effusion of Blood, and the total Ruin of the Town, and offer'd him a very honourable Capitulation, seeing it was impossible for him, in the Condition he was, to defend himself many Days longer. But

General

General *Stromberg* answer'd all these civil Invitations only from the Mouths of his Cannon. He every Day expected Succours by Sea, but the *Russians*, Masters of the Entrance into the River, lined the Banks with three Hundred Pieces of Cannon, raised on six Redoubts, at a Distance from each other, and had made a strong Staccado in the Water, behind which a Bridge of Boats bore twelve large Guns to defend it; so that the Fleet imagining it impossible to surmount so many Difficulties, retired, after having lost some of their Shallops which they had ventured to send up.

At length, on the 29th of *June*, O. S. being the Feast of St. PETER, whose Name his Czarish Majesty bore, when the *Russian* Generals were at Dinner with the Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetof*, Count *Stromberg* sent out one to notify that he desired to capitulate, and would send Deputies for that Purpose. The next Day the Velt-Mareschal sent two Colonels and an Auditor into the Town for Hostages; and his Coaches brought eleven to the Camp, viz. two Colonels, two Assessors of the High Court of Justice, two Deputies from the Nobility, two from the Magistracy, two from the Burghers, and one Auditor: Being brought into the Presence of the Velt-Mareschal, they made a Speech to him; and he nominated two Colonels, and one Auditor, to treat with them. The Capitulation proposed contained a great Number of Articles, which were mostly agreed to by the Velt-Mareschal, being willing to give them a favourable Impression of the Czar's Government, who had promised to restore to the Nobility that submitted to him, all the Estates which the *Swedes* had taken from them by their Chamber of *Liquidations*, which was a sort of Court of Justice established by *Charles XI.* Father of *Charles XII.* on his own Authority, by which he took away the Estates of many of his Subjects.

Of twelve Thousand Men, which had composed the Garrison, but five Thousand came out, three Thousand of which were sick. When the Men came

came before the Velt-Mareschal Czeremetof, he caused the Remains of two Regiments of *Carelia*, and one of *Wybourg*, to pass over into his own Army, alledging that those Places being now conquer'd, these national Troops ought no longer to be considered as *Swedes*. Besides these, Major-General *Alfendeyl*, five Colonels, twenty Lieutenant-Colonels, an Engineer, an Adjutant-General, nineteen Majors, thirty-seven Captains, fourteen Lieutenants, and some Ensigns and Cornets, with almost all the *Livonians*, put themselves under the Protection of his Czarish Majesty. There were above five hundred Pieces of Artillery found in the Town; but no Provisions, and very little Ammunition: Sixty Thousand of the Citizens were dead of the Plague and of Hunger, during the Time of the Siege.

According to the Articles of Capitulation, the Garrison of *Riga* was to have been transported into *Sweden*, but this was not perform'd, for the Reasons given in the following Declaration, pretty much the same as Count *Apraxin* gave for detaining the Governor and Garrison of *Wybourg* Prisoners.

A DECLARATION made by his Excellency M. Brois de Czeremetof, first Marshal-General of his Czarian Majesty, Emperor of Great-Russia, commanding in Chief his Army in Lithuania, Colonel of a Regiment of Horse and of Foot, Knight of the Order of St. Andrew the Apostle, as also that of Maltha, and of divers other Orders, to Monsieur the Count de Stromberg, late Governor-General of *Riga*, August, 1710.

IT is declared by these Presents, on the Part of his Czarian Majesty, Emperor of Great-Russia, my most favourable Master, to the Count de Stromberg, Counsellor to the King of Sweden, and late Governor of *Riga*; that the Agreement which I concluded with the Count de Stromberg, having been by me most humbly reported to his Czarian Majesty, I have received the following Orders from

from his Majesty thereupon. That his Majesty should have been very willing, that that Agreement, and all the Articles it contains, might have been put in Execution; but as the Conventions made with his *Swedish* Majesty, during the Course of this War, hath not been made good on the King's Part, which hath been injurious and prejudicial to his *Czarian* Majesty; and especially that at the Beginning thereof, after the Battle of *Narva*, notwithstanding the Agreement which his *Swedish* Majesty himself made with the Generals of his *Czarian* Majesty, who commanded there at that Time, and against the Parole pronounced by his own Mouth, *viz.* that they should be let pass free with all their Troops and Arms: The said Generals, with many Officers and Soldiers, were arrested, contrary to the Law of Nations and Customs of War, and after having transported them into *Sweden*, they treated them there very cruelly, and shut them up in vile Prisons, which they did not Prisoners of War, and hold them to this Hour, as the Publick has been inform'd by the Protestation which has been made on the Part of his *Czarian* Majesty, and even by the Mediations of other Potentates. As also they have, contrary to the Law of Nations, not only arrested in *Sweden* Prince *Andrew Chilkof*, Envoy to the *Swedish* Court before the Commencement of this War, but also hold him there shut up with great Indignity, as we have been certainly inform'd by the Officers of his *Czarian* Majesty lately come from thence; and yet notwithstanding that the *Swedish* Resident *Kniperkeron* was sent from *Moscow* two Years ago, upon Condition that he should procure the Liberty of the said Prince *de Chilkof*, whom however they have not enlarged: For this Cause in Reprisal of that violated Agreement and Breach of Parole, his *Czarian* Majesty hath ordered me to arrest the Count *de Stromberg*, with the Major-General *Klot*, all the Officers, and half the Soldiers that are in Health, till we can be exactly inform'd of the Number of
Mus-

Muscovite Soldiers that were arrested contrary to Agreement; his Majesty, out of his Generosity, permitting the other half of the Soldiers of the said Garrison, and all the sick and wounded, to pass without Hindrance to *Sweden*, and to carry with them the Cannon, Colours, Drums, and all the stipulated Effects, altho' the *Swedish* evil Treatment deserve other Treatment: And 'tis concerning this that the Grand Chancellor, by Order of his *Czarian* Majesty, sends a Letter to the said Prince *de Chilkof*, to the End that he may propose all to the Senate of his *Swedish* Majesty, that he may get himself exchanged against the Count *de Stromberg*, and the other Officers and Soldiers detain'd at *Riga* exchanged against the *Muscovian* Generals, Officers, and Soldiers who are now in *Sweden*, and who have been arrested contrary to the Royal Word aforesaid. And if on one Side the high Officers are wanting, they shall be supply'd by Subalterns; and if to be the Number of the *Swedes* detain'd at *Riga* shall be found greater than that of ours which have been arrested, his *Czarian* Majesty, out of his Generosity, will release them all, even the Supernumeraries of the Garrison of *Riga*, provided the *Swedes* do the same by all his Generals, the Resident Officers and Soldiers, as it is expressed with full Circumstances in the Letters of the Grand Chancellor to the Resident abovemention'd. That for the Conveyance of this Letter to *Stockholm*, the Count *de Stromberg* shall on his Side send a Major from among the Officers that are detain'd, Count *Stromberg*, and the other Officers, giving Security in Writing, that the said Major shall return to *Riga* with an Answer in two Months Time at farthest, and further, that the said Count shall on his Part inform the Senate of his *Swedish* Majesty of this Declaration, and send them the Copy of it, to the End that due Care may be taken for the Exchanges as aforesaid, and to send back the Major at the Time agreed. And if the Senate refuse to exchange the

said

said Prisoners, and to give any Answer in two
 Months, that then the said Count, and all the
 other *Swedes* now detain'd, shall be carried to
Muscovy, or to some other neighbouring Places,
 as Prisoners of War, and they shall never be en-
 larged but upon the aforesaid Exchange. More-
 over, his Czarian Majesty orders, that it be de-
 clared to the *Swedish* Senate, that his Majesty con-
 sents, that besides the Exchange above-mention-
 ed, his Officers and Soldiers taken Prisoners by
 lawful Arms, and detain'd in Captivity, shall be
 exchanged against the *Swedes* that have been made
 Prisoners in the same Manner, Employ for Em-
 ploy, those excluded which are now arrested by
 way of Reprisals. Pursuant to the Declaration,
 the Moiety of the Soldiers in Health of the Gar-
 rison of *Riga*, with all the Sick and Wounded,
 Cannon, Colours, Drums, and stipulated Effects;
 as also two Officers to guard the Colours, are de-
 parted from *Riga* for *Sweden*.

His Czarian Majesty, who impatiently waited
 for this News, received it with much Joy, and
 immediately gave Orders to complete the Conquest,
 by adding to it that of the important Fortrefs of
Dunamuden-Skantz, situated at the Mouth of the
Duna, as its Name imports. It held out a Fort-
 night, and was then forced to surrender, the Plague
 destroying as many or more Men than the *Mus-
 covite* Bombs and Bullets. His Majesty likewise or-
 der'd at the same time, the Sieges of *Pernau*, of *Re-
 vel*, and of *Kexholm*; these were of no long Continu-
 uance, and gave but little Trouble, the Scourge
 of Heaven assisting the Sword of the Czar; *Per-
 nau* yielded on the 21st of *August*; and *Kexholm* on
 the 19th of *September*; *Arnsberg*, in the Isle of *Oesel*,
 followed the same Example. *Revel* capitulated on
 the 9th of *October*; of 50,000 Inhabitants in this
 Town, the Plague had spared but 3000. This was
 the last Place of any Consequence, in *Livonia*, that
 the Czar had not made himself Master of.

His Majesty having now reduced that whole Province to his Obedience, began to regulate the Affairs of it, and take all necessary Precautions to secure his Conquests. To gain the Affection of the People, he promised them, not only the Continuation of their Privileges, but likewise to discharge them from several heavy Burthens they groaned under, during the Regency of the *Swedese*. He also publish'd a Proclamation to encourage Trade and Navigation, and permitted the Exportation of all the Goods of the Country, except Timber fit for Ship-building, which he thought he should have an Occasion for himself, being resolved to have a considerable Fleet in the *Baltick* in a short Time.

He invited Strangers from all Parts to re-people this fine Country, which the Plague and the War had rendered almost desolate; and having sent a Resident to *Hambourg*, where the *Russians* did not use to have one, he ordered him to give Passes to all those who were willing to come and settle in *Livonia*; and, to gain the Gentry of the Country entirely, he formed fifteen *Livonian* Regiments, the Officers of which he designed to have all of that Nation.

All foreign Ships which came into the Harbours of *Livonia* after his Czarish Majesty's Conquest thereof, were treated with all possible Civility, and nothing was neglected by the *Muscovites* to render their Government acceptable both to the Natives and Foreigners. His Majesty thus making a double Conquest of the People, first of their Persons, and then of their Affections. This is another glorious Period of Time in the Reign of PETER the GREAT, with which I shall conclude this Book.

End of the First BOOK of Vol. II.



 B O O K II.

The CONTENTS.

The Project of a Neutrality in the Empire. Transactions and War with the Turks. The Action and Peace of the Pruth. The Czar's Generosity to Prince Cantemir. Peace concluded between the Czar and the Turks.

HIS Czarish Majesty being now Master of the whole Province of *Livonia*, once esteem'd the richest Jewel in the Crown of *Sweden*, it seem'd very probable, that his Forces, united to those of *Augustus*, and his other Allies, would very shortly have likewise reduced *Pomerania*, and the other *Swedish* Dominions in *Germany*, to his Obedience, if the high Allies, in Confederacy against *France* and *Spain*, had not interposed, to prevent the Flames of this War spreading themselves within the *Roman Empire*. In order to which, they had concerted the following Project, which was signed *March 31, 1710*, for preserving the Neutrality of the Empire.

WHereas his sacred Imperial Majesty, her sacred Royal Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain*, and the High and Mighty Lords the States-General of the *United Netherlands*, have always had, and still have at Heart the Preservation of the Tranquility and Peace within the Empire; and therefore having communicated their Thoughts thereupon to some of their Allies, have

some

' some Time since earnestly exhorted the Princes
 ' at War in the *North*, to concur in the Preservation
 ' of the said Peace and Tranquility, and inter-
 ' posed their good Offices to prevent the same from
 ' being disturbed upon Account of the War in the
 ' Northern Parts, and likewise that the said War
 ' may not bring any Prejudice or Inconvenience to
 ' the Allies engaged in the War with *France*, either
 ' by recalling of Troops, or any other Way what-
 ' soever. And whereas his sacred Czarish Majesty,
 ' and his Allies the King of *Poland* and *Denmark*,
 ' have, without any Delay or Hesitation, declared,
 ' That they are firmly resolved to do nothing that
 ' may be the Occasion of disturbing the Peace of
 ' the Empire, or prove in the least a Prejudice or
 ' Inconvenience to the Allies in the Prosecution of
 ' their Designs against *France*: And whereas they
 ' have, at the same time, desired to be assured that
 ' the Forces of the King of *Sweden*, that are now
 ' in *Pomerania*, shall not return into *Poland*, nor
 ' commit any Hostilities within the Territories of
 ' the Empire, and that therefore their Ministers
 ' have often earnestly desired that the Allies above-
 ' said will give them a full Security on that Point,
 ' which Instances have been supported by the good
 ' Offices of his sacred Royal Majesty the King of
 ' *Prussia*.

' And whereas the *Sieur Palmquist*, Envoy-Ex-
 ' traordinary of *Sweden*, after having communicated
 ' these Instances to the Regency appointed for the
 ' Government of *Sweden* in the Absence of his *Swe-*
 ' *dish* Majesty, and received their Directions there-
 ' upon, has declared, That *Sweden* would do no-
 ' thing that might obstruct a perfect Neutrality
 ' within the Empire, and therefore engaged on the
 ' Part of the Crown, that the *Swedish* Troops in the
 ' Empire will commit no Hostility therein, nor
 ' against *Jutland*, provided, and upon Condition,
 ' that *Sweden* be secured on their Part, that the
 ' Forces of the King of *Denmark*, that are on this
 ' Side the *Baltick* and *Jutland*, the Duchy of *Sles-*
 ' *wick*,

Swick, the Dominions belonging to that Crown in *Germany*, or in the Service of the high Allies, shall not commit any Hostility against *Sweden*, within or without the Limits of the Empire; which Condition, on which *Sweden* consents to the intended Neutrality within the Empire, having been afterwards communicated to the King of *Denmark*, the Allies abovesaid, in order to preserve the Peace and Tranquility within the Empire, have proposed, that the King of *Denmark* engages and promises on one Part, that his Forces in *Jutland*, the Duchy of *Sleswick*, or within *Germany*, shall commit no Hostility against any one, whosoever he be, within or without the Limits of the Empire, the Duchy of *Sleswick* and *Jutland*, and their Dependencies; and likewise that the Regency of *Sweden*, on the other Part, engages and promises, that the Forces of the King of *Sweden* in *Pomerania*, and other Parts and Provinces within the Empire, shall not return into *Poland*, nor commit any Hostility against any one whosoever, within or without the Bounds of the Empire, the whole Duchy of *Sleswick*, *Jutland*, and their Dependencies; with this further Declaration on the Part of the Allies abovesaid, that they are inclined to take some Troops of both Parties into their Service, and agree for the same with all possible Conveniency: Upon which Declaration and Proposition, the *Sieur Stocken*, Secretary of the King of *Denmark*, residing here, having renewed the Protestations of his said Master, that he does not intend to cause the least Prejudice or Inconveniency to the Allies, either by the recalling of his Forces, from their Service, or otherwise, has further declared in the Name of his Royal Majesty, that his said Majesty, to give a new Instance of his Affection towards the Allies, and comply with their Desires, consents and engages, that if it is positively declared on the Part of *Sweden*, that their Forces in *Pomerania*, under the Command of General *Grassau*, and their other

VOL. II. E Troops

‘ Troops in the *Swedish* Provinces situated within
 ‘ the Empire, shall commit no manner of Hostility
 ‘ against the Dominions of the King of *Denmark*
 ‘ and his Allies, within or without the Bounds of
 ‘ the Empire, that then his said Royal Majesty of
 ‘ *Denmark* shall not withdraw any of his Forces
 ‘ from the Duchies of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, or *Fut-*
 ‘ *land*, and transport the same on the other Side
 ‘ of the *Baltick*; and that the Forces to be sent to
 ‘ his Assistance by his Czarish Majesty, shall not
 ‘ pass through *Germany*, or any Territories belong-
 ‘ ing to the Empire, promising himself, and ex-
 ‘ pecting that the Allies will, without any further
 ‘ delay, interpose their Guaranty for the Security
 ‘ of the said *Neutrality* within the Empire, the Du-
 ‘ chy of *Sleswick* and *Futland*.

‘ Therefore the underwritten Plenipotentiaries and
 ‘ Deputies of his said Imperial Majesty, her sacred
 ‘ Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the Lords
 ‘ the States-General of the *United Netherlands*, having
 ‘ seriously considered the repeated Desires of his
 ‘ Czarish Majesty, and the Kings of *Poland*, *Den-*
 ‘ *mark*, and *Prussia*, for the Preservation and Gua-
 ‘ ranty of the *Neutrality* aforesaid, within the Li-
 ‘ mits of the Empire, and having received Orders
 ‘ thereupon from the Emperor, the Queen of *Great-*
 ‘ *Britain*, and the States-General, declare and no-
 ‘ tify, by Virtue of these Presents, in the Name
 ‘ of his sacred Imperial Majesty, her sacred Royal
 ‘ Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the Lords the States-
 ‘ General of the *United Netherlands*, that the Decla-
 ‘ ration of the Intentions of the Princes at War in
 ‘ the North, for preserving the Tranquility of the
 ‘ Empire, its Peace and *Neutrality* in all the Pro-
 ‘ vinces belonging thereunto, and in the whole Du-
 ‘ chy of *Sleswick* and *Futland*, is very acceptable unto
 ‘ them, promising that his sacred Imperial Majesty,
 ‘ her sacred Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and
 ‘ the Lords the States-General, will jointly use their
 ‘ Endeavours that the *Neutrality* within the Terri-
 ‘ tories of the Empire be no ways violated; but
 ‘ on

on the contrary, that the same be strictly observed by the respective Parties; and in order thereunto, that the Forces of the King of *Sweden* in *Pomerania*, and other Parts in the Empire, shall not return into *Poland*, nor commit any Hostilities against any one, whosoever he be, within or without the Bounds of the Empire, the whole Duchy of *Sleswick* and *Futland*, and their Dependencies; and likewise, that the Forces of the King of *Denmark* in *Futland*, the Duchy of *Sleswick*, or other Provinces within the Empire, shall commit no Hostilities against any one, whatsoever he be, within or without the Limits of the Empire and Duchy of *Sleswick* included therein; as also, that the Forces which his Czarish Majesty may perhaps send to the Assistance of the King of *Denmark*, may not march through the Territories of the Empire; so that all the Provinces of the Empire, and every one of them may be free from any Passage of Troops upon Account of this War in the North, and enjoy a perfect Tranquility. Furthermore, the Underwritten aforesaid declare, that his sacred Imperial Majesty, her sacred Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the Lords the States-General of the *United Netherlands*, have resolved in the Manner as is aforesaid to maintain the Peace and Tranquility of the Empire. And although after the Declarations abovesaid, it is not likely that any of the Parties making War in the North, shall infringe the same, or go about to do any thing contrary thereunto; however, if contrary to all Expectation any one offers to violate this *Neutrality*, the Allies abovesaid will, in such an unexpected Case, unite themselves with the Party who shall have observed the said *Neutrality*, and shall require Satisfaction for the same, and employ their joint Forces for preserving the said *Neutrality* in the Manner above related.

And that this Declaration may have a more ready Effect, his sacred Imperial Majesty will endeavour to procure the Accession and Concurrence

' of the Empire thereto, and the Queen of Great-
 ' Britain, and the Lords the States-General, shall
 ' invite thereunto the Empire, the Princes and States
 ' who have concerned themselves in the Preserva-
 ' tion of the Peace of the Empire, to confirm, by
 ' Accession to this Declaration, the Guaranty of the
 ' same. Copies of this Declaration shall be given
 ' to the Ministers of his Czarish Majesty, and their
 ' Royal Majesties of Poland and Denmark, on one
 ' Side, and to that of his sacred Royal Majesty of
 ' Sweden on the other, who shall be desired at the
 ' same Time to use their good Offices, that his Cza-
 ' rish Majesty, and their Royal Majesties abovesaid,
 ' may accept the present Declaration, and act no-
 ' thing contrary thereunto.

Done and Sign'd at the Hague,
 March 31, 1710.

And Sign'd,

PHILIP LUDOVIC,
 Count DE ZINZENDORF,
The Prince and Duke of MARLBOROUGH,
 TOWNSHEND,
 RANDWYCK,
 ALARD MERENZ,
 A. HEINSIUS,
 GHEEL VAN SPANDROEK,
The Baron de RHEEDE,
 VAN RENSWOUDE
 VAN GOSLINGA,
 ITTERSUM, and
 W. POTT.

*The following is the Czar's Declaration relating to the
abovesaid Act of Neutrality.*

HIS Czarian Majesty the Emperor of *Great-Russia*, signified by a formal Declaration, which his underwritten Ambassador and Plenipotentiary did in his Name, and in Conjunction with the Ministers of his high Confederates, exhibit here in the past Year 1709; that in Consideration of the Reasons moving those his Confederates, and also his Imperial Majesty of the *Romans*, her Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the High and Mighty Lords the States-General of the *United Netherlands*, to provide for the Conservation of the Tranquility of the *Roman* Empire; and that he might give a new Proof of his sincere Regard to the Common Interest of the High Allies engag'd in the Western War; he would not pursue the *Swedish* Forces, which under the Command of Major-General *Crassau* retired out of *Poland* into *Pomerania*; notwithstanding the Rights of just War would have warranted such a Proceeding of his Czarian Majesty, and his high Confederates; and notwithstanding natural Equity and common Justice called loudly for a Retaliation and Reprisals upon the Territories of *Sweden*, for the innumerable, most unexampled, and malicious Violences with which the King of *Sweden* had ravag'd and laid Waste the Empire of *Great-Russia*, the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the Electorate of *Saxony*.
Nor will his Czarian Majesty decline giving further Proofs of the deep rooted, daily growing, and most constant Friendship which he bears to the high Allies engag'd in the Western War: And therefore understanding by Letters from his said Ambassador, that the High and Mighty Lords the States-General, upon concerted Councils with the Ministers of his Imperial Majesty, her Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and others of their Allies, did first on the 28th of *November*, next upon

' the 24th of *December* of the past Year 1709, and
 ' after on the 13th of *February* of the present Year,
 ' declare by their Resolutions, that they would
 ' maintain Tranquility in the Empire, *Poland, Sax-*
 ' *ony, and Jutland*: And last of all, that the Se-
 ' nate (or Regency) of *Sweden* having previously
 ' declared their Willingness to concur to the said
 ' *Neutrality*, the Ministers of his Imperial Majesty,
 ' and of her Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, toge-
 ' ther with the Deputies of the High and Mighty
 ' Lords the States-General did on the 31st of *March*
 ' this Year, by Virtue of full Powers vested in them
 ' by their several Principals, undertake, promise,
 ' and declare, that for the Preservation of Peace
 ' and Tranquility in the Empire, the Electorate of
 ' *Saxony*, the Duchies of *Holstein, Sleswick and Jut-*
 ' *land*, the *Swedish* Forces should not return out of
 ' *Pomerania* into *Poland*; and that in case of Con-
 ' travention or Violation of the *Neutrality*, their
 ' Principals would take care to join their Arms
 ' with those of the injured Party, and oppose the
 ' Aggressors; a Copy of which Declaration they
 ' deliver'd to each Minister of the Princes who
 ' are at War in the North, to serve as a Gua-
 ' ranty to the Parties on both Sides therein in-
 ' terested: He has commanded his said Ambassa-
 ' dor to notify to his Imperial Majesty, her Royal
 ' Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the High and
 ' Mighty Lords the States-General, (as he does by
 ' these Presents) that his Czarian Majesty is satis-
 ' fied with that Declaration, and will abide by
 ' what is stipulated therein; but upon the follow-
 ' ing express Condition, that his Imperial Majes-
 ' ty, her Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and the
 ' High and Mighty Lords the States-General, with
 ' the rest of their Allies, do, pursuant to the said
 ' Declaration, which is to serve for a Guaranty,
 ' immediately concert most effectual Measures, with-
 ' out any Loss of Time, for preserving this *Neutra-*
 ' *lity* in full Force, and for preventing and remov-
 ' ing all Obstacles and Practices repugnant there-
 ' to:

to: And if on the Part of the *Swedes* this established *Neutrality* be violated, his Czarian Majesty and his high Confederates, will not only look upon themselves to be discharg'd from all Obligations to it on their Part, but will in firm Confidence, expect that his Imperial Majesty, her Royal Majesty of *Great-Britain*, the High and Mighty Lords the *States-General*, and the rest of their high Allies will agreeably to the Tenor of the Authentick Instructions above-mentioned, join their Arms with those of his Czarian Majesty and his high Confederates, to repress the Attempts of the Infraction of the said Tranquility.

Done at the Hague the
3d of July, 1710.

Sign'd,

A. DE MATUEOF.

The DECLARATION of the Envoy of Sweden, by way of Remarks on the Neutrality.

SWEDEN consents to the *Neutrality* in Germany, on the Terms wherein it has been concerted at the *Hague*: In hope, that the Maritime Potentates will interest themselves therein more effectually than they have done; and on express Condition, that there be a particular Guaranty to settle more clearly the Security, with Respect to the said *Neutrality*, than does the Act which was sign'd here; that is to say,

That the said Guaranty be in express Terms *contra quoscumque*, and that it be not allowed to any Potentate, of either Party, to procure out of, or to pass over the Territories of the Empire, any Forces to act against the other Party, either as new Levies, Recruits, or by whatever other Name they may be called.

King *Augustus*, and the King of *Denmark*, publish'd Declarations likewise, by which they shew'd their readiness to agree to the *Act of Neutrality*; but that of *Sweden* not being positive, and importing some Conditions which would have admitted great Difficulties, that Crown was desired by the High Allies to give their Consent to it in general, without any Exceptions, which they did at last, by the following Declaration given by their Envoy at the *Hague*.

' *SWEDEN* having from the Beginning agreed to the Neutrality concerted at the *Hague* the 13th of March last, declares again, that she adheres thereunto, and is willing to observe it, upon this only Condition, that her Enemies shall be equally bound to observe the same.

Done at the *Hague*,
Aug. 4, 1710.

Sign'd,

J. PALMQUIST.

The High Allies, to shew that they were resolved to maintain this *Neutrality*, agreed upon their respective Quota's of Troops. The Emperor, *Great-Britain*, and the other Members of the Grand Alliance were to furnish 15 or 16,000 Men, and as the Czar and the King of *Poland* had insisted upon having the Forces under General *Craffau* disbanded, or put into the Service of the High Allies, except what were sufficient for the Garrisons in *Pomerania*, a Negotiation was actually set on Foot with the *Swedes* for taking 9000 Men into the Pay of the High Allies.

But altho' this Scheme of *Neutrality* was calculated more for the Advantage of the King of *Sweden* than any other, and was for the Preservation of his Provinces in *Germany*; yet, to the Surprise of every Body, he wrote to the Powers concerned therein, in very passionate Terms, reproaching them with

with intending to tie up his Hands, and hinder him from acting against his Enemy; with other Expressions of the like kind. As the King of Sweden thus thought fit to reject the *Act of Neutrality*, his Czarish Majesty could no longer think himself bound by it: But, after some previous Declarations, caused his Army to march into Germany to begin the Operations of War against the Swedish Provinces there.

Charles XII. in the mean time, had been well received in Turkey, and munificently treated by the Grand Signior, which gave him mighty hopes of being assisted with a powerful Army to make fresh Head against his Rival in Glory; these Hopes were not without good Grounds, for the Grand Vizier had told the Swedish General *Poniatowski*, That he would take the King in one Hand, and his Sword in the other, and lead him to Moscow at the Head of 200,000 Men. But Count *Tolstoy* the Czar's Envoy managed Matters so well at the sublime Porte, that the Talk of this War soon ceased, and greater Honours were paid to him than any Muscovite Minister had ever before enjoyed at Constantinople; nay, such Encouragement was given him; that his Czarish Majesty thought proper to demand *Mazeppa* to be delivered up to him as *Charles* had demanded the unfortunate *Patkul*; and such was his Interest with the Vizier, that it is thought this would have been comply'd with, had not *Mazeppa*, now 70 Years of Age, died in the Interim. But the greatest Mortification to the King of Sweden, and what filled him with the strongest Resentment, was to hear that the Muscovite Ambassador was publicly served at his Table in Constantinople by Swedish Prisoners, now made Slaves, who had been taken in the Battle of *Pultowa*, and that many of them were daily sold in the publick Markets.

The Grand Vizier, *Chourlouly Ali-Basbaev*, who had thus gone off from him to his Enemy, was soon after deposed, and *Numan* Couprously put in his Place; but this Minister, having too much Probity

and Honour to do some Things which might have established him in the Favour of the Grand Signior, maintain'd his Post but two Months, after which he was sent to his Government of *Negropont*. But during his short Administration, he had determin'd the Grand Signior to allow the King of *Sweden* a considerable Body of Men to re-conduct him into *Poland*; *M. Tolstoy*, with very little Success, endeavour'd to oppose this by the sharpest Remonstrances, and sending Advice of it to, the Czar, his Majesty wrote the following Letter to the Grand Signior.

‘ **B**Y Letters written to us some Time since, in the Name of your Sultanean Majesty, we were informed, That your Sultanean Majesty had confirmed and approved by an Instrument, and by Oath, the Thirty Years Peace made between us and your Brother Sultan *Mustapha*, and were by those Letters assured likewise of your inviolable Observation of that Peace. This was extremely acceptable to us, and we could not but assure your Sultanean Majesty in return, that we would inviolably keep the said Peace on our Part, unless your Sultanean Majesty should by some voluntary Infraction oblige us to act otherwise.

‘ After the Confirmation of the said Peace, we well hoped, that your Sultanean Majesty, for removing all Causes of our suspecting any Violation of it, would have obliged our Enemy the King of *Sweden* (who in Conjunction with some *Cossacks* our rebellious Subjects, and by bribing the *Cham* of the *Tartars* into his Interest, uses indefatigable Endeavours to procure a Violation of the said Peace) to depart your Dominions. To facilitate this, we offered and promised, that our said implacable Enemy might, with a *Turkish* Guard of Five Hundred Men, pass homewards unmolested by our Troops; though by the Right of Nations, every Prince is allowed to pursue and seek his Enemy where he may be found: And

as to the rebellious *Cossacks*, our Subjects, we forbore to demand that they should be delivered up to us, but contented ourselves with your Sultanean Majesty's Promise to expel them your Territories. Yet we afterwards understood to our great Regret, not only that neither the King of Sweden was sent away from *Bender*, with the foresaid Number of Guards, nor the rebellious *Cossacks* expelled your Sultanean Majesty's Territories, according to your Promise, and agreeable to the Pacification between us; but likewise, that the Number of *Turkish* and *Tartarian* Troops encreased continually at *Bender*; that the Cham of the *Tartars*, the *Bashaw* of *Silistra*, and some Persons of your Court who were sent thither, held Councils with the said Enemy; and that he himself boasted in his Letters, that your Sultanean Majesty would for his sake violate the Peace so lately agreed to and confirmed with us, and make War against our Czarian Majesty. What is more, the *Cham* not only gave Leave to the rebellious *Cossacks*, and to the Adherents and Servants of *Mazeppa*, commanded by the *Nekrastoff* to invade and lay waste our Territories, and carry off People into Captivity, but furnished them with all Assistance: Also many *Grim Tartars* and *Cuban Tartars* assisted them, and having lately invaded the Territory of *Suma*, plundered the Villages *Nerebraiskium*, *Torzewisnia*, and that of *Miaiekinkam* near *Zebedin*, carrying away many Captives: And what gives us the most Umbrage is, that the said rebellious *Cossacks* have been permitted to elect one of their Number, an infamous Person, by Name *Orlicus*, to be the new Leader and Chief of the *Zaporoski Cossacks*, to the great Scandal of those *Zaporoskians* our Subjects who continue faithful to us.

We are likewise inform'd, that by Command of your Sultanean Majesty, your great Vizier *Numan Bashaw* has, among other things, notify'd to our Minister residing at your Court, that your Sultanean Majesty will give the King of Sweden a Guard

Guard of 40,000 Men to conduct him through Poland; that you desire our Army may entirely evacuate Poland, and what we most wonder at, is, that such Proportions as lead directly to a Violation of the Peace should be made, when by our Ambassador residing at your Majesty's Court, we have represented to the illustrious Porte, that if the King of Sweden shall enter Poland with such a numerous Army of *Turks* and *Tartars*, it will be taken by us, by our Confederate the King of Poland, and by the Republick of Poland for a Violation of the Truce.

We therefore make known to your Sultanean Majesty our true Intention, and leave you to consider, that if the King of Sweden did not industriously seek to incite Dissensions between our Majesty, Yours and the Royal Majesty of Poland, he would not sollicite your Majesty for a free Passage through Poland, when there are divers Routes through *Hungary* and *Germany*, by which he may freely pass to his own Dominions, and in which Routes he has no Enemy to obstruct his Passage; but if your Sultanean Majesty be desirous that the King of Sweden should be conducted safely through our Forces and those of Poland, you may give him the aforesaid Guard of 500 Men, or even 3000 *Turks*, but no *Tartars*; for these being of a Disposition to violate the Peace, cannot be admitted to serve as Guards on this Occasion. With such a Number of Guards, that King shall pass to *Pomerania* unmolested, either by ours, or by the *Polish* or *Saxon* Troops through Poland, *Silesia*, or *Hungary*, whichever he shall rather chuse. Which Offer we make purely for the sake of your Sultanean Majesty, and firmly promise to perform; notwithstanding the Law of Nations might excuse us from making any such Proposition to our Enemy.

But if these our Terms, which by all the World must be deemed favourable, are not accepted by your Sultanean Majesty; and if, according

ing to the Vizier's Notification, the King of Sweden be sent with so numerous an Army into Poland, we shall be obliged with our Confederates, to take it for a plain Violation of the Peace; and if any Evil ensue thereupon, or Effusion of innocent Blood, we shall be justify'd, and for our Part, as a faithful Ally of his Majesty, and of the Republick of Poland, whom we have not relinquish'd in their greatest Distress, and when the Swedes were in their most flourishing Strength, we will not decline assisting them now that our Affairs are in a prosperous Condition, and those of the Enemy low; especially since by Virtue of our Alliance with the King and Republick, we are oblig'd at present to assist the Poles with 30,000 Men, and in Case of Necessity, with all our Forces, against all Enemies whatever, as they are mutually oblig'd to assist us.

All which we refer to your Sultanean Majesty's clear Judgment; hoping that you, being a peaceable Prince, and a Lover of Right and Justice, will not comply with these Endeavours of the King of Sweden to create Divisions, and set on foot such pernicious Designs.

We will expect from your Sultanean Majesty a speedy Declaration, with an Assent to, and Performance of our Requests. For the rest, our Ambassador will not be wanting to make a more ample Representation to you of these Things, whereto we refer ourselves.

Done at *Petersburgh* the 27th of *July*, 1710.

This Letter made no Alteration in the Resolutions taken at the *Porte*; and *Baltagi Mahomet*, *Bashaw* of *Syria*, who had been once before *Grand Vizier*, being now restored to that Post, gave fresh Hopes to the King of *Sweden*, from the Interest he had in some of his Friends and Creatures. He spared no Pains to render the *Russians* odious to this Minister, and an Occasion at this Time offer'd itself to favour his Designs. It had been a constant Custom

Custom for all foreign Ministers, on the Promotion of a Grand Vizier, to desire an Audience, to felicitate his Highness, which is the Title he assumes, on his Elevation to the First Post in the Empire. The Ambassador of *Russia* was the first who demanded his Audience, but was answered, that the Precedence had been always given to the Ambassador of *France*, as the Minister of the most ancient Ally of the *Porte*, and of one to whom they had always given the Title of Emperor.

The *Russian* Ambassador reply'd to this, That the Monarch of *France*, among all Christian Princes, was looked upon only as a *King*; and not as an *Emperor*, which was a Title more suitable to his Master as a Sovereign of *Great-Russia*; and moreover that the Precedence was due to him as Ambassador-Extraordinary.

This Dispute was kept for some Time on the Carpet, while many Books and Registers were examined, but it not being found in any Treaty between the *Sublime Porte* and his Czarish Majesty, that any other Title had been given to the latter than that of Czar of *Russia* or *Muscovy*, it was determined that his Ambassador could not be admitted to an Audience before the Marquis de *Feriol*, the Ambassador of *France*.

M. *Tolstoy* protested, but to little purpose, against this Determination, and let the Grand Vizier know, that since the Case was so, he must be deprived of the Honour of waiting upon him. The *Tartars*, the *Swedes*, and the *French*, did not fail to insinuate to the Vizier, that this Answer was full of Pride and Contempt for his Person; they likewise made the most of some Complaints made of the *Russians* on the Frontiers of the Empire, which all together, with the Management of the Cham of *Tartary*, had the desired Effect of bringing the *Porte* to a Declaration of War.

The Cham, greatly encouraged by many large Promises from the King of *Sweden*, had for his own private Interest, vigorously espoused his Cause; and,

and, at the Instigation of the Palatine of *Kiew*, and General *Poniatowski*, represented to the Chief Ministers at the *Porte*, that the *Muscovites* upon several Pretences had many Times fallen upon innocent *Mahometans*, contrary to the Tenor of Treaties and Capitulations, and murdered them: That the Pride and great Power of the *Czar*, together with the perpetual Motions of his Troops on the Frontiers, were grown intolerable, that his continual building of Ships at *Azoff*, and fitting out a considerable Fleet of Men of War, Gallies, and Brigantines, openly threatened the Empire with a sudden and unexpected Invasion upon the first Opportunity; That therefore out of Conscience and Duty, as a right *Mahometan*, he was obliged to acquaint and assure the Grand Signior, that the *Tartars* and other Inhabitants under him were not safe in and about the *Grim-Tartary*, in the present Posture of Affairs: That besides, he was upon good Grounds justly alarmed for *Constantinople* itself, and consequently, that it was high Time to prevent those imminent Dangers with which the *Ottoman* Empire was threatened, and dissipate them by vigorous Resolutions and Measures, before it was too late. The *Cham* concluded his Representation, that as he was a faithful Servant of the Empire, he was bound to give a particular Notice to the *Porte* of what he had related, and added, that he thought it absolutely necessary, that the Great Council, (consisting of the *Viziers*, the *Mufti*, Lawyers, Generals, and High Officers of the Forces) should be forthwith called together, and that each Member thereof should be allowed the free Liberty of Speech, to declare their Sentiments without any Fear or Restraint.

According to this Advice the Great Council was called, and met in the Chamber of Audience, and the Grand Signior being sat behind a Curtain, the *Cham of Tartary* made a long Harangue, in which he acquainted his Imperial Majesty and the whole Council, with all the Particulars beforementioned; concluding, that it was high Time to prevent those

Dangers

Dangers which threatened the *Ottoman* Empire with a total Subversion, by Resolutions fuitable to the Exigency of Affairs, and to send home the King of *Sweden* through *Poland*, with a formidable Army, that he might vigorously attack *Muscovy* on that Side, and help to humble that proud Enemy, as he call'd him.

He communicatd at the same Time some Letters, said to be wrote by several *Polish* Grandees of Note to the King of *Sweden*, the Palatine of *Kiew* and General *Poniatowski*, wherein they promised, that as soon as the King of *Sweden* and the *Polish* Generals afore said, were advanced on the Frontiers of *Poland* with a considerable Army of *Turks* and *Tartars*, they, with the greatest Part of the Republick, would join them, in order to deliver their Country from *Muscovites* and their Adherents.

When the Cham of *Tartary* had finished his Speech, the Lords of the Great Council were commanded freely to declare their Opinion, but no one had the Courage to contradict any Thing he had said; but on the contrary, the Question being put to the Vote three times successively, they concluded that War was to be declared against *Muscovy*, and the sooner the better. Upon which the Mufti was consulted to know if it was lawful according to the *Alchoran*. The Question put to him was in the following Words.

' The Emperor of the Musselmans, whom God
' Almighty preserve, and prosper his Reign for
' ever, having concluded and confirm'd a Peace
' with the King of the *Muscovite* Nation, and the
' latter having made Slaves of several Musselmans,
' living on the Frontiers of the *Ottoman* Empire,
' and done several other Things in Violation of the
' Peace; and this being an evident Matter of Fact,
' 'tis desired to know, if, for preventing any fur-
' ther Damage to the peaceable Musselmans, 'tis
' lawful, according to Law, to assemble the Forces,
' and declare War against the said King, and whe-
' ther this is necessary.

The

The Answer of the Mufti was very fhort, being in thefe Words: *The Law answers, 'tis neceffary.* Hereupon the *Muscovite* Ambaffador was immediately clapt up in the Caftle of the *Seven Towers*, and he would have been put to Death, if the Grand Vizier had not difsuaded the Sultan from fo extraordinary a Violation of the Law of Nations.

Upon an Account of this brought to the Czar, he wrote the following Letter to the Grand Signior, which had as little Effect as his former.

1711. ‘ **T**HOUGH we wrote twice to your Highnefs, namely, the 28th of *July*, and 29th of *October*, of the laft Year, That according to intercepted Letters, and by the long Abode of the King of *Sweden* in your Territories, it was to be fear’d, that that Prince and his Adherents, with the *Cossacks*, Rebels to us, and to the King of *Poland* our Ally, would, by means of the traiterous Palatine of *Kioo*, and others who find Refuge in your Territories, endeavour to engage your Highnefs in a War: For which Reafons, we defired that your Highnefs would caufe his *Swedijh* Majefty forthwith to depart your Territories, and return into his own; offering him a free Paflage through our Armies, under Guard of four Thoufand *Tartars* and five Thoufand *Turks*, in cafe your Highnefs fhall think it proper for his greater Security. This was what our Ambaffador was charged to propofe to you: And his *Polijh* Majefty having likewise confented to it, we were bound to anfwer that free Paflage.

‘ Moreover, we declared, that in cafe your Highnefs would grant a more numerous Guard to the King of *Sweden*, and conduct him into *Poland* by Force of Arms, this would be look’d upon by Us, and by his *Polijh* Majefty, as a Proof that your Highnefs had a Mind to break the Peace of *Carlowitz*; and, that we fhould be obliged to oppofe the fame to the utmoft of our Power, by
‘ Virtue

‘ Virtue of the Alliance, whereby we are mutually bound to assist each other.

‘ We are not the Violaters of the Peace, but would religiously observe it on our Part, to prevent the Effusion of human Blood. God will, surely, revenge it on the Fomentor of the War, and Violators of the most solemn Treaties; and should the King of *Sweden* offer to return into his Dominions by any other Way than has been proposed to him, under Colour of greater Security, we shall look upon that Proceeding as an open Violation of the Peace.

‘ We have not yet received any Answer from your Highness to our former Letters, nor from our Ambassador, to let us know whether he deliver’d them to your Highness, and whether he had any Answer or not: But on the contrary, we have received certain Advice from several Places, that our Ambassador has been arrested; that the War against us has been resolved upon at *Constantinople*; that Orders are given for forming an Army at *Bender*; and, that the *Tartars*, who are ready to conduct the King of *Sweden*, are commanded to enter *Poland* by Force of Arms. Wherefore, we thought fit to write this Letter to your Highness, to exhort you once more to answer our former, and to let us know, whether you intend to observe the Treaty prolonged with us last Year for thirty Years, confirmed with several Oaths made before the universal Judge of all our Actions, or to violate it without the least Occasion on our Part given.

‘ We also declare, That in this Case we receive no Answer touching your Intention to observe the Peace, and that your Highness continues your Military Preparations, for guarding the King of *Sweden* thro’ *Poland* with a powerful Army; we shall look upon this as an open Violation of the Truce; and calling God to our Assistance, shall provide for our own Safety, and endeavour to repulse

repulse our Enemies with the Army we have sent upon the Frontiers.

In the mean while, if the Rupture of the Peace be attended with the Effusion of human Blood, we declare before God and Man, that it will not be our Fault, but that we shall have been forced to it. We likewise take God to witness, that it was never our Intention to break the Truce, but to observe it religiously, as we promised. Wherefore, without trusting in any vain Imagination, but only in the supreme Judge, we hope he will defend us against all Disturbers of the Peace, and Violators of Oaths.

We expect, therefore, an Answer to these Presents; and in case none comes, we shall look upon it as a Breach of the Peace: But if we see by your Highness's Answer, that your Intention is to let us alone, and inviolably to maintain the Peace with us, (the King of Sweden being sent back, without its being in any wise infring'd) all our Umbrage will cease.

And as our Army is advancing towards the Frontiers, without committing any Act of Hostility, the Rupture cannot be attributed to us; the less, because if the Satisfaction that is required be given us, our Troops shall forthwith withdraw from your Neighbourhood, and we will inviolably maintain the Truce with your Highness. We wish your Highness perfect Health.

Given at *Petersburgh*

the 16th of *January*, 1711.

Sign'd,

PETER.

No Answer was given to this Letter; but the following MANIFESTO was sent to all the Governors and Officers in the Provinces and Towns belonging to the *Ottoman Empire*.

IT having pleased Almighty God to make Peace between my Empire and the Czar of *Muscovy*, in the Year of our great Prophet * 1112; and the

Articles

A. D. 1700.

Articles of Peace and Friendship then stipulated, having ever since been duly respected and performed on our Part; it has been observed, that he, on the contrary, has, from that Time to this, continually endeavour'd to disturb our Empire, and the Provinces depending thereon, after an hostile Manner, and to oppress, as much as possible, the faithful Inhabitants of the same by the Violation of the Freedom of the Limits, and other unjust Proceedings; and particularly in building a strong Fortress near *Caminieck*, against the Ingress and Egress of the *Crim*; in daily erecting other Castles and Forts in several Places, the more to curtail the Frontiers of our Empire; in equipping a prodigious Fleet in and near *Asack*, and that Sea: Moreover, in possessing himself of all the Fastnesses between the River *Borysthenes* and *Bog* in *Ukrania*, notwithstanding that Country did of old belong to *Poland*; and was, during the Peace, left on our Part in her Possession; likewise in passing by Force the Rivers *Samaris* and *Bog*: And also possessing himself, contrary to the Articles of Peace agreed upon, of *Niester* and *Jassy*, Seats of the *Weywodes* of *Moldavia*, within eight Leagues of *Bender*, on the other Side of the said River; and of two *Polish* Fortresses named *Saltin*, and *Gotin*, together with the other Places, situate from thence to the Frontiers of *Hungary*. And the King of *Sweden* having been defeated in the late famous Battle fought near our Frontiers, and obliged to retire, for the Safety of his Life, into the Territories of our Empire, and put himself under our Imperial Protection, the *Muscovites* pursued him forty-eight Leagues into the same, and had the Boldness to carry off three Hundred *Swedes* from thence, contrary to the Terms of the Capitulation. Farthermore, after the King of *Sweden* had been three Months at *Bender*, and sent seven Hundred of his Soldiers to *Carlowitz* in *Moldavia*, where they lay in Quiet, about six Thousand *Muscovites* surprized them, kill'd the greater Part, and made

made Slaves of the rest. And besides what is
abovesaid, some *Muscovites*, *Calmucks*, having join'd
the others, they penetrated by *Zittikyke* into the
Crim the 16th of the same Month *Muhazem* of
the present Year 1122, and having robb'd and
murder'd twenty innocent Persons, hostilely car-
ried away seventeen Hundred Horses from thence.
And lastly, besides the unbelieving *Muscovites* have,
since the foremention'd Peace, made it their Bu-
siness, upon all Occasions, to steal Horses upon
and within our Bounds, to make Slaves, to mur-
der Men, taking away their Goods, and commit
such other intolerable Violences; we are assured,
that the perfidious Czar is one while with his
Troops, another while he is riding in Person
thro' and round the Kingdom of *Poland*, to reduce
part of the Nobility to his Devotion, by falicious
Arguments, and other indirect Methods, and
to crush the others by continual Vexations, thus
by degrees possessing himself of all *Poland*, and
the strong Fortresses thereof bordering upon our
Frontiers; erecting new Forts here and there
upon the Frontiers adjoining to ours; and pro-
viding the same with Troops and Magazines of
Ammunition and Provisions, and having already
taken Possession of the strong Fortress of *Cam-
nieck*, with Design thus to go on, and approach-
ing *Moldavia*, and other our Frontiers, to open a
broad way into our Empire: Which repeated
evil Designs being publicly known, he now in-
dustriously seeks the Ruin of all such as are not
well pleased with the present Government of *Po-
land*; and lording it in *Poland*, would, under
Colour of Friendship, bring our Empire into
Confusion by his Craft and Treachery. Which
evil and fraudulent Maxims and Designs of the
unbelieving *Muscovites*, being every where per-
fectly known, all our Viziers, Judges, Coun-
sellors, Xantons, and other Members of the Divan,
assembled in our Presence, did not only freely and
unanimously declare, that a War with the un-
believing

believing *Muscovites* is highly necessary; but likewise the very wise and learned Lord *Ali-Mufti*, and High-Priest, of the truly faithful of the whole World, being question'd upon this Occasion, he was pleased to Answer, according to the Laws, that in Case it was true, that the King of *Muscovy*, during the Peace, had kill'd several Subjects of the faithful Frontiers, and made Slaves of others, and that this was manifestly found to be matter of Fact, and that he had thereby perfidiously violated the Peace; the Emperor of the *Believers* is bound, in Pursuance of the Laws, for the Defence of his Countries, and the frustrating of the King's evil Designs, to make War against him by the raising of Forces; for which End, a holy Resolution being publish'd in Writing, his Highness our Vicar and great Vizier *Mehemet Bassaw*, &c. is, for the Execution thereof, and for frustrating the Designs of the foremention'd *Unbelievers* against the *Believers*, order'd to repair in Person, with all our Troops in good Order, from *Greece*, *Anatolia*, and other Provinces by Land, and our whole Imperial Fleet by Water, towards *Asack*, (God willing) the beginning of next Spring, to make War against the unbelieving *Muscovites*, and to attack on all Sides, and annoy the Czar in his Rebellion and Perfidiousness, in such Manner as may be expected from us. But inasmuch as more Troops are required to do this than were employ'd in the War against *Vienna*, Thou my Vizier and Governor of *Aleppo*, shalt, for this Design, and for its desired End, appear in the Field with five Hundred well arm'd and disciplin'd Men, as the Troops of that Port, with all the *Aley-Beys*, *Barons*, and *Timar-lins* of the Territory of *Aleppo*. Accordingly, upon the Receipt of this my holy Order, thou shalt, without the least Neglect or Delay, get thee ready, with as many armed Persons as is before said, and break up from thence, with all the *Aley-Beys*, *Barons*, and *Timar-lins* of the Province, and (God willing) appear in our Imperial Army.

‘ Army in the Plain of *Adrianople*, on or before
 ‘ *George’s Day*. Moreover, thou art to take Care
 ‘ the Subjects be not oblig’d to furnish any Kind of
 ‘ Provisions without being paid for the same, nor
 ‘ otherwise burden’d, contrary to our Holy Laws;
 ‘ but at the appointed Time and Place appear rea-
 ‘ dily with the Troops above ordered.

Written in the Beginning of the Month
Silkade, in the Year 1122, in the Pro-
tecting Seat of Constantinople.

The Grand Vizier immediately made the necessary Dispositions for the Campaign, and in the Month of *March 1711*, went out of *Constantinople*, to put himself at the Head of the *Ottoman Army*, which was assembled near *Adrianople*, from whence he caused them to decamp to take the Route of the *Danube*.

Although his Czarish Majesty could not be informed of what was done at *Constantinople*, not only because his Minister was imprison’d, but because his Couriers were stopt on the Frontiers, so that of three Letters which he had wrote to the Grand Signior not one had been received, yet he learnt so much by other Hands, as to be ready Time enough to give Orders for being in the Field before the *Turks*. He likewise gave Orders for the Defence of *Azoph*, whether he sent Vice-Admiral *Vander Cruys*, with three hundred good Sea Officers, and leaving to Prince *Menzikoff* the Command of his Forces by Sea and Land in *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Finland*, he set out himself from *Petersburgh* to *Moscow*, that he might the more readily attend his new Levies, and dispatch a numerous Army into the *Ukrain*. The Generals *Repnin*, *Allard*, and *Galliczin*, conducted in three Columns, cross *Poland*, the best Part of the *Russian Troops* that were in *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*, and that his Army might be augmented in a short Time to 100,000 Men, the Czar order’d that they should raise through all his Dominions the fourth Man of all who were able to bear Arms, and the second of all the Valets of the Nobility, which

which last Article produced a great Number, there being no Country where the Nobility have more domestick Servants than in *Russia*.

The Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetof*, who was already on the Frontiers at the Head of his Army, received 30,000 Men of the new Levies; the Prince *Romanowdowskowsky* had Orders to advance with the Militia against the *Tartars*, and besides these his Majesty had made a Treaty with *Apaka Taquin*, Prince of the *Calmuc Tartars*, who sent him 25,000 Men, for which the Czar paid him 100,000 Ducats in Specie. Thus, without reckoning the Troops that remain'd under the Command of Prince *Menzikof*, or the *Cossacks*, his Czarish Majesty had got together an Army of 150,000 Men, all regular Troops, to go against the *Turks*; and *Apaka Taquin* taking hold of this favourable Opportunity to fall upon the *Precopian Tartars*, his Enemies, brought 50,000 *Calmuc Tartars* into the Field, and employed 22,000 *Circassians* against the *Dorzowski* and *Norcowski Tartars*, who are on the Borders, and occupy the Ramparts of *Crimea*. To all these Preparations the Czar joined the following MANIFESTO against the Conduct of the *Porte*.

The Czar's MANIFESTO against the Turks.

The JUSTICE of his sacred Czarian Majesty PETER I. Emperor of *Russia's* arming in his own Defence, against the perfidious Breaker of the Peace, *Achmet Sultan of the Turks*, set forth and published by his said Majesty's special Command.

TIMES have produced Revolutions: Peace and War have alternatively succeeded in the World; and Mankind in every Age has been toss'd with strange Vicissitudes: But the present Perfidiousness of the *Ottomans* is such as Antiquity can scarce parallel, and the modern Ages deservedly abhor.

‘ No doubt but the common Report of this has reach’d most Peoples Ears. Be it therefore manifestly known to all, how *Achmet*, the now reigning Sultan of the *Turks*, has impiously, frivolously, and without the least just Occasion, violated and broke the thirty Years Peace, concluded between his sacred Czarian Majesty, and his Predecessor Sultan *Mustapha*, though renew’d by himself this very last Year 1710, and ratified with a solemn Oath, in the Presence of the most High God of Heaven; which he afterwards confirm’d in his Letters; which he writ to his said Czarian Majesty, as in the publick Deed of Renovation. And yet in the Month of *November* of that very same Year, ere the Sun had completed its annual Course, he declar’d War publicly at *Constantinople*, and contrary to the Law of Nations, cast his Czarian Majesty’s Ambassador and Privy-Counsellor, *M. Tolstoy*, and his whole Family into the Prison call’d the *Edicul*, after having first affronted him in a most ignominious Manner, and seiz’d upon all his Goods.

‘ It is true he has not herein degenerated from his Forefathers, for being born an Enemy to the Name of CHRIST, he never articles with an Intention to observe the sacred Laws of Peace, but as a Man void of all Honour, does it only that he may afterwards with greater Security attack and utterly overwhelm those that rely upon the Religious Sanctions of publick Treaties.

‘ The Historians of former Ages, and especially that most excellent Patriarch of *Jerusalem S. Nectaris* testify, that the *Ottomans* from their very Beginning made it their chief Study to watch the Quarrels and Disagreements that at any Time happen’d between any Christian Princes or States: And that as often as they found Occasion, they never stuck at any Stipulations of Peace or solemn Oaths: And that thus the Offspring of Thieves and Robbers did in a few Years subdue to their own Dominion, so many ancient and re-

‘nowned Christian Kingdoms and Provinces, together with a great many Holy and Venerable Places, and at last became a most powerful and formidable People.

‘The poor oppressed *Grecians*, *Valachians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Servians* groan still under their Yoak, and their Misery shews them by woful Experience, how little a Value do those Barbarians set upon publick Treaties : Nor has the Kingdom of *Hungary* experienced less, to its great Detriment.

‘The *Russian* Monarchy still bears in Mind the Destruction with which it was threaten’d in the Year 1677, when in the Reign of the Czar *Theodore Alexowitz* Emperor of all *Russia*, of pious and glorious Memory, the perfidious *Turk*, being in Hopes that the *Lesser Russia* should become a Prey to his Ambition, through the Treachery of *Dorofzen*, General of the *Cossacks* beyond the *Borysthenes* broke the Peace, and with a vast and dreadful Army invaded the *Ukrain*. And though he had been already inform’d that the said Traitor had submitted to his Czarian Majesty’s Mercy, and that *Czigirin*, the Place of his chief Residence, was actually garrison’d by his said Majesty’s Forces ; yet finding that the noble Firmness of the *Russian* Troops did hinder him from penetrating into the *Ukrain*, he bent all that Fury which he design’d to make the whole Province feel, against that City, which he in vain besieged though but slightly fortified, insomuch that the *Russians* themselves would have abandoned and demolished it, but that the Exigency of the War required their keeping it for that Time. So that after a prodigious Loss of Men he was forced to retire to his own Territories loaded with Shame and Ignominy, and to beg Peace of his Czarian Majesty, which was concluded in 1681.

‘The memorable Slaughter made of these Peace-breakers at *Vienna*, in *Austria*, in 1683, and the wonderful Progress of the Christian Arms afterwards, are still fresh in every Body’s Memory : Nor,

Nor is it needful to mention the Insolence with which they then broke in, to besiege that Metropolis.

It is recorded, in the Archives of Christian Princes, that having seriously foreseen the cunning Designs, which the Barbarians formed, of swallowing up their several Dominions one by one, they entered into a holy and mutual League; to wit, his Czarian Majesty, the Emperor of the Romans, and the Roman Empire, his Polish Majesty, the Republicks of Poland and Venice, and the Pope of Rome. And their Czarian Majesties John Alexowitz of pious Memory, and Peter Alexowitz, who now happily reigns, being likewise invited, for the common Safety of Christianity, and induced both by the continual Irruptions of the Turks and Tartars into their Territories, and their hostile Incursions into the Dominion of other Christian Princes, joined first in a perpetual Peace, and a perpetual League, offensive and defensive, with his Royal Majesty the King of Poland in 1696; and the following Year 1697, in a triennial Alliance with his Czarian Majesty, the Emperor of the Romans, and the Republick of Venice, mutually engaging themselves to deliver the Kingdoms of Hungary, Slavonia, Dalmatia, and the Morea, together with the Cities of Tata (commonly called the Azoph) and Casikermen, from the Tyranny of the Infidels. Nor could this Design well fail of the wished-for Success, if by continuing the War a few Years longer, as his Czarian Majesty would have had it, the Enemy, who was already reduced to great Streights, had been brought so low, as not to have it in their Power, at the Peril of their unavoidable Downfall, ever to annoy the Christian World any where again.

But to our great Sorrow, this irreconcilable Barbarian did, at the Congress at Carlewitz, partly by Persuasions, and partly by Artifice, induce the high Confederates to enter into a Treaty with him, made room for Intrigues, sowed the Darnel

of Discord, and withdrew all the above-named Potentates from his Czarian Majesty's Alliance, and at last concluded a five and twenty Years Peace, exclusive of him; no other Remedy being left M. *Woznicni* his Majesty's Ambassador, but to adjust a Truce for two Years, on the 3d of July 1700, which was soon followed by a thirty Years Peace, concluded at *Constantinople*, between his Czarian Majesty, and the late Sultan *Mustapha*, by his said Majesty's Envoys, Messieurs *Ucrainsov* and *Czeredejew*; but enough being said of Things done so long ago, let us come to Matters nearer hand, which require a more diligent Examination.

His Czarian Majesty did so religiously observe the Articles of this Treaty, that though before it was ratify'd, the Sultan of the *Budziack Tartars* did offer to subject himself and his People, to the most powerful Scepter. The Proposal was rejected, because nothing should be done that might have the least Appearance of Contravention. Nor did the *Turkish* Subject, *Rubick Merza*, succeed better afterwards, when he came to *Azoph* with a considerable Body of *Cubak Tartars*, to offer also Homage.

And his said Majesty being resolved to observe that Peace still with more exactness; after it was ratified by his Ambassador-Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary, Prince *Demetrius Galliczin*, he joined all his Governors in the Frontier Towns, General of the *Zaporengian Tartars*, who are his Subjects, and all the other Commanders of his Troops, as well Natives, as Foreigners, under most severe Penalties, that they should not presume to disturb the Peace, and good neighbourly Friendship, by any Incursions into the Territories either of *Turks* or of *Tartars*.

And his Czarian Majesty, carried the punctual Observation of the Articles of this Treaty to that Height, that whereas some of the unruly *Zaporengian Tartars* did in the Year 1701, rob some *Gracians*,

Grecians, who were coming to the *Ukrain* with Merchandize; and that the Sultan of the *Turks* demanded the Damage to be made good, his Czarian Majesty knowing that it was to no Purpose to expect any Reparation from Robbers, order'd that the *Grecians* should be indemnified out of his own Treasury; and that a hundred Thousand Dollars of an Ounce Weight should be paid to them.

On the other Hand, notwithstanding this Peace was confirmed, both by the Sultan's own Letters and his solemn Oath: The *Turks* and *Tartars* did continually, and by all manner of Ways, injure his Czarian Majesty's Subjects, killing some, carrying others into Captivity, and taking away their Horses, and other Cattle, as the following Instances, faithfully extracted from the original Registers, do clearly mark out, as well the Crime, as the Time when it was committed.

In the Neighbourhood of *Azoph*, upon the Sea Coast, near the Towns of the *Cossacks*, from the Years 1700 to 1708 they killed 45, wounded 49, made Slaves of 1058, and took 7686 Horses, Camels, and other less Cattle.

His Czarian Majesty's Ambassador at *Constantinople*, made his Complaints of these Outrages, but to no Purpose; for neither their Damages were made good, nor any stop put to those Depredations, though on his Majesty's Side, the *Turks* receiv'd Satisfaction even to their most frivolous Pretensions.

Who would have doubted, but that after the above-mentioned Instances of his Czarian Majesty's true Friendship, in rejecting so many Homages offered him, he should, at least, have met with a suitable Return on the like Occasion; but it was quite otherwise.

The *Turks* in the Year 1708, did not only give Shelter and Assistance to the fugitive Rebel *Cossacks Necrasew* and his Adherents, but permitted

the *Tartars* to join with them and make Inroads into his Czarian Majesty's Territories.

Nor did they act with more Candour in the Year 1709, in reference to the Remnant of the *Swedish* Forces, after the glorious and memorable Battle of *Pultowa*; for the King himself, with as many of the Officers and Soldiers of his routed Army, as did escape the Conqueror's Sword, and his Czarian Majesty's Betrayer, the base *Mazeppa* with his Adherents, retiring into the *Turkish* Dominions, were protected there: And though by the Law of Nations, and War, his Czarian Majesty's Troops might have pursued them, yet they received Orders, by no means to approach *Oczakow*, where the Enemy, and the aforesaid Rebels, then were; but on the contrary to come back again to their own Frontiers. And whereas his Czarian Majesty did, first by his Ambassador, and afterwards by three different Letters which he writ to the Sultan, demanding, that he would not protect this Enemy, but that without further Delay, he would make him depart his Dominions, and deliver up the Rebels: Neither was complied with, nor any Answer returned to his Letters in a great while; but rather Leave granted to the Enemy, and the Rebels to invade his Majesty's Dominions, which they did, in Conjunction with the *Valachians* and *Tartars*, surprizing in the Night time the Town of *Gaborlick*, and carrying away the Commander, with whatever belong'd to him.

Afterwards, in the Year 1710, they carried off all the Inhabitants of *Targowitz* and *Nembaick*, with all their Substance, killed a Captain, and several Soldiers of the *Uman Cossacks*, and carried away another with One Hundred and Fifty private Centinels. They plunder'd a great Company of Carriers that were coming with Salt from *Molcenaw*, carrying away most of the Men, and all the Horses. They likewise robbed the Waggon's designed for carrying the Baggage of the

the Army, at a Place call'd *Kammen Zaren*, carrying off most of the Waggoners, and all the Beast of Carriage, and plundered the Town of *Gamenka*, in the District of *Gzigin*.

No Redress was ever made for any of these Damages, nor any satisfactory Answer given to the many Complaints made of such hostile Invasions, but the Matter still put off with frivolous Excuses.

The *Ottomans* at last, being resolved to carry on their wicked Designs, under the Mask of Peace: Their chief Minister, the Vizier *Ali-Basha*, proposed to his Majesty's Ambassador, that if his Majesty would consent to confirm the thirty Years Peace concluded between him, and the present Sultan's Brother, and give his positive Word, that he was firmly resolved to observe it; he promised, that the Sultan then would not only ratify it, but also the King of *Sweden's* Departure out of his Dominions should be agreed upon.

Hereupon, his Czarian Majesty was pleas'd to send full Powers to his Ambassador for that Purpose, and writ to the Sultan himself about it; upon which, the Sultan of the *Turks* did solemnly confirm the Peace with his Majesty in December 1709, and bound himself by Oath, calling the great God of Heaven to Witness (as shall appear by the Copy hereunto annexed) that he would religiously observe the Laws of it. And the Ratifications were afterwards mutually exchanged.

As to what concerns the King of *Sweden*: It was agreed with the chief Minister *Ali-Basha*, that 5000 *Turks* should be permitted to accompany him through *Poland* into his own Country: And that for his greater Security from being insulted by any of his Czarian Majesty's Troops, one of his Majesty's Officers, and some of the *Russian* Garisons, would receive him upon the Frontiers, and conducted him safe thither. But that in reference to the Rebel *Cossacks*, they should be all expell'd the *Turkish* Dominions.

‘ His Czarian Majesty gave his Consent to this Agreement also, and order’d Letters to be writ thereupon to his Ambassador. But the *Turks*, far from putting the Articles thereof in Execution, did neither dismiss the King of *Sweden*, nor expel the Rebels; but rather give way to several ill Designs that were carrying on against his Czarian Majesty.

‘ Upon Notice of these Artifices, his Czarian Majesty resolv’d to write a Letter to the Sultan (the Copy of which is hereunto annexed, and mark’d with an *A*) wherein he was pleased to declare to him, that he consented that the Number of the *Turks* designed to accompany the King of *Sweden* should be augmented to 3000; sending Orders at the same time to his Ambassador, to consent that they should be made 5000.

‘ But it was to no Purpose to expect any Answer to this Point; on the contrary, the Report began to increase, that the *Turks* began to incline their Thoughts to a War.

‘ Whereupon his Czarian Majesty ordered a second Letter to be writ to the Sultan, on the 18-29th of *October* 1710, (as appears by the Copy hereunto annexed, and mark’d with a *B*) and dispatch’d an Envoy-Extraordinary on purpose with it. But instead of an Answer, Word was brought to him that his Envoy, contrary to the Law of Nations, was seized, and put into a Dungeon, where he lies to this very Day.

‘ Couriers at length began to arrive from all Parts with Advice, that the Sultan, at the Instigation of the *Cham* of *Tartary*, had actually declared War at *Constantinople* against his Czarian Majesty, without any Cause given, and only with a bare Pretence, That his Czarian Majesty had given some Motives thereunto, as forced him to break the Peace, which is but a ridiculous Saying, for those very Motives pretended, were all decided by the last Peace. They further brought Word, that his Majesty’s Ambassador, after several base Af-

‘ fronts

fronts put upon him, was imprison'd: That Warlike Preparations were making against his Czarian Majesty, throughout the whole *Turkish* Empire: That Troops were drawing together about *Bender*: And that the Expedition was notify'd to all the *Turkish* Generals (commonly call'd *Bajba's*) with Orders to raise Soldiers.

These Proceedings were more than enough to expose the Perfidiouſness of the Sultan. However, his Czarian Majesty, to convince the whole World, that the Breach of the Peace, and the Effusion of Human Blood, which of Necessity must follow, ought not be laid to his Charge, but to the Sultan's; did, after all, though to little Purpose, order another Letter to be writ to him in his Name, dated at *Petersbourg* the 6-17th of *January* last, of the same Tenour with the Copy hereto also annexed, and marked with a C, viz. That if the said Sultan did not acquaint him out of hand with his positive Resolution of renewing, and strictly observing the Treaty of the Peace, he would look upon it as a real Breach of it: Nor would he suffer himself to be amused, or circumvented, by any Craft, but would, with God's Assistance, begin his Warlike Preparations with all Expedition, in order to oppose him early both by Sea and Land.

Now let the honest and impartial Part of the World examine the several Heads of the *Turkish* Declaration of War, so falsely, and so awkwardly, patch'd together and publish'd every where: As also the Crimes they charge us with.

The *Ottomans* give out, that they begin this War purely to assist the Rebel *Leczinski*, whom they look upon to be the right King of *Poland*, and to deliver the Republick from his Czarian Majesty's Troops. And that they do this at the Request of the said Republick, presented by Envoys commissioned thereto, viz. the deprived Palatine of *Kiow Potocky*, and *Poniatowsky*; but who in very Fact are Betrayers of their Native Country. And

likewise, because his said Czarian Majesty had refused, at the *Turks* Request, to withdraw his Troops out of that Kingdom, and relinquish his Royal Confederate *Augustus* the Second, King of *Poland*.

Who is the Man will say, that this was a Thing fit to be done? Or, that such a Demand was just? Whereas the whole Republick of *Poland*, and of the Grand Duchy of *Lithuania*, do own his Royal Majesty *Augustus* the Second, for their lawful King: And the said King, and Kingdom continue in Alliance with his Czarian Majesty, by Virtue of which, the said Troops are obliged to continue in *Poland*, as Auxiliaries; and that the King, and Senate, are under a Necessity of keeping them there. For it is as clear as the Sun at Noon, that their common Enemy, the King of *Sweden*, and the *Polish* Rebels, are protected by the Sultan, for no other End, but that through their Means a bloody War might be again kindled in the *Russian* and *Polish* Dominions. Besides, if his Czarian Majesty had withdrawn the said Troops, the Consequence would be, that the *Turks* introducing the King of *Sweden* into *Poland* on one Side, and *Leczinski* entering on the other, after having ravaged the whole Kingdom at their Pleasure, would unite their Forces, and fall upon his Czarian Majesty, and so create worse Disorders than the former. This is the Reason why his Czarian Majesty refused to comply with the *Turkish* Arrogance, or by relinquishing his Confederates, to expose *Poland* as a Prey to the Barbarians.

Why was not the King of *Sweden* all this while dismissed out of *Turkey* by some of the Ways proposed by his Czarian Majesty, either by Sea or by Land; or even with a select Guard, or by some other better Way; laying aside all those far-fetch'd and frivolous Pretences which are made use of? And then his Czarian Majesty would immediately withdraw all his Troops out of *Poland*, and out of the fortify'd Towns of that

Repub-

Republick, which for their common Security, he is at present obliged to Garrison, until the Danger be over.

The *Turks* complain, besides, in their Declaration of War, that his Czarian Majesty had built some Forts within the Boundaries of the *Ottoman* Dominions. But this Pretence is manifestly false; for his said Majesty caused no Forts to be built any where, but in those Places that were incorporated with his Empire, and expressly adjudged to belong to it, as well by the Treaty of the Peace, as by the Agreement adjusted upon, for ascertaining the Boundaries on the Side of *Tana*, vulgarly called *Azoph*, between M. *Tolsky*, Governor of the said City, and *Hassan Basbarw*, in 1704, and in the *Ukrain* between M. *Ukrainslow* and *Kasi-Mekemet Basbarw*, in 1705.

And as for what the *Turks* object in the same Declaration, about his Czarian Majesty's Troops breaking into their Territories in pursuit of the fugitive *Swedes*, where they killed some, and enslaved others: The *Muscovites* did this according to the Manner and Custom of War, with which the *Turks* did not find Fault, when the Thing was afterwards rightly explained to them. Besides that, this Affair was intirely adjudged, and forever to be hushed, by the last renewing of the Peace.

But as far as we may dive into the true Designs of the *Turks*, it appears to be, first, to force by a previous Aggression, his Czarian Majesty's Troops, who by Virtue of the Alliance with his Royal Majesty King *Augustus*, and the Republick of *Poland*, as is already mentioned, remain in that Kingdom as Auxiliaries to retire out of it: Next, to introduce the King of *Sweden* thither; afterwards to raise a Sedition, then drive the aforesaid lawful King again from his Throne: And last of all, to obtrude with Fire and Sword the Rebel *Stanislaus Leczinski*, whom the King of *Sweden* did by Violence set up: And so not only subject that
King.

Kingdom to the barbarous Yoke of the *Ottomans*, by a free Tribute of three Millions of Gold Ducats yearly to be paid by the Republick; but also that several Provinces, being for ever dismembred from it, should, together with the strong Fortrefs of *Caminieck*, be yielded up to the Infidels, according to the Promises made to the *Porte* by the King of *Sweden*, and by the late Palatine of *Kiow*, *Potocky*, and *Poniatowsky*, in *Leczinsky's* Name. Besides, what by the Artifice of their Confederates, what by Means of the *Swedish* Forces and those of *Leczinsky*, now lurking in *Pomerania*, to raise a Storm in the *Roman Empire*, and kindle a War there, which done, to carry on the War against his Czarian Majesty, in Conjunction with their Confederate the King of *Sweden*, and by the perfidious Means of the *Mazeppian* Rebels, and *Blavian Cossacks*, to foment Sedition within his Majesty's Empire; and thus to put in Execution those most pernicious and abominable Designs, which they have premeditated as well against his Czarian Majesty, and the King of *Poland*, as against the whole Christian World.

That therefore the Justice of his Czarian Majesty's Cause may clearly appear to all the honest Part of the World, and that he never since the first Minute of the Truce of *Carlowitz*, and the Conclusion of the thirty Years Peace, which the Sultan of the *Turks* has now basely broke, to this very Hour, gave him any Occasion for such a Breach; but did holily and religiously observe the same, notwithstanding the great and many Attempts made to the contrary on the Part of the *Turks*, what by Hostile Irruptions into his Dominions, and what by protecting his Rebel Subjects, and giving Shelter to his Enemy. And on the contrary, was graciously pleased to command this most wicked Breach of the *Turks*, to be exposed to all Mens View.

Let every Body now consider the Inclination which his Czarian Majesty has shewed all along for

for Peace; then discuss the just and moderate Steps he made in the whole Series of this Affair, and judge whether there was the least Occasion given on his Majesty's Side for breaking the Peace, and whether, after the previous Marks which he gave of his good Intentions, he could abstain from declaring War in his Turn, against this perfidious and perpetual Enemy of Christianity: And finally, let him conclude, that this imminent War was forced upon his Czarian Majesty, contrary to the Faith of Treaties, and the sacred Tye of publick Oaths; who thereupon, with God Almighty's Assistance, has resolved in his own Defence, to order his Army to march to his Frontiers against his perfidious Enemy, the Sultan of the *Turks*, and all his Confederates and Abettors, and to follow it himself in Person very soon, and committing, upon his bended Knees, the Justice of this Cause to the same great God's Judgment, thus betakes himself to Arms.

The following DECLARATION was likewise sent to all his Czars Majesty's Ministers in all the Courts of Europe.

W Hereas we have received certain Informations from divers Places, that the *Ottoman Porte* endeavours to justify the Violation of Peace already declar'd against us, and actually begun by the Irruption of the *Tartars* into our Territories, and for that Purpose charges us with several groundless Matters, by which they pretend they were forced to come to a Rupture, and amongst others, as if we were not inclined to continue in Peace with them, but had actually resolv'd to begin War; as also, that contrary to the Peace concluded with the *Ottomans*, we had erected several new Fortifications on our Frontiers; suffer'd our Troops to enter into the *Turkish* Dominions, and that we would not give them Leave to convey the King of *Sweden* in Safety back to his own

own Territories: We have thought it necessary,
 to declare herewith openly, that we never have
 had the Intention, to break, in any manner what-
 soever, the Peace concluded between us and the
Ottoman Porte, and to enter into a War with the
Turks; but the same has been hitherto religiously
 and inviolably observed by us. The Fortifica-
 tions erected by us, are likewise in no Respect
 against the Treaty, but upon our own Territo-
 ries, which partly belong'd to us of old, and
 partly were yielded to us by the Treaty and the
 Limits marked out by the Commissaries on both
 Sides; and which have been fixed many Years
 ago; it is therefore to be wonder'd, that the *Porte*
 would take Occasion to complain thereof at this
 Juncture; our Troops never entered the *Turkish*
 Dominions, but remained on the Frontiers, and
 altho' they did some time ago, according to the
 Law of War, pursue their Enemy into the *Turkish*
 Territories, and seiz'd them therein, which how-
 ever was done in such Places, where there were
 no Inhabitants, yet all this, as well as other
 Matters, were fully settled and adjusted in the
 Confirmation of Peace renewed last Year, where-
 by the *Porte* did likewise stipulate with our Am-
 bassador, that they should convoy the King of
Sweden with 5000 *Turks* thro' *Poland*, and that we
 should guard him by our Officers from the Fron-
 tiers, to which we not only consented, but also
 promised to procure the like Consent from the
 King and the Republick of *Poland*; but this be-
 ing not accepted by the *Porte*, on account of se-
 veral Pretences, we did at last, in two of our Let-
 ters to the *Sultan*, and by our Ambassador and
 Privy-Counsellor *Tolsloy* at *Constantinople*, declare,
 That we should suffer the King of *Sweden* to pass
 through *Poland* free and unmolested into his own
 Dominions, and to that End permit him a Guard
 of 5000 *Turks*, to see him safe through *Poland*;
 whereby our peaceable Intention sufficiently ap-
 pears, and that on our Part we have contributed

what-

whatever might prevent all manner of Disturbance, and maintain a good Correspondence and neighbourly Friendship with the *Ottoman Porte*: And that all the World may be sensible thereof, we confirm herewith our former Declaration, and offer before a tedious War be commenced, to accommodate Matters with the *Porte*, and to live in a neighbourly Amity with her as formerly; and notwithstanding, in order to provide for our Precaution and Security (after we have been informed from all Parts of a Rupture, and that the War is actually declared against us at *Constantinople*, and our Ambassador carried Prisoner to the Seven Towers) we have caused our Troops to march to the *Turkish* Frontiers, they shall not however undertake any Hostilities, provided the *Turks* live on their Part peaceably, put a stop to Preparations of War, and set our Ambassador, with all his Retinue, at Liberty; and we will, as soon as we are sufficiently assured of these Things by the *Ottoman Porte*, order our Forces to withdraw from the Frontiers, and facilitate as much as in us lies, a friendly Accommodation to which we willingly accept, and herewith desire the Mediation of his Imperial Majesty, her Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain*, and their High Mightinesses the States-General: But in case the *Porte*, without any Occasion given her by us, should persist in her Resolution, to break the Peace with us, and begin the War against us, we declare before God, and all the World, that we are excusable, and not guilty of all the Blood that may be spilt on this Occasion; and we have an entire Confidence in God, that he will assist our just Cause, and prosper our Arms with Victory against an Enemy, who breaks Treaties, and who but a Year ago, by so many Oaths and Promises confirmed and renewed the Peace with us.

*Given at Moscow the 28th
of February, 1711.*

PETER.

The

The *Tartars* had began Hostilities before this Declaration was made publick, and the *Cham's* Son and the King of *Sweden* both published long Manifesto's. The *Cham* was at the Head of 150,000 Men, his Son commanded 50,000, and the Palatine *Potocky* followed them at the Head of 10,000 more, got together from all Nations *Poles*, *Swedes*, *Hungarians*, *Walachians* and *Cossacks*. The *Tartars* who were Neighbours to the *Donski Cossacks*, and had engaged them to revolt, began their Hostilities on the Side of *Azoph*; but their Campaign lasted not long, they advanced as far as *Izium*; pillaging and ravaging the Country about it, and having defeated four or five Thousand *Russians*, march'd off with the Booty.

The Irruption of the *Cham* into the *Ukrain* was attended by worse Consequences, he beat several Parties of the *Russians*, and seized on several small Places, such as *Wolno*, *Maliwołoda*, *Noiwwołoda*, &c. He also took *Mercovi*, *Ternocky*, and some little Forts. In short, he penetrated as far as *Samara*, and burnt, under the Fortifications of that Town, one Hundred and fifty Vessels designed to transport the Troops and Artillery; but the Snow that fell at that Time obliged him to retire, and towards the End of the Month of *March* he arrived at *Precop* with very considerable Spoils, and near twelve Thousand Slaves.

Potocky, the *Cossacks* of *Orlick*, and the *Cham's* eldest Son, whose Title is *Sultan Galga*, advanced along the *Borystheres*, and dispersed every where as they went the Manifesto's of the King of *Sweden*, the *Sultan Galga*, and the said *Potocky*, but to little Effect: However, not finding any Resistance, the *Russian* Troops being on the Banks of the *Neister*, and near *Moldavia*, they penetrated as far as *Niemirozw* beyond *Brachaw*, both above and below the *Bog*, from whence, after some slight Skirmishes, and raising Contributions in the Country, they retired to the Side of *Bialocerkiew*. *Potocky* and the *Tartars* gave three Assaults to this Fortress, and lost many Men before they could master the Town, but the Citadel held

held out till the Arrival of Prince *Galliczin*, who put these Maroders to Flight, after having kill'd above five Thousand of their Men, retook their Spoils, and released the Slaves they had made. Five Hundred *Russians* had defended the Citadel of *Bialocerkiew* against the Efforts of 37,000, of whom they kill'd above four Thousand. This Action of Prince *Galliczin* dissipated these *Tartars* for the present, and obliged *Potocky* to return into *Turky*.

In the mean Time, the new Grand Vizier, very ignorant in the Art of War, was mighty slow in his Preparations, and a gross Mistake had been committed in displacing the Admiral *Gianum-Coggia*, the best Seamen belonging to the *Porte*, his Successor ordered near three Hundred Sail of Ships to be equipt in the *Black-Sea*, where 37,000 Men were to embark. The * *Topsi-Basbaew* had Orders to have a large Train of Artillery in Readiness, with 14,000 Men. The Land Army consisted of 120,000 Men Horse and Foot, besides the *Tartars*, who made the whole Number amount to about 200,000.

At this Time, the Grand Signior was informed that *Brancovan*, the Prince of *Walachia*, held a secret Correspondence with the Czar, and had promised to revolt to him, if he could penetrate into *Moldavia* with thirty Thousand Men, and a sufficient Quantity of Provisions. This being confirmed by several Hands, he resolved to have him seized, and ordered the *Cham* of *Tartary* to consult with the Vizier upon the Means of doing it.

The *Cham's* Advice was to draw him in by the Help of the neighbouring Prince, or *Hospodar* of *Moldavia*, and if *Maurocordato*, who then governed that Country, was not thought proper to undertake it, he recommended *Demetrius Cantemir*, whose Fidelity had been experienced both in Peace and War,

* Or *Topchi Bashi*, is the Overseer of the Cannon and Soldiers thereto belonging, with the *Kombarays* or Gunners. The Turkish MASTER OF THE ORD-NANCE.

War, and whose Father had been Prince of that Country.

According to this Advice, the Sultan deposed *Nicholaus Maurocordato*, and appointed *Cantemir* Prince of *Walachia*, under the Title of that of *Moldavia*, with Orders to seize *Brancovan* under Colour of Friendship, Alliance, or any other Pretence which he thought proper, and send him alive or dead to *Constantinople*; promising that no Tribute should be demanded of him, nor any Sum, as was usual, paid upon his Entrance into his new Principality; whereupon *Cantemir* set out, with the *Cham*, for *Moldavia*, and had not been arrived there many Days before he was directed to send, contrary to the Promises made him, the *Piskiesh*, as it is called, which is the Present commonly demanded of a Prince when he first enters on his Government, and also to collect a great Quantity of Provisions for the *Turkish* Army; to finish the Bridge with the utmost Expedition; to place the *Swedes* and *Cossacks*, who were with the King of *Sweden*, in Winter-Quarters, and to march himself with his Forces about *Hydgreez* at *Bender*, and other almost intolerable Burthens.

From these first Fruits, as Prince *Cantemir* tells us himself, in his *History* of the *Othman Empire*, perceiving how little Faith was to be expected from the Infidels, he threw off his Attachment to the *Turkish* Interest, and esteeming it better to suffer with *CHRIST*, than wait for the deceitful Treasures of *Egypt*, sent a trusty Messenger to the Czar, with an Offer of himself and his Principality: And they having mutually exchanged their Faith, *Cantemir* constantly gave the Czar proper Advices concerning the Forces he was to bring with him, and the Methods he was to take in the Enterprize. And having the Direction of the Bridge over the *Danube*, to be erected at the Charge of the *Turks*, the *Moldavians* and *Walachians* finding Timber, he made a Shew of going on with it, but used his utmost to retard the Work, without being, as yet, the least suspected of holding any Correspondence with the *Russians*.

Russians, while he was continually pressing the *Czar* to hasten his March before the Bridge was finished: But his *Czarish Majesty*, not so readily listening to this Advice from one of whose Fidelity he had yet no certain Proofs, and being deceived by the Hopes given him by *Brancovan*, Prince of *Walachia*, came at last too late to hinder the *Turks* passing the *Danube*.

The *Turks*, on their Part, were so slow in their Preparations, that, notwithstanding the pressing Instances of the King of *Sweden's* Ministers, *Funck* and *Poniatowsky*, it was the latter End of *April* before their Troops were assembled near *Adrianople*; besides, the Grand Signior himself was in great Incertitude whether he would command his Army himself, or trust it to the Care of the Grand Vizier.

His *Czarish Majesty* having given Orders for every Thing within his Dominions, and especially provided for the Defence of *Azoph*, hearing of the great Equipment of the *Turks* upon the *Black-Sea*, made extraordinary Preparations on that Side, fitting out twenty Ships of the Line of Battle, at the Head of which was that of the Admiral, carrying eighty-six Guns, with several Gallies, and other Vessels, to a great Number, in which 23,000 Men were embarked; but the Waters of the *Don* were so low that the large Vessels became useless, and the Success of the Campaign affording as little Occasion for the *Turkish* Fleet, there was nothing done on this Side.

During all these Preparations on one Part and the other, the Christian Powers, who had their Ministers at the *Porte*, and especially the Queen of *Great-Britain* and the States-General of the United Provinces, endeavoured to put a Stop to the Consequences of so important a War, by persuading the King of *Sweden* to come to Terms with his Enemy; and Mr. *Jefferies*, her *Britannick Majesty's* Minister, going to *Bender*, presented the following Memorial to him.

Sir,

Sir,

HER Majesty the Queen of *Great-Britain*, my most gracious Mistress, his Imperial Majesty, and their High Mightinesses the States-General of the United Provinces, laying very much to Heart the Miseries and Calamities which the War between your Majesty, on the one Part, and his Czarian Majesty, with his Allies the King of *Denmark* and King *Augustus* on the other, has in so long a Time occasion'd in the North; and instead of seeing any likelihood of the Extinction of this Flame which has reach'd to so many Parts, and brought Desolation upon so many Provinces, and so great a Number of Towns, observing it about to spread still wider, unless some speedy Means are used to stop its Violence; therefore her *Britannick* Majesty, his Imperial Majesty, and their High Mightinesses have order'd me to make known to your Majesty their Desire to see the said War ended by an Accommodation, and that they are ready to employ their good Offices for that End, if it will be acceptable to your Majesty; who cannot but be entirely persuaded that her Majesty the Queen, his Imperial Majesty, and their High Mightinesses have no other Views in undertaking so great a Work, than the contributing to the Dispatch and Conclusion of a safe and equitable Peace.

I have likewise Orders from the said Potentates most humbly to intreat your Majesty to be pleased to approve the Neutrality in the Manner it has been settled at the *Hague*. Her *Britannick* Majesty, his Imperial Majesty, and their High Mightinesses, are persuaded, that a Treaty made for the Preservation of *Pomerania*, and of the Duchy of *Bremen*, which were upon the Point of being ruined, for securing your Troops, then commanded by General *Craffau*, from their Enemies who were going to fall upon them on all Sides, and

for maintaining in the Empire the Protestant Interest, of which your Majesty has always been a zealous Protector, will be looked upon as one of the greatest Proofs of Friendship that the foresaid Potentates could give your Majesty; and, consequently, they hope your Majesty will think fit to accept it.

I am further ordered to make most humble Instances to your Majesty, in the Name and on the Part of her *Britannick* Majesty, and of their High Mightinesses the States-General, that the Subjects of her Majesty, and those of the States-General, may have free Commerce to the Ports taken by his *Czarian* Majesty during this War in the *Baltick Sea*. This being agreeable to the Treaties, and equally useful and advantageous to the Subjects on both Sides, there is Cause to hope that your Majesty will have the Goodness to consent that the Merchant-Ships of *Great-Britain* and *Holland* may enjoy that Freedom, without running the Risque of being attack'd or carried into *Sweden* by the *Swedish* Ships of War.

These are the Propositions, which at present, I have to make on the Part of her *Britannick* Majesty, his Imperial Majesty, and their High Mightinesses the States-General to your Majesty, and upon which I most humbly beseech your Majesty to be pleased to grant me favourable Resolutions.

To the foregoing MEMORIAL the King of *Sweden* answered:

I. That his sacred Royal Majesty is glad to see the High Potentates, mentioned in the said Memorial, shew a Concern for restoring Peace between the Parties at War in the North, and declares that their good Offices for effecting it will be very acceptable to him; but that as to the *Czar of Muscovy*, there cannot be any Renovation of Amity with him, without including in the
same

‘ same Treaty the *Ottoman Porte* : And as for other
 ‘ Enemies, his sacred Royal Majesty conceives, that
 ‘ the good Offices of the foremention’d Potentates,
 ‘ will be much more effectual, if they will let those
 ‘ Enemies see them resolved to act in his sacred
 ‘ Royal Majesty’s Behalf, in such Manner as by
 ‘ their Treaties of Guaranty they stand obliged.

‘ II. As to the *Act of NEUTRALITY*, which for
 ‘ the Preservation and Maintenance of the Tran-
 ‘ quility of *Germany* was settled in the last Year at
 ‘ the *Hague*, by the Confederate Potentates, his sa-
 ‘ cred Royal Majesty believes it not to have been
 ‘ done to injure him : But as that Act was con-
 ‘ certed without his Knowledge or Consent, and is
 ‘ very much to his Detriment, while it is much to
 ‘ the Advantage of his Enemies, he did twice, by
 ‘ his Ministers, and a third Time by a Writing
 ‘ signed by his Royal Hand, declare, that he neither
 ‘ could nor would be bound by them. In which
 ‘ Resolution his sacred Royal Majesty still persists.

‘ III. As to what Mr. *Jefferies* has proposed by
 ‘ the Command and Direction of her *Britannick*
 ‘ Majesty, his most gracious Mistress, and of the
 ‘ Lords the States-General of the *United Netherlands*,
 ‘ concerning an undisturb’d Freedom of Navigation
 ‘ and Commerce to the Ports in the *Baltick Sea*,
 ‘ possessed by the Czar, his sacred Royal Majesty
 ‘ judges the same to be altogether inconsistent with
 ‘ the Tenor of the Treaty of Commerce, and the
 ‘ received Custom among Nations in Amity. And
 ‘ therefore trusts, that the most serene Queen of
 ‘ *Great-Britain*, and the High and Mighty Lords the
 ‘ States-General of the *United Netherlands*, and their
 ‘ Confederates, will no longer desire a Thing so
 ‘ prejudicial to him, and so advantageous to his
 ‘ Enemies, that his sacred Royal Majesty can by no
 ‘ Means consent to it, especially after he has noti-
 ‘ fied by his Ministers residing at their Courts, that
 ‘ he had sent Orders to the Chamber of his Admi-
 ‘ ralty, for his Fleet to shut up and obstruct all
 ‘ Commu-

‘ Communication with the Ports taken and possessed
‘ by his said Enemy, &c.

Given at Bender, the 2d of May, 1711.

Considering the Posture of the King of Sweden's Affairs, this Answer was not a little surprizing ; but he was resolved to hear of no Peace, not doubting but that, by the Assistance of the *Turks*, she should again triumph over his Enemies : His Czarish Majesty, on the other Hand, seeing a Part of his Troops got over the *Neister*, that is, into his Enemy's Country, and no-body yet to oppose them, could not help flattering himself with Hopes, that Heaven had destinated the Honour to him of overthrowing the formidable Empire of the *Ottomans*, and to exalt the *Cross* in those Places where the *Crescent* had so long triumph'd.

The Czar, on the 12th of *June*, arrived at *Scroka* with all his Court, for the Czarian *Catharine*, with whom he had lately declared his Marriage in private, would accompany him in this dangerous Expedition. From thence he went towards *Fazy*, the Capital of *Moldavia*, being now joined by Prince *Cantemir*, who published the following Declaration at his going over to him.

To the Right Reverend the Grecian Bishop of the Cathedral of Soczowa, the illustrious and potent Generals, and their Forces; together with all the other Subjects of Moldavia, Greeting.

‘ **W**HEREAS the Enemies of the Holy Cross,
‘ in the Time of our Ancestors, did long
‘ oppress our People, and acting like ravenous
‘ Wolves, thirsting after innocent Christian Blood,
‘ though in Sheep's Cloathing, they reduced our
‘ Country under their Jurisdiction, and that of their
‘ false Prophet *Mahomet* ; and constrained the then
‘ *Hospedar*

' *Hospodar* to swear Fidelity to them, upon this
 ' Condition however, That the Lands of *Moldavia*
 ' should be liable to no other Tribute, besides the
 ' sending Yearly to *Constantinople* four Thousand
 ' Ducats, four Hundred Horses, and twenty-four
 ' Falcons. But the *Turks*, instead of performing
 ' the Treaty which was concluded for that End, did
 ' afterwards demolish our Castles, and caused
 ' the whole Country of *Moldavia* to be laid waste
 ' by the *Tartars*, upon frivolous Pretences; and
 ' the Nobility and others of Distinction, of both
 ' Sexes, to be carried away into Captivity: They
 ' endeavoured, by Tortures, to constrain the for-
 ' mer *Hospodars*, and their Ladies and Families, to
 ' embrace the *Ottoman* Faith, you cannot but be
 ' sensible, that they design, at present, to act the
 ' same Tragedy: But God's Mercy towards us is
 ' visible, in having animated the Czar of *Muscovy*
 ' to appear in the Field with a victorious Army,
 ' in order to rescue us, and other Christian Nati-
 ' ons, from the Tyranny of the Infidels. 'Tis there-
 ' fore necessary to the effecting our Deliverance
 ' that the Forces of this Country should march
 ' with all possible Diligence to the *Danube*, and
 ' oppose the intended Invasions of the *Tartars*; and
 ' the rather, because Part of the Forces of his
 ' Czarish Majesty is arrived near *Bender*, and the
 ' rest of the Christian Army are going to pass the
 ' Bridge, which we have built over the *Danube* with
 ' great Difficulty. For this Reason, the Czar has
 ' exhorted us, and others that bear the Name of
 ' Christians, to join his Majesty, who has already
 ' taken into his Pay ten Thousand of our Men, and
 ' committed the Money to my Custody; that Mo-
 ' narch promises, among other Things; to restore
 ' to this Country such Fortresses as formerly be-
 ' long'd to us, and shall be re-taken from the *Turks*.
 ' We have therefore resolv'd, that if for the future,
 ' any of the Subjects of *Moldavia* take Part with the
 ' *Ottomans*, they shall be publicly excommunicat-
 ' ed, cursed, and deprived of the Communion of
 ' the

the Saints, their Goods confiscated, and their Persons punished with Death. Therefore I conjure you, as you tender your own Welfare, to follow our Steps, the sooner the better, and to join the Czar's Army; for whoever does not appear there before the 15th of June, shall incur the above-mentioned Penalties.

Sign'd,

DEMETRIUS CANTEMIR,
Duke of Moldavia.

The Czar waited three Days at Jazy for the Provisions promised him by *Brancovan*, Prince of *Walachia*; but observing that his Ambassador only amused him with vain Ceremonies, and having some Assurances of his Treachery, he saw his Error in having given so much Credit to him; for he found himself in very near the same Condition with *Charles XII.* when invited into the *Ukrain* by *Mazeppa*, he was in a wild Country, destitute of all Provisions or Forage for half his Army; without Magazines, at a Distance from his own Country, or any Place from whence he could expect any Succours: For tho' *Cantemir* continued firm to him, he found his *Moldavians* in a different Interest from their Master: And *Brancovan* made a Merit to the Grand Signior of having deceived him.

The Grand Vizier, as soon as he heard that the Czar was come to Jazy, on the Northern Side of the River *Hierasus*, now called *Pruth*, immediately decamped, and crossing the *Darube*, soon came within Sight of the *Muscovites*, and passed the *Pruth* which separated them: The whole Army being got over, *Turks* and *Tartars*, the Vizier pitched his Camp, and fortified it with Trenches.

When his Czarish Majesty first heard the *Turks* were advancing towards the *Darube*, he sent General *Janus* with a Detachment, to dispute the Passage

with them, but he came too late; and the *Turks* were now come up to him with an Army at least three Times the Number of his own. However, having disposed his small Army behind a Line of *Chevaux de Frize*, he made so strong and regular a Fire, that the Enemy, with all their Force, could not break in upon him; but after three or four Hours smart firing, in the Evening they retired out of the Reach of the *Russian* Artillery, carrying off their Dead with them.

The next Morning the *Turks* renewed the Fight, and continued the same all Day; they attempted to force the *Russian* Lines in several Places to no Purpose, and lost a great many Men; Night parted them again. The third Day, General *Poniatowsky*, seeing the Situation the *Muscovites* were in, destitute of Provision, and surrounded on all Sides, by the River *Pruth*, and the Armies of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, advised the Grand Vizier to starve them out. The Czar in this desperate Condition, without any Probability of being able to retreat, had given himself over for lost, when the Czarina *Catharine* thought of an Expedient to preserve him; it is said by some, that she sent a very considerable Present to the Grand Vizier unknown to the Czar; but it is most probable that she prevailed on him to send a Letter to him, which being accompanied with a large Sum of Money, and all the Jewels, and other Things of Value, that could be got together by this magnanimous Heroine, made a very good Impression on the Mind of the Grand Vizier, and a Treaty was soon concluded.

When the Vizier sent his Deputies into the *Russian* Camp, he charged them particularly to desire to be admitted into the Presence of the Czarina, that he might be certain she was there, being hardly able to believe that a Lady, out of Love to her Husband, should venture herself with him in so dangerous an Expedition.

It was at this Time, that the King of Sweden, being informed by *Poniatowsky* of the Situation of Affairs,

Affairs, was come *incognito* to the Grand Vizier's Camp. And having heard what had passed, he went to the Vizier's Tent rather to reproach than compliment him. Among other Things he asked him if he could justify what he had done? To which the Vizier answered, that he had the Power of making Peace or War, and had obtained more of the Czar than the Grand Signior had expected or demanded. 'Had you not, (replied the King) your Enemies at your Discretion if you would, and might you not have reap'd much greater Advantages, how great soever those may be that you pretend to have gained? Give me now, continued he, 20,000 of your best Troops, and I will yet recover the Opportunity which you have neglected, and are upon the Point of losing, and are never likely to have again. I would make no doubt of delivering the Czar a Prisoner to the Grand Signior, who might do as he pleased with him, and at least keep him till the Treaty is executed.

To this the Vizier answered, 'God, who commands us to pardon an Enemy who asks it, and humbles himself before us, as the Czar has, preserve us from breaking a Treaty of Peace without any Reason; I have Hostages for the Performances of it.' *Poniatowsky*, who was present, seeing that his Majesty kept silent, with a disdainful Smile, answered, 'The King has at this Time in his capital City an Ambassador of the Czar's Prisoner, whom he sent to make all manner of Protestations of an inviolable Friendship, and of maintaining a good Intelligence with his Majesty, at the very Time that he was himself upon his March with 80,000 Men to surprize one of his Castles. But, added he, there is still a Remedy, which is, what has been proposed, and even without breaking the Treaty: The Czar may be stopt with 20 or 30,000 of your best Troops, at the Head of which the King will put himself to oblige him to an honourable Peace with his Majesty,

‘before he proceeds any farther.’ The Vizier reply’d, ‘However, this seems to me at least an indirect Violation of the Treaty.’ Whereupon the King said, ‘When I offered to stop the Czar, it was not to sue to him for Peace; for when I do that, he must be victorious even at the Gates of *Stockholm*. There is an Article, reply’d the Vizier, in the Treaty I have made, by which his Majesty may return into his Dominions, and pass even thro’ the Czar’s Territories with a strong Convoy which he shall have of the Sublime Porte; after which, if he pleases, he may make Peace with him.’ The King look’d full at the Vizier; and laughed in his Face, without making any Answer; but turning on his Heel, went out of his Tent, and took his Horse to go to *Bender*.

The Hostages before-mentioned were Baron *Schafffross*, Vice-Chancellor to the Czar, and the young Count *Czeremetoff*; and the Articles of the Peace were,

I. That the Czar should restore the Fortress of *Azoph*, in the same Condition wherein he formerly took it, with its Territories and Districts.

II. That *Taiganrog*, *Kamenki*, and the new Fort built on the farther Side of the River *Samara* shall be totally demolished, the Cannon, and the Ammunition of War in the Fortress *Kamenki*, or *Gaminieck*, to be left therein to the illustrious Porte, and no new Fort to be ever built in the same Place.

III. That the Czar shall not concern himself with the *Polacks*, nor with the *Cossacks* their Dependants named *Barabaski* and *Potkali*; nor with the Dependants of the most successful *Han-Doulet Ghevai*; but shall leave them in their former Condition, and withdraw all his Forces out of those Countries.

IV. That Merchants may come by Land into the well-guarded Dominions with their Merchandize;

dize; but no Person shall be admitted to reside at the illustrious *Porte* in the Quality of Ambassador.

V. That all Musselmans, who formerly, or in this War, hath been taken, and are Slaves in the Hands of the *Muscovites*, shall be restored to Liberty.

VI. That the King of *Sweden* having taken Sanctuary under the Wings of the powerful Protection of the illustrious *Porte*, shall have free and safe Passage, without being in any manner hindered or stopt by the *Muscovites*; and in Case they can come to a good Understanding together, and have a Mind to make Peace, it may in Consequence be treated between them.

VII. And for the future, no Damage or Injury shall be done by the *Porte* to the *Muscovites*; in like manner, these last shall do no Wrong to the former, or their Subjects or Dependants.

Thus ended this short War with the *Turks*, for the present, which, if the Grand Vizier had been a Master of his Business, might have utterly destroyed the *Russian* Empire; for he might, without risking a Man, by Famine have forced the Czar, and his whole Army, to have surrendered at Discretion.

I cannot conclude this Book without taking Notice of the great Generosity of the Czar to Prince *Cantemir*, as he relates it in his own History. The first Demand of the Vizier, at the Treaty of *Pruth* was, that *Cantemir*, the Rebel Prince of *Moldavia*, as he call'd him, should be delivered up to him. The Ambassadors acquainting him with this Demand, and many of the Courtiers persuading him not to lose so numerous an Army for the sake of one Man, he answered with a truly Royal Spirit; 'That he could, resign all the Country as far as *Curska* to the *Turks*, since there was Hope of recovering it again; but could by no means violate his Faith, and deliver up a Prince who had abandoned his Principality for his Sake, because it

' was impossible to repair Honour once forfeited.' The Minister was order'd to tell the *Turks*, that the Prince was not in the Camp, who, during the Treaty, was shut up in the Czarina's Coach, which was known only to a Servant that brought him his Victuals.

The Czar always continued to have a great Regard for him, being persuaded, that if he had taken his Advice, he should have made himself Master of *Moldavia* and *Walackia*. He gave him several Estates in *Russia* and the *Ukrain*, and settled a Pension of twenty Thousand Roubles a Year upon him.

This Gentleman claimed the Title of *most serene Highness*, and styled himself hereditary Prince of *Moldavia*; he was a Man of great Learning, and wrote a History of the *Ottoman* Empire in *Greek* and *Latin*, which was translated into the *Russian* Language by Order of the Czar, as it has been lately into *English*, from a Copy communicated by his Son Prince *Antickus Cantemir*, not long since Ambassador to the Court of *Great-Britain*, where he was highly esteem'd for his fine Understanding and polite Behaviour.

End of the Second B O O K.





 BOOK III.

The CONTENTS.

The Czar leaves the Turkish Dominions, to return home. The Marriage of the Czarowitz. The Czar desires to be acknowledged a Member of the Empire. Fresh Differences with the Turks. The Czar's publick Marriage with the Czarina Catharine. Peace renewed with the Turks. War declared again by the Turks, and Peace renewed. Orders sent to the King of Sweden to depart. The Action of Bender.

THE Russian Army, having received some Waggon's with Provisions from the Grand Vizier, decamped in good Order, with Drums beating, Colours flying, and Sword in Hand; however, they made but small Marches for want of Horses, and on Account of the great Number of the Sick and Wounded: It is reckoned that this Expedition cost his Czarish Majesty about twenty Thousand Men, besides some Millions in Money and Jewels, that he paid for this Peace, which the *Perte* did not maintain long, as we shall see hereafter.

Nevertheless when the Grand Signior heard the News of it, by his first Equerry *Osmán Aga*, he was so well pleased, that he ordered publick Rejoicings for three Days; and shewed that he approved of the Conduct of his Vizier not only by the Reception he gave him, but by Letters and magnificent Presents; notwithstanding all which, the King of Sweden soon after inspired him with such Sentiments,

ments, that he twice broke the Peace, and concluded it again with the same Ease.

The Czar retired towards his own Dominions with the Czarina and his Court, to put the Treaty he had concluded in Execution, to take from the *Turks* all subject of Complaint, and to prevent any Obstacle to his Designs in the North. He left to his Generals the conduct of his Troops that were to cross *Poland*, where one Party remained, while the rest went into *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, from whence a large Body was sent under the Command of General *Baur* into *Pomerania*.

Whilst the Czar struggled with Fortune on the Borders of the *Pruth*, his Allies suffered not the *Swedes* to enjoy much Repose; it is true they had concluded a Treaty of *Neutrality* for the Preservation of the *Swedish* Provinces in *Germany*, but as the King of *Sweden* himself had protested against it, and his Generals had acted contrary to it, this was thought a sufficient Pretence for the Allies of his Czarish Majesty to enter *Pomerania* and form the Blockade of *Stralsund*.

The Czar himself went first to *Warsaw*, and from thence to *Elbing*, where he arrived on the 12th of *September*; he stay'd at this Place but only to repose himself, and then pursued his Journey to *Carelsbad*, where he designed to drink the Waters. He arrived at *Dresden* the 20th of the same Month, and left it on the 22d. He used the Waters of *Carelsbad* with good Success for the re-establishment of his Health, and having concluded a Negotiation with *M. Kameke*, whom the King of *Prussia* had sent thither to meet him, this Monarch return'd to *Dresden*, and went afterwards to *Targau*, where he arrived on the 24th of *October*. The *Czarewitz* was come to that Town two Days before him, in which Place the Queen of *Poland* had made Preparations for the Marriage of that Prince with the Princess *Charlotta-Christina-Sophia* of *Wolfenbuttel*. The *Czarewitz* was then in the 22d Year of his Age, the Princess in her 18th. She was the Daughter of
Duke

Duke *Levis-Rodolphus* of *Brunswick-Wolfembüttel*, and of *Christina Louisa d'Oettingen*, and Sister of the Spouse of *Charles VI*, who was then newly elected Emperor at *Francfort*. This Marriage was celebrated with no great Ceremony, on the 25th of *October*, the Day after the Czar's Arrival, by a Priest of the Greek Church. The *Czarewitz* was led to the Alter, by the Czar, and the Princess by Duke *Anthony Ulric* of *Wolfembüttel*, her Grandfather. The Queen of *Poland* and her Court, the Duke of *Wolfembüttel*, Father to the Bride, and her Mother were present at the Ceremony. There was a magnificent Entertainment at the Queen of *Poland's*; but if the Czar would have suffered the old Duke of *Wolfembüttel* to have put himself to that Expence, he designed that the Splendor of his Grand-Daughter's Marriage should have been beyond Example; he intended to have had the Ceremony perform'd in his Capital City, and to have invited to it, the Kings of *Poland*, *Denmark*, and *Prussia*, the Elector of *Hanover*, and some other Princes.

But instead of more Pomp, it were to be wished there could have been more Happiness in this Marriage, which indeed was hardly to be expected where Inclination had no Part in the Union. The *Czarewitz*, given up to sensual Pleasures, and very vicious Company, had no Desire at all to marry, nor had he thought of it at this Time, but to prevent the Danger he was in of forfeiting his Succession to the Crown. For his indolent Temper, his wicked Course of Life, and the Aversion he always shewed to Foreigners, had created in his Father so ill an Opinion of him, as had very much diminished his natural Affection to him, and made him drop some Intimations, that, unless he soon gave some Tokens of Amendment, he must expect to have his Crown shaved, and be thrust into a Convent. His own Favourites, apprehensive of the Danger he was in, persuaded him to endeavour to reconcile himself to his Father, by promising to alter his Way of Life, and by marrying into some

considerable Family among the Princes of the *German* Empire, with whom his Majesty was very desirous of having an Alliance. The Prince, though naturally of a Temper obstinate and dull, had Sense enough to take this Advice, and throwing himself soon after at his Father's Feet, he declared his Intention of making an Attonement for his pass'd Follies, and leading a new Life; and as nothing might be more conducive to it than the Conversation of a virtuous Lady, he begged Leave to make the Tour of *Germany*, in order to make choice of such a one as might be agreeable to his Birth and Inclinations.

A few Days after the Marriage Rites were performed, the new married Couple took the Route of *Welfembuttel*, and the Czar that of *Grossen* in *Silesia*, where the Prince Royal of *Prussia* entertained his Majesty for three Days. The Occasion of this Journey was to see himself the Condition of his Troops quarter'd there.

The Czar continued in *Silesia* but till the 4th of *November*, and then took the Route of *Prussia*. On the 8th he arrived at *Thorn*, where he embarked the same Day with the Czarina for *Elbing*. Their Majesties found in this City a numerous Court of foreign Ministers to attend them, and among the rest the famous Prince *Ragotski*, who came from *Dantzick* for that Purpose.

At length, the Troubles which were excited afresh by the *French* and *Swedish* Factions in *Turky*, recalled the Czar to his own Dominions; he went through *Koringsberg*, *Memel*, and *Riga*, in which last Place he stopt for some Time. The Magistracy of the City having received their new Sovereign in a Body at their Gates, he promised them his Protection, provided they would be as faithful to him as they had been to *Sweden*. On the 12th of *December* was celebrated with much Pomp the Feast of *St. Andrew*, Patron of the *Russian* Order; the Nobility, the Council, the Magistracy, all endeavoured every Day to shew their Respect to their new Prince,

Prince, who, by a great Number of beneficent Acts, gained the Love of a People naturally generous and faithful to their Masters.

From *Riga* his Czarish Majesty went to *Revel*, where he likewise continued some Days, as well to give Orders for the Reparation and Enlargement of the Fortifications, as to take the Advice of some Persons of the best Understanding in the Country for the Re-establishment of the Commerce. Afterwards this extraordinary Prince, who gave an Attention to the most minute Affairs that might be of any Use to the Countries he governed, went to *Petersburgh*. The Hereditary Prince, with his new Spouse, receiving his Command to follow him, his Czarish Majesty having altered his Resolution of letting his Son continue all the Winter in *Germany*. And the whole Czarian Family were soon come together to attend him in the same City, viz. the Czarina Dowager, the Dutchess Dowager of *Courland*, the Princess *Natalia*, &c.

The Czar being now in peaceable Possession of *Livonia*, and as that Province had been formerly looked upon as one of the Fiefs of the Empire, he offer'd to accept of the Investiture of it from the Emperor *Charles VI*, provided he might be admitted into the Number of the Princes of the Empire, and on that Condition, and his being allowed to have a Minister at the General Diet, he propos'd to furnish his Imperial Majesty with a Succour of twenty-five Thousand Men against *France*; the partiality with which the Minister of that Crown at *Constantinople* had behaved with regard to the *Russians*, had very much irritated his Czarish Majesty against *Lewis XIV*. Nevertheless his Offers were not accepted; it was alledged, that although the Czar was then indeed Master of *Livonia*, yet the Restitution of it might hereafter become one of the Articles of a Treaty with *Sweden*; that it was the Interest of *Poland* that it should be so; besides, if this Duchy should become a Fief of the Empire, it would be obliged to take a Part in all the Quarrels that might happen.

happen in *Poland*. But these Reasons were only a Pretext; they were only afraid of seeing so powerful a Member in the College of Princes, which has plainly appeared since; for when the Province of *Livonia* was yielded to him by Treaty of Peace, and he made the same Demand, he received no better Satisfaction.

The Czar had actually given Orders for executing the Articles of the Peace of the *Pruth*, and his Generals on the Side of the *Black-Sea* were beginning to demolish the Works of *Taiganrog* and *Azoph*; but fresh Advices which he received from *Turky* put some stop to it. The Grand Vizier had agreed, when he signed the Treaty, that the King of *Sweden* should quit the *Ottoman* Territories, which Promise he did what was in his Power to keep, but the King of *Sweden*, and his Faction endeavoured to be beforehand with the Vizier, and to persuade the Sultan, that he had betrayed the Interest of the Empire; and above all complain'd of his not being included in the Treaty. The Vizier being informed, in good Time, of what passed at *Constantinople*, placed a Guard upon all the Roads from thence to *Bender*, with Orders to intercept the King's Letters to M. *Funk*, his Minister, or any other; by which Means he discovered what were his Designs against him, and was therefore soon brought to a Resolution in concert with the Baron *Schaffireff*, and Count *Czeremetoff*, the *Russian* Hostages, to oblige him to depart. For this Reason he gave him to understand, that it was expected he should do so: But the King, instead of complying, returning a very haughty Answer, the Vizier immediately stopp'd his daily Pension, and sent a Detachment of his Army, to be quarter'd about *Bender*, as a Guard upon him.

The King however found Means to get a Letter conveyed even to the Sultan himself, by the help of one *Savari*, a Banker at *Bender*, who undertook it at the Hazard of his Head; this Man, who was strongly in the King of *Sweden*'s Interest, put on
the

the Habit of a *Turk*, and passing unsuspected thro' the Vizier's Camp, got to the *French* Ambassador at *Constantinople*, to whom he not only delivered the Letters of the *Swedish* Monarch to the Sultan and others; but informed him, by Word of Mouth, of much more than was contained in those Letters.

Monsieur *Desalleurs* soon obtain'd an Audience, and having delivered his Letters, there was immediately a new Face of Affairs. The Vizier *Baltagi Mahomet* received repeated Orders to return to *Constantinople*, which he did not very readily obey, and being at the Head of his Troops, the Sultan did not care to exasperate him, although he had already pass'd Sentence on him in his own Mind, but used some Diffimulation to get him in his Power; he was magnificiently received at *Adrianople*, but he was no sooner separated from his Troops, than the Grand Signior let him know that he depos'd him from his Office, and ordered him to be banished to *Mitylene*, after all his Riches were taken from him. He had held this high Office precisely a Year, which was now conferred upon the *Bashaw Injuf*, Aga of the Janissaries.

All Things now at the *Porte* began to take a Turn in Favour of the *Swedish* Faction, the Cham of *Tartary* took up his Residence at a House of Pleasure near *Constantinople*, from whence he often went to the Grand Signior, with whom he had several Conferences, the Result of which was to declare War again with *Russia*, upon which the Sultan wrote a circular Letter to all the Viziers and Bashaws of his Empire, dated the Middle of the Moon of *ZELKADI* of 1123, that is about the 20th of December 1711, wherein he commands those Officers to repair with their Troops to his Imperial Camp at *Iffaktze* on the *Danube* early in the ensuing Spring. To prevent the Consequences of which, the *Russian* Hostages at *Constantinople* desired a Conference with the Vizier, and were supported therein by the *English* and *Dutch* Ministers; and his Czarish Majesty sent Orders for the Surrender of *Azoph* to the *Turks*, which

which was accordingly made on the 13th of *January* following. The new Buildings, Suburbs and Fortifications, were all demolished, but the inner Walls were left standing, and 70 Pieces of Cannon, with a House or two, and a small Suburb of the *Cossacks*; the *Turks*, thinking it might be of Convenience to them, bought them for about 45,000 Dollars. *Hassan Bashaw* sent away the Key, by an Express, to the *Porte*, but having only 120 Men in his Retinue, desired a Battalion of *Muscovites* might be left under his Command, to secure him against the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*, the rest marched out with the usual Marks of Honour, under Admiral *Apraxin*, who went to oversee the demolishing the Works of *Taiganrog*; all Things proceeding thus with mutual Civility, in the executing this principal Article of the Treaty between the Sultan and his Czarish Majesty, there was reason to hope the threatened Rupture between them would soon be accommodated, but the Negotiation however continued till the Month of *April*.

1712. In the mean time the Czar's Marriage with the Czarina *Catharine Alexowna* was publicly solemnized at *Petersburgh*. He had before declared it in private; for just before his setting out for *Moldavia*, the last Year, from *Moscow*, he had summoned the Empress Dowager his Sister, the Princess *Natalia*, and two other half Sisters, to whom he acknowledged her as his Wife, and desired they might pay all Respect due to her in that Quality, and that, if any Misfortune should happen to him during the Campaign, she might be allowed the same Rank, Privileges and Revenues as were usual to the other Dowagers. All Preparations being made, and the Time at hand for the publick Solemnization of this Marriage a few Days before, *viz.* On the 20th of *February*, M. *Kykin*, a Lord of the Admiralty, and Adjutant-General *Jagufinsky*, were sent to invite the Company to his Majesty's Old Wedding, which were the Terms they were ordered to use.

The

The Czar was married in the Habit of an Admiral, and for that Reason, not his first Ministers, or Nobility, but his Sea Officers had the chief Share in the Solemnity of that Day. The Vice-Admiral *Criys*, and the Rear-Admiral of the Gallies, were the Bridegroom's Fathers, and the Empress Dowager, with the Vice-Admiral's Lady, were the Bride-Mothers. The Bride-Maids were two of the Empress *Catherine's* own Daughters, one about five, and the other about three Years old; but as these Princesses were too tender to bear the Fatigue, after they had appeared for a little Time, their Places were supplied by the Czar's two Nieces, Sisters to the present *Czarina*, then Dutchess of *Carland*.

The Wedding was performed at seven o'Clock in the Morning in a little Chappel belonging to Prince *Menzikoff*, and no Persons assisted at it, but those who were obliged to it by their Offices. The new married Couple retired to the Prince's House, and staid there till ten o'Clock, and then proceeded to the Czar's Palace, where all the Company was gathered according to the Invitation. The Procession was very magnificent from the many new rich Liveries, and the Sledges drawn by six Horses, attended by Kettle-Drums, Trumpets, and other Musical Instruments. Prince *Menzikoff* carried the Marshal's Staff, and Vice-Admiral *Criys* was in the Sledge with the Czar at his Right-Hand, as his Father. The Entertainment at the Palace was very splendid, and the Evening concluded with a Ball. And thro' the whole City were great Numbers of Fire-Works and Illuminations.

The new Treaty of Peace between the *Turks* and Czar, was concluded on the 16th Day of *April* following, the Articles of which were in Substance:

I. That the Czar shall be obliged within thirty Days to withdraw all his Forces out of *Poland*, which shall not return upon any Pretence whatsoever, unless it should happen that the King of *Sweden*

Sweden being returned into his Dominions, should join with the *Poles* and attack *Muscovy* on that Side; in which Case his Czarish Majesty shall be at liberty to march again into *Poland* with his Troops.

II. That the *Porte* shall be allowed to procure the Return of the King of *Sweden* into his Dominions, by such a Way as the Grand Signior shall think fit, without allowing the *Muscovites* to fix the Time of his Departure or his Way; but in Case that Prince marches through the Territories of *Muscovy*, the *Turkish* Troops that shall attend him, shall commit no manner of Hostility or Ravages.

III. That the Czar shall remain in Possession of *Kiof* and *Ukrania*, with their ancient Limits, but shall renounce all his Pretensions upon the Country of the *Cossacks* on this Side the *Borysthenes* that are not in the Dependance of *Kiof*, and on a certain Island in that River, and that good Orders shall be given on both Sides, to prevent the Excursions of the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*.

IV. That for the future no Fortrefs shall be erected between the two Frontier Places of *Azoph* and *Giraski* by any of the Parties, and that the Forts erected by the *Muscovites* in the Territory of *Azoph* shall be demolished in four Months, but that the Grand Signior shall be at Liberty to rebuild the Fort of *Ginoli* over-against *Azoph*.

V. That whereas by the Articles of the Treaty concluded in *Moldavia*, it was stipulated that *Azoph* should be restored in the Condition it was in when the *Muscovites* took it, and it appears that there were then in that Place sixty Pieces of Brass Cannon which have not been found therein when it was restored, his Czarish Majesty shall be obliged to restore the said Artillery, or pay the Value thereof, and the *Turks* shall deliver to the *Muscovites* the Iron Cannon that they have left in that Place.

VI. That none of the Parties shall be allow'd to erect any Forts at *Camenski* and *Savar*, which by Virtue of the Treaty of *Moldavia* have been demolished.

VII. That

VII. That the Peace shall continue twenty-five Years, to reckon from the Signing of the Treaty, but may be prolonged before that Time is relapsed; and lastly, that after the Ratification of the present Treaty, the Czar shall be allowed to send an Ambassador to *Constantinople* to receive the same, &c.

This Treaty was concluded and signed with Sincerity on both Sides, and the Czar as soon as he received it from Baron *Schaffiroff*, was not only speedy in the Ratification of it, but sent Orders towards the *Black-Sea*, that his Generals there should execute those which they were to receive from his Ministers at *Constantinople* conformable to it. He afterwards sent Part of his Troops that were in the *Volhinia* under the Command of the Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetoff*, in the *Ukrain*, and neighbouring Provinces; and those under General *Ronne* in *Lithuania*, went partly into *Livonia* and *Courland*, and partly into *Pomerania*, where the Northern Allies had resolved to besiege *Stralsund*.

The Grand Signior, by Letter, acquainted the King of *Sweden* of this Peace concluded with the Czar, but his Ministers having preposessed him with an Opinion, that the Treaty was chiefly brought about by the good Offices and Interposition of the *British* and *Dutch* Ambassadors, Sir *Robert Sutton*, and Count *Colyear*, he was pleased to call them voluntary Mediators: And some, as *M. de la Motraye* tells us, having added, that it was chiefly, if not wholly, owing to the Credit and Influence the first had over the Minds of the *Turks*, *Charles XII.* declared War in good earnest against him, highly resenting that a Minister of a Queen, who was his Relation, and in Amity with him, should presume to act so contrary to his Interest, without any Permission, or Orders from his Mistress. This War was carried on against his Excellency, both with the Tongue and Pen, complaining that he had been acting under-hand, and concerned himself with excusing the *Muscovites* staying in *Poland*; nay, they pretended to have some Extracts of his Letters to
Vienna,

Vienna, as Proofs of it; and wrote to *England*, that he had not only traversed, by all imaginable Means, the Measures which his *Swedish* Majesty had entered into with the *Porte*, since his Arrival at *Bender*, in order to retrieve and re-establish his Affairs, but had thrown off the Mask, and openly espoused his Enemy's Interest: They added, that Baron *Gultz*, a Creature of King *Augustus*, was continually with his Excellency, and that he was entirely influenced by the *Saxon* and *Muscovite* Money: In short, no less Satisfaction was insisted on by his Majesty, than his being recalled and disgraced; Mr. *Fabricens*, the Duke of *Holstein's* Minister, who was much in favour with the King, having in vain endeavour'd to destroy these Impressions, sent Word to Sir *Robert Sutton* what was laid to his Charge: And M. *de la Motraye* says, he himself took the Liberty to do the same, but his Excellency answer'd him, that he was pre-acquainted with it, and that M. *Funck* abstained even from the common Civility usual among Ministers of Potentates in Amity together.

This last-made Peace, we shall see, had no long Continuance; but before we take any farther Notice of what was done in *Turky*, it is fit to return a little to what was transacted in the North.

Prince *Menzikoff* was now gone into *Pomerania*, where the Czar had already 36,000 Men, who were ordered to join the *Danes* and the *Saxons*. His Majesty, before he set out himself, assisted at the launching a Ship of fifty-four Guns, which he built himself, call'd the *Pultowa*; and had the Misfortune to hear that one third Part of the City of *Moscow* was burnt to the Ground.

Ten thousand Men of his Czarish Majesty's Troops kept *Stetin* block'd up; the rest join'd with those of King *Augustus* were before *Stralsund*, which was also in some Manner block'd up by Land. The Czar, the Czarina, and *Czarewitz*, being all come into *Pomerania*, the Czar had several Conferences with the King of *Poland*, and these two Monarchs

went

went together to reconnoitre *Stralsund* and the Island of *Rügen*. It was agreed to attack the Island, since by their being Masters of that, it was impossible for *Stralsund* to hold out, the *Swedes* then having no way to bring Succours to it. The Princes *Menzikoff* and *Kurakin*, and Count *Golewin* had also several Conferences at *Gripfwalde*, with Count *Flemming* and Count *Schembeck*, on making Preparations to execute this Enterprize, but while these were getting ready, they learnt that the *Swedes* had debarked on the Island a Supply of eight or ten thousand Men under the Command of General *Steinbeck*; it is true, the *Danish* Fleet did make some Attempt to prevent this Debarkation, but it was too late, and so the Attack of the Island became impracticable; and was put off to a more favourable Opportunity; the *Russian* and *Polish* Generals came to a Resolution at *Gripfwalde*, to cast up a Line from thence to *Triptee* and *Damgarten*, which is an Extent of several Miles; and his Czarish Majesty having exhorted the King of *Denmark* to keep a watchful Eye upon the *Swedes*, to prevent their carrying any new Succours to *Stralsund*, and having left the Command of his Troops to King *Augustus*, took the Route of *Berlin*, where he arrived *incognito*, declining the publick Reception that was intended him, and took up his Lodgings at the House of his own Minister. He made a Visit, the same Night, to the King of *Prussia*, and was entertained at Supper by the Prince Royal. The next Day, his *Prussian* Majesty, accompany'd by his Highness, return'd the Visit, and at Night his Czarish Majesty paid a Visit to the Queen.

A few Days after, he set out for *Leipsick*, and from thence to *Carelsbad*, where designing to drink the Waters, he would not be disturbed with any publick Affairs, and therefore signified to all the foreign Ministers, that he would not be attended by any of them, but should soon return to *Berlin*, where he would give them Audience, as he did accordingly.

During

During his Czarish Majesty's Absence, all the Troops that were in the Island of *Rugen*, having been brought over to *Stralsund*, Count *Steinbock* made a Sally from thence with great Success; when he took Leave of the Garrison and Burghers of the Town, who were drawn up in Arms, he made a very pathetick Speech, wherein he exhorted them to continue faithful to their Sovereign and Country, and be vigilant on their Posts if they should chance to be attacked. It was given out that he was going to force the Enemy's Lines; but instead of hazard-ing so rash an Enterprize, he took all on a sudden, the Route of *Mecklenbourg*, in passing the Morass formed by the *Ribnitz*, a quarter of a League from *Damgarten*, and at *Blommensdorf* upon Bridges thrown over in haste.

The *Swedes* having this Success, their General *Steinbock*, resolved to prosecute the Advantage he had got, and accordingly took Possession of *Rostock*, and put the whole Duchy of *Mecklenbourg* under Contribution, under Pretence that they had furnished the Enemies of *Sweden* with Forage and other Provisions in the two preceding Campaigns. The Inhabitants were required to pay two Millions of Florins, upon Pain of Military Execution; but being unable to comply with such an exorbitant Demand, the greatest Part of them removed from their Habitations with their Cattle and other Effects, and made their Escapes into the Territories of the neighbouring Princes.

King *Augustus*, in the mean Time, having assembled his Troops, and the *Muscovites*, who were dispersed along the Lines, marched towards *Gustrow*, which he surprized, and posted his Troops near that Place, expecting the Conjunction of the *Danes* to attack the *Swedes*, and these having but a small Tract of Land to subsist in, began to think of the Difficulties they should be reduced to, if they were obliged, by the Superiority of their Enemies Numbers, to repass the Defile of *Damgarten*, and return to the Island of *Rugen*, from whence the Scarcity of Fo-
rage

rage and other Provisions had so lately dislodged them. This Reason, and the dangerous Consequences of the Loss of a Battle, were Motives sufficient to induce them to hearken to a Cessation of Arms; to which King *Augustus* seemed inclined, having considered, that in case of a Battle, and that the *Suedes* should have the Victory, his Electorate would fall a Prey to his Enemy; and that on the other Hand, altho' he should obtain the Victory, his Country was like to suffer by his Friends, the *Suedish Pomerania* not being able to subsist them, and so many Princes concerning themselves for the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, he should be forced to recall his Troops from thence, and to give Quarters to the greatest Part of the *Muscovites* in his own Dominions: These Considerations, I say, made the Generals of both Sides think of a Suspension of Arms, which upon a Conference between Count *Steinbock* and Count *Fleming*, was agreed to for three Months.

The *Czar* was at *Berlin* when he received an Account of this Agreement, which was not at all pleasing to him; he and the King of *Denmark* both seemed to have some Jealousy of the Designs of King *Augustus*, whom they suspected to be carrying on a private Treaty with the *Suedes*, by the secret Offices of the *French*; for which Reason his *Czarish Majesty* hastened into *Mecklenbourg* to provide with all necessary Speed for a Junction with the King of *Denmark*, who, on his Side, had advanced in precipitate Marches as far as *Gadebusch* with his Troops; some *Saxon* Squadrons joined him, but the *Russians* could not do so before the *Suedes* had attacked the *Danish* Army in a very advantageous Post, who were nevertheless beaten and entirely defeated. The *Saxons* who had had no Part in the Action, immediately rejoined the *Russians*, that they might together be in a Condition to oppose the victorious *Suedes*, who they imagined would retake the Route of *Pomerania*, to penetrate into *Poland*, and facilitate the Return of their Monarch; but Count *Steinbock*, far from acting thus, which seemed most reasonable

reasonable to be done, advanced his Troops toward *Jutland*, in order to take up his Quarters in *Holstein*, according to the Instructions he had received from the Regency at *Stockholm*.

The Czar deliberated with himself for some Time, whether or not he should attack *Steinbock* in his March; but at length resolved to go towards *Pomerania*, and afterwards, in concert with the King of *Denmark*, agreed to open the next Campaign with the Attack of *Rügen*, and the Siege of *Stralsund*.

Whilst the Czar was exposing himself to all these Fatigues to deal with his Enemies on all Sides, new Troubles were fomented in *Turky*, and new Enemies attacked his Troops in *Poland*. On the other Hand, those of his Subjects who assisted him in the Undertakings which were the Glory of his Reign, used all Means to make *Petersburgh* one of the most magnificent and opulent Cities of *Europe*, and the Fame of this great Monarch's wonderful Actions reaching to the Center of *Asia*, brought at this Time an Ambassador from *Persia*, who made a publick Entry into *Moscow*, where he waited the Return of his Majesty. There being something uncommonly grand in this Entry, I am of Opinion that the Reader will not be displeased with the following Account of it.

1. Came nine Hundred Waggon's loaded with Baggage and Merchandizes.
2. Ten *Persian* Horses.
3. Eight *Muscovite* Horses.
4. Four Hundred and fifty Secretaries or Clerks, Sword in Hand, commanded by proper Officers.
5. Six Led-Horses with magnificent Housings.
6. The Colonel of the Regiment of Dragoons of *Jerepkien*; six Hautboys and the Major's four Trumpeters followed by the said Regiment.
7. Eighteen Coaches with six Horses each, and in each of the six last were two *Persians* of the Retinue of the Ambassador.
8. A Waggon drawn by three Horses, with a Standard and a Cage for a Lion.
9. Another Waggon with the Lion.
10. Another Waggon carrying a Tyger.
11. Some *Persian* Merchants, on Horseback.

Horseback, 12. Two Led-Horses. 13. A *Persian* Standard embroider'd with Gold. 14. A Coach, in which were three *Persian* Lords and one *Muscovite*; and on both Sides were several *Persian* Runners. 15. Two Cages carried by two Men, in which were two green Birds, and a Parrot of an extraordinary Size. 16. Two other Cages carried with two Birds of an extraordinary Colour. 17. Another Waggon with a Cage, and another Bird. 18. An Elephant led by an *Indian*. 19. Some *Persian* Horses. 20. Forty young Gentlemen, Sword in Hand, on Horseback. 21. A Coach with six Horses, in which were the Ambassador, and six *Persian* and *Muscovite* Lords; and on both Sides the Coach, and behind, were some *Persian* Foot Soldiers, with their Muskets on their Shoulders. The Procession was closed by several Waggon belonging to the Ambassador.

But to return. The Starost *Grudzinski*, who had gone into *Turky* to the King of *Sweden*, undertook to make an Irruption into *Poland*, with about 4000 Men, *Cossacks*, *Valacks*, and other Troops gather'd together. He penetrated into *Great-Poland*, as far as *Pisdry*, from whence he carried off entirely the Regiment of General *Baur*, Colonel *Gordon*, who had the Command of it, nor any of the Officers, not in the least apprehending that they had any Enemies so near them. Another Party got as far as *Schwerin*, beyond *Poznania*, where was a Magazine guarded by three Hundred *Russians*, who made a brave Defence, and killed many of the Enemy before they would yield. In short, this Irruption was attended with such Success, that if the King of *Sweden* and *Potocky* had been there with the rest of the Troops, their Party must certainly have been restored to as great Power and Strength as ever, such Numbers being ready to have sided with them. General *Baur*, inform'd of what had happen'd to his Regiment, left *Pomerania*, and came Post to *Poznania*, where assembling with all Speed a Body of 4000 *Russians*, he was join'd by eighty Companies

Companies of the Crown Army; and then Fortune turned all on a sudden against *Grudzinski*, who was surprized by *Baur* as he had surprized his Regiment at *Pisdry*, so that he had not Time to decamp but in great Confusion, and prepare for Flight. He and his Party were warmly pursued Day and Night, and were overtaken at *Kruterschien*. *Grudzinski*, and the Officers under him, immediately abandoned their Troops, and retired into *Silesia*. The *Pelanders* who were of this Party, and who made the Van-Guard, presently surrender'd to the Troops of the Crown, with whom they made some Capitulation, and came together against the rest of the Party composed of *Germans*, *Cossacks*, and *Valacks*, some of the last took to Flight, but about two Thousand of them threw down their Arms, and surrender'd. Such was the Success of this Expedition, the Glory of which belonging wholly to General *Baur* and the *Russians*.

This Invasion was a just Subject of Complaint from the Czar of the *Turks*, who had thereby violated the last Treaty of Peace. Which gave Occasion to the Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetoff* to publish his *Universalia*, wherein he complained of that, and of the Conduct of the Nobles of the Palatinates of *Cracow*, *Siradia*, and *Calish*, who had favoured the Invasion, and joined with the Enemies of his Master: He gave Notice to the Inhabitants of *Great* and *Little-Poland*, that if they did not behave with more Moderation, or made the least Step in Favour of *Stanislaus*, or the *Swedes*, his Czarish Majesty, on such an Infraction, would re-enter *Poland* with all his Troops.

The King of *Sweden*, tho' it was his Party that had been the first Aggressors, did not fail of making his Use of this, and clamoured loudly against the *Russians*, who had pursued some of the *Cossacks* quite into the *Turkish* Territories, and the Grand Signior suffering himself to be prevail'd on by the Cham of *Tartary*, Monsieur *Desalleurs*, and the Ministers of *Sweden*, broke once more the last Treaty on

Pretence of their being yet some *Russian* Troops remaining in *Poland*; but on all other Accounts it could not be deny'd that the Treaty of *Pruth* had been executed. It is very true, the *Czar* had not evacuated *Thorn* or *Elbing*, but these were to be look'd upon as Conquests made upon the *Swedese*, and that were to appertain to him, unless a Treaty of Peace should otherwise dispose of them.

The Sultan, in order to be satisfy'd whether the *Czar* had any Forces in *Poland* or not, sent an Aga into that Kingdom to enquire into it, and he, being in the *Swedish* Interest, made his Report accordingly; the Sultan hereupon, who had some Intelligence likewise of the Grand Vizier *Fussuf's* being bribed to the *Czar's* Interest, immediately depos'd him, and gave the Seal to *Solyman Bashaw*; and having, as he thought, wherewithal to convince the *Mufti* and *Effendis*, or Men of the Mahometan Law, of the *Muscovites* violating the Treaty, he assembled his Council, before whom, when he had laid some Letters that he had received, and given some other Reasons for his Intention, the *Mufti*, according to Custom, offering to give his Consent to declare War, his Highness made him write it down upon the Spor, and as soon as he had received it, order'd the two *Muscovite* Ambassadors, and the two Hostages, *Schaffiroff* and young *Czeremetoff*, to be carried Prisoners, with all the Officers of their Retinues, to the *Seven-Towers*.

Orders were sent to all the *Bashaws* to raise new Troops, and the Grand Signior himself left *Constantinople*, and came with his whole Court to *Adrianople*, whither a solemn Embassy was coming to him from King *Augustus* and the Republick of *Poland*, at the Head of which was the Palatine of *Massovia*, with a Retinue of three Hundred Persons, all of whom he ordered to be seized on the Road, and imprison'd; the Sultan resolving to have *Charles XII.* conducted into *Sweden* in a grand Manner, and *Stanislaus*, if possible, replaced on the Throne of *Poland*.

Notwithstanding all these Preparations, the Grand Signior's Favourite *Ali-Connourgi*, having Designs in view which made him desire to have the Czar for an Ally rather an Enemy, and King *Augustus* finding means, by a secret Correspondence with the Cham of *Tartary*, to bring him over to his Interest, Affairs took another Turn, and the Grand Signior being persuaded that the Aga sent into *Poland*, had been bribed by the *Swedes*, and given a false Report of what related to the *Muscovite* Troops there, was inclined again to hearken to Proposals of an Accommodation. The Grand Vizier and Mufti, both Creatures of the Favourite, although they had given their Votes for War, when they found that was no longer pleasing to *Ali-Connourgi*, came as readily into Terms of Peace. After several Negotiations with the Vice-Chancellor *Schaffirof* and young *Czeremetoff*, the Czar's Plenipotentiaries, it was promised by them, that their Master's Troops should, *bona fide*, evacuate *Poland*.

On the other Side, the King of *Sweden* was to be sent out of the *Turkish* Dominions. The Sulan, for his own Honour would not suffer him to go away in such a Manner as might endanger his being taken by his Enemies on the Road, but stipulated, that the Ambassadors of *Muscovy* and *Poland* should be responsible for the Security of his Person; and that he, on the other hand, should raise no Commotions in *Poland*. The Serasquier of *Bender* went by Order of the Grand Signior to *Varnitsa*, where the King of *Sweden* was then encamped, to acquaint him with the Resolution of the *Porte*, and to let him know, that it was expected he should comply without making any Delay. The King told the *Bashaw* he must first have wherewithal to pay his Debts, and furnish him with Conveniences for his Journey; but this was only an Excuse to gain Time, he being determined not to depart. The *Bashaw* asking how much would be requisite, the King answer'd at random, a Thousand Purfes, which is above an hundred thousand Pounds Sterling. The

Bashaw writing to the *Porte* on this Head, instead of one Thousand had twelve Hundred Purfes sent him, but with exprefs Orders not to deliver them to him till his Departure: But he, and his Treasurer *Grotbafen*, having found Means to prevail upon the *Bashaw* to let them have the Money, he still persisted in his Resolution of continuing where he was, in spite of all that could be said by the *Bashaw*, whose Head was in danger for having parted with the Money to him.

The *Cham* of *Tartary*, who was to conduct him on his March, had received the like Orders with the *Bashaw*, to see that the Purfes were not given to him till he was ready to depart; so that both of them were forced to write to the *Porte* to clear themselves to the Sultan, and protest that they had delivered their Charge to him, but that they were deceived by his solemn Promise of going away immediately. This occasioned a positive Order to be sent to the *Cham* and *Bashaw*, to oblige him to go out of the *Turkish* Dominions by Force, or to bring him dead or alive to *Adrianople*.

Charles XII. could not be persuaded but that the *Cham* and *Bashaw* were in a Confederacy to deliver him up to his Enemies, therefore continued obstinate in his Refusal to go away, which forced them to put the Sultan's Orders in Execution, upon which followed the famous Action of *Bender*, wherein he gave most extravagant Proofs of his Bravery, or rather Rashness, opposing with undaunted Resolution 26,000 *Turks* and *Tartars* with only the Officers of his Household, and about 300 *Svedes*. This Action which happened on the 12th of *February* 1713, is so well known, and is so amply related by *Monsieur de Voltaire* in his *Life of Charles XII.* that I shall say no more of it here, but refer the Reader to his Account of it.

End of the Third BOOK.



 B O O K IV.

The C O N T E N T S.

The Czar takes Frederickstadt. General Steinbock forced to take Shelter in Tonningen. The Czar makes a Descent into Finland; takes Abo. The Battle of Pulkona. The Czar removes the Russian Trade from Archangel to Petersburg. Obtains a great Victory at Sea, and makes a Naval Triumph for it. Receives an Ambassador from the Cham of the Usbeck Tartars. Institutes the Order of St. Catharine. Makes an Enquiry into several Frauds committed by many of the principal Men in Russia. The King of Prussia's Manifesto relating to the Sequestration of Pomerania. Stralsund taken. The Czar sets up a new Academy at Petersburg. A Son born to the Czarewitz. The Death of his Consort. The Czarina Catharine brought to Bed of a Son. The Death of the Czarina, Dowager of the Czar John, and her Interment.

THE Negotiations of *Adrianople* and *Constantinople*, did not put a Stop to the Military Operations in the *Swedish* Provinces in *Germany*. In *Holstein* the victorious Army of General *Steinbock* was encompassed, and caught, as it were, in a Net, by the prudent Management of the *Danish* General, to which his *Czarish* Majesty did not a little contribute; for after the Battle of *Gadebusch*, he pursued the *Svedes* with a Body of his Troops, and passed the *Steckris*, dispersing them round about *Hambourg*, into which City he went with

with Prince *Menzikoff*, and had several long Conferences with General *Scholten*, concerning the Operations of the Campaign. From *Hambourg* he went to *Altena* that had been lately burnt by the *Swedese*; for *Steinbeck*, in Revenge of the *Danes* having destroyed *Strade*, set Fire to this City at Midnight, and forced the miserable Inhabitants, in extreme cold Weather, to take up their Lodgings on the Snow, while their Houses and Effects were all burnt. It was with much Grief that the *Prussian* Monarch beheld the Ruins of the Place, he ordered a thousand Roubles to be distributed among the unfortunate Citizens, and to help them to repair their Loss, in some Sort, promised to favour their Commerce to *Archangel*.

In the mean Time the Troops made several Motions as well to inclose the *Swedese*, as to facilitate the Junction of the *Danes* and *Russians*. The Czar sent General *Baur* to attack a Body of the *Swedese*, who defended the Bridge of *Hollingstedt*; and tho' they made a stout Resistance, yet the *Russian* General who was at the Head of 4000 Men, carried the Post, drove the *Swedese* into the Village, where he took several Prisoners, and afterwards broke down the Bridge. General *Steinbeck* now began to perceive that he had made a false Step in taking that Route, and was willing to repair that Fault by repassing the *Eyder* to get into *Pomerania* again, but being informed that the *Russian* Cavalry was in full March, he was obliged to change his Design, and post himself between *Frederickstadt*, *Husum* and *Temmingen*, where he intrenched himself; but the Czar did not suffer him to remain long in quiet, for on the 12th of *February*, that Prince putting himself at the Head of five Battalions of his Guards and some Dragoons, he went in Person, and attacked the *Swedese* in the Intrenchments they had thrown up before *Frederickstadt*: And, after a very long Resistance, made himself Master of them, having drove away the Enemy, who were obliged to retire to the main Body of their Army; upon

which the *Swedish* Garrison that was in the Town, betook themselves also to Flight with much Precipitation. The *Russians* pursued the Enemy for some Time, taking Part of their Baggage, and making about 300 of them Prisoners, with the Loss only of one Lieutenant and some Dragoons and Grenadiers. His Czarish Majesty enter'd the Town the same Day, and lay there all Night. The Fear that General *Steinbock* was in of being attacked, made him use all his Endeavours to engage Colonel *Wolf* to give him Leave to bring his Army into *Tonningen* as a Place of Safety.

This is an Affair of too much Importance, and the Consequences were too considerable to be pass'd over in Silence, since it is on what pass'd at that Time, that the King of *Denmark* founds his Pretensions of keeping the Country of *Holstein*, which he took from the young Duke *Charles Frederick*, who afterwards became Son-in-Law to the Czar. This Prince, Nephew to the King of *Sweden*, was brought up at *Stockholm*, his Uncle, Prince *Christian Augustus*, Bishop of *Lubeck*, being appointed Administrator of his Dukedom, when Duke *Frederick IV.* was killed at the Battle of *Cliffau*, Anno 1702, as beforementioned, and a Neutrality was agreed to for the States of the young Duke.

When it was judg'd proper in *Sweden* to order General *Steinbock* to go into *Futland* with the Army under his Command, they did not imagine but that he would have had the Prudence to have made sure of some Place of Retreat if any Disaster should befall him; but in *Holstein* there was only the Fortress of *Tonningen* where this Asylum could be found, for which Reason the most pressing Instances were made to the young Duke, to provide for the Safety of the *Swedish* Army, by giving Orders to the Commandant of *Tonningen* to receive them under the Cannon, or even into the Place, if Necessity requir'd it. The Motives made use of to the Duke were so strong, that he sent an Order for that Purpose as was desired.

But

BUT notwithstanding the young Duke had made this Sacrifice to the *Swedes*, the Consent of the Administrator was likewise thought necessary, without which it was to be feared that the Commandant of *Zorningen* would make some Scruples before he comply'd with their Desire: For this Reason Application was made to that Prince, but the Administrator made more Difficulty in the Affair than his Nephew had done, and although he acknowledged all the Obligations that the House of *Holstein* had to *Sweden*, and the Necessity there was of rendering her this Service at so critical a Conjunction, yet he would not come into it, without stipulating certain Conditions with General *Steinbock*, nor had he done it at all, if it had not been made appear to him, that the *Neutrality* was but little regarded by the *Danes*, who lived as they pleased in all Parts of *Sleswick-Holstein*. It is said by some, that the Administrator, unwilling to venture the Loss of the *Swedish* Forces, and, at the same Time, dreading the Resentment of the *Danes*, gave private Orders to *Wolf* to receive the *Swedish* Troops, but to deny that he ever had such Orders from him, and take the Blame wholly upon himself, and that *Steinbock* was likewise sworn to Secrecy; but be this as it may, the *Swedish* Troops being received into the Fortress, was what gave an Opportunity to the King of *Denmark* to complain of the Violation of the *Neutrality*, and to seize on the Duchy of *Sleswick*, and put it under Sequestration, as he did soon after the Duchy of *Holstein*.

The following Treaty between *Steinbock* and the Duke, Administrator of *Holstein* was found afterwards among *Steinbock's* Papers, when, as will be mentioned hereafter, he was forced to surrender.

BE it known, &c. Inasmuch as Count *Magnus Steinbock*, Counsellor to his Majesty the King of *Sweden*, and chief General of the *Swedish* Army in *Germany*, hath most earnestly solicited his Highness *Augustus* Bishop of *Lubeck*, Duke and

Administrator of *Sleswick-Holstein*, to permit him,
 and the Army he commands, to make use of the
 Fortress of *Tonningen* for his Protection in this Case
 of Necessity, and his Excellency the said Count
 having represented that by this Condescension the
 Ducal House will in this Conjunction render a
 most important Service to the Crown of *Sweden*,
 which can never be recompensed, the *Swedish*
 Army being at this Time exposed to the extremest
 Dangers by the Approach of the united Forces
 of its Enemies, which are much superior to them
 in Number; his Highness the Administrator, con-
 sidering the inviolable Friendship there is be-
 tween the Ducal House and the Crown of *Swe-*
den, would not be wanting to manifest his Affec-
 tion and Zeal for its Service upon so important
 an Occasion: But withal, as this is an Affair so
 delicate, and of so great Consequence, it is indis-
 pensably necessary to use all imaginable Precau-
 tions in it; and therefore his Serene Highness
 above-mentioned has concluded with his Excel-
 lency Count *Steinbock* the following Articles:

I. His Highness consents that Count *Steinbock*
 may form and establish his Magazines for the
Swedish Army under the Cannon, and under the
 Defence of the Fortress of *Tonningen*, as also,

II. That the whole *Swedish* Army under the
 Command of Count *Steinbock* may retire and cover
 itself under the said Fortress, in case it be shut
 up and pressed by the Enemies.

III. In case that Count *Steinbock* should be forced
 to a Battle and be worsted, he may cover himself
 and his Army in Retreat under the said Fortress
 of *Tonningen*.

IV. The necessary Orders to that Purpose shall
 be delivered into the Hands of the said Count
 as soon as this present Convention shall be exe-
 cuted.

V. In Exchange, his Excellency Count *Stein-*
bock promises in the Name of his Master the King

of

of *Sweden*, as a Man of Honour upon Parole and *bona Fide*, that whereas by the Establishment of Magazines, Lodgments, and by the Marches and Military Operations, the Estates of the Ducal House may be entirely ruined; and that in Case the promised Retreat under the Cannon of *Tonningen* actually happens, the King of *Denmark*, as it is easy to judge, will take it for a declared Rupture, and by Consequence, will not only treat the Country of the Ducal House as that of an Enemy, but will even endeavour to reduce it, and force it from the Dominion of his serene Highness the Duke *Charles Frederick*: For these Causes, his *Swedish* Majesty shall not or will not treat or conclude a Peace with the Crown of *Denmark*, 'till not only the Ducal House be entirely restored, but also 'till it be sufficiently indemnified from all the Loss and Damage it may have suffered. And in Consequence hereof, that at least the Baillage of *Segeberg*, and the County of *Pirenberg* be given up and evacuated by the Crown of *Denmark* to the Ducal House.

VI. Count *Steinbock* shall not, after he has served himself of the Protection of *Tonningen*, march with his Army out of this Country, and leave it exposed before a Peace is concluded upon the Foot above-mentioned with the Crown of *Denmark*. But in Case his Excellency shall have no Occasion to make use of the Protection of that Fortress, and shall entirely pass by it in such a Manner that the Ducal House may preserve a perfect Neutrality, that then his Excellency may have full Liberty to march with his Army whither he pleases.

VII. Furthermore, Count *Steinbock* promises in the Name of his *Swedish* Majesty, seeing the Complaissance of the Duke Administrator, and the Service he will do by the Execution of the four first Articles of this Convention, that his said Majesty will acknowledge it with all imaginable

‘ ble Gratitude towards his serene Highness in particular, and towards the Ducal Family in general ;
 ‘ and will give to his Highness and to his most Serene Family real Proofs of a fair Acknowledgment, by the Return of Services; obliging himself at the same Time to procure for him an entire Satisfaction for all Losses and Damages which this Resolution and Defence for his *Swedish* Majesty shall bring upon him.

‘ VIII. And in Regard that by this Proceeding it may easily happen, that not only the Province may be ruined, but even over-run by foreign Troops and Enemies, and thereby the Ducal Chamber of Finances may become destitute of all Revenue, and the Duke Administrator may be reduced to a Condition of not having wherewithal to provide for the Court of Duke *Charles Frederick*, or to subsist his own; Count *Steinbock* promises in the Name of his *Swedish* Majesty, that in such Case he will furnish with ready Money as much as shall be requisite to maintain both the said Courts ’till the Conclusion of the present War, and ’till Restitution and Satisfaction shall be secured to the Ducal House.

‘ IX. Count *Steinbock* promises sincerely and *bona Fide*, and obliges himself by all that can most strongly engage a Man of Honour, that he will never divulge this present Treaty to any other than the King, and will not discover the Contents of it to any other whatsoever; and he will use such Precautions to keep it entirely secret, that there shall need no Care or Fear upon that Account.

‘ And although, by Reason of the Absence of his *Swedish* Majesty there is no Means of having the said Treaty ratified, the said Count takes upon himself to answer for the Performance of all that is agreed upon and stipulated herein, and that it shall be agreed to and confirm’d by his Majesty. In Witness whereof two Copies of this

“ this Treaty have been executed and exchanged,
 “ after being Signed and Sealed on both Sides.

Done at the Castle of
 Gettorp and Husum,
 Jan. 21, 1713.

G. H. T. V. GOERTZ. JOHAN. BANER.
 FRAN. VON. HAGEN.
 CHRISTIAN AUGUST.
 A. C. STEINBOCK.

Separate A R T I C L E S.

“ **I** N Case it should happen, that contrary to all
 “ Expectation the Royal Army of *Sweden* should
 “ be defeated, and that Count *Steinbock*, with the
 “ Army he commands, should not find himself se-
 “ cure enough under the Walls of *Tonningen*, but
 “ shall be obliged to desire for his Safety to enter
 “ with his Army into that Fortress; his Serene
 “ Highness the Administrator gives Leave to it by
 “ these Presents, and for that Purpose an Order
 “ eventual to the Governor of the said Fortress is
 “ now put into the Hands of the said Count *Stein-*
 “ *bock*; in Exchange for which Count *Steinbock* pro-
 “ mises,

“ I. That he will not make Use of this Liberty
 “ of retiring into that Fortress but in Case of ex-
 “ treme Necessity, particularly when there remains
 “ no other Way of saving himself and the Troops
 “ of his *Swedish* Majesty.

“ II. Count *Steinbock* obliges himself, that in Case
 “ the said Necessity for retiring into that Fortress
 “ happens, he will not assume any Command of it,
 “ but the Governor shall entirely exercise all Com-
 “ mand and Authority there as formerly. But his
 “ said Excellency reserves to himself the free and
 “ entire

entire Disposition of the *Swedish* Troops under his Command.

III. The said Count engages also by these Presents, that when Peace shall be made with the Crown of *Denmark*, and he shall be at Liberty to retire with the *Swedish* Army out of this Country, that he and his Troops will evacuate that Fortreis, and shall not or will not refuse upon any Pretence whatsoever, to leave it free and in the Power of the Duke of *Holftein*.

IV. It is agreed to and promised by Count *Steinbeck*, that he shall not or will not meddle in any Manner whatsoever, directly or indirectly, with private or domestick Affairs, or those relating to the Administration of the Ducal House, much less with the Affairs of *Wederkoff* and the Documents there kept, but that he will wholly forbear interesting himself therein, either in Person or by the Intercession of any other.

In Witness whereof this separate Article has been Signed and Sealed by both Parties, in the same Manner and on the same Day with the principal Treaty, and shall be of the same Force and Obligation as if it were inserted therein.

Done at the Castle of
Gottorp and *Husum*,
Jan. 21, 1731.

G. H. E. F. V. GOERTZ. JÖ. BANER.
H. G. E. Z. RAVENTLAV.
FRANTZ VON HAGEN.
CHRISTIAN AUGUSTUS.
A. E. STEINBOCK.

The Retreat of *Steinbeck* into *Tönningen* put an End to the Campaign, the Season not being proper either to besiege or bombard that Place, and the *Russian* Troops went into Quarters so convenient that

that they could easily prevent the *Swedes* passing the *Eyder*.

On the 23d of *February* the Czar took Leave of the King of *Denmark*, leaving to him the Command of his Troops, after having earnestly recommended to his Generals the Care of observing a strict Discipline in his Army. At his parting with his *Danish* Majesty, he assured him he was going to work to find Employment for the *Swedes* on the Side of *Finland*; and he was as good as his Word. He went next, by the Way of *Stade*, to *Hanover*, and was received with all imaginable Marks of Respect at the Court of the Elector; during his Stay here he took frequent Opportunities of conversing with Princess *Sophia*, the Electress Dowager, for whom he had conceived a very great Esteem, at the Time of his first Journey into *Holland*. From *Hanover* his Czarish Majesty went to the Court of *Welfenbittel*, where he used his good Offices to reconcile the Princess and the *Czarewitz*, and engaged her to come to *Petersburgh*; where, beautiful and deserving as she was, she met with but very indifferent Treatment from her Husband. From the last named Place he went to *Schonhausen*, where he had an Interview with the King of *Prussia*, who had just then succeeded to the Crown of his Father, and who was come on Purpose to throw himself in the Way of his Czarish Majesty, that he might consult with him on the Affairs of *Pomerania*. At length this Monarch, whose Presence was so necessary in his own Dominions, hastened through *Dantzick* and *Keningsberg* to *Riga*, in which City he found the Czarina *Catherine* delivered of a Princess, to whom he gave the Name of *Maria Petrovna*.

As soon as the Czar arrived at *Petersburgh*, he got together at *Revel*, *Narva*, and other Ports of the Gulph about three Hundred Vessels, upon which he embarked, in the beginning of *May*, twelve Thousand Men, who, being carried by a favourable Wind to the Coasts of *Finland*, landed at *Helsingfors*. A Body of *Swedish* Troops, under the Command

Command of General *Lubekker*, accustomed to ill Fortune against the *Russians*; dared not oppose his Descent; but burnt their Barracks, and retired to *Abo*, to make Head against the Enemy behind the Walls of their Capital. The Czar, not thinking himself quite strong enough to attack them, was contented to make *Bergo* a Place of Arms, and prepare a good Magazine there; after which he returned to *Petersburgh* to send a second Convoy thither, which might enable him to push his Conquests in that Province.

While this was getting ready, the Vice-Admiral put to Sea with twelve Men of War and five Frigates, with the Design of taking or burning three *Swedish* Vessels that were before *Helsingfos*, and which hindered the free Communication of the Czar with his Army by Water. But this Enterprize did not succeed, because the Vice-Admiral's Ship striking on a Quick-Sand he was obliged to burn it; and some of the Captains also managed with very little Skill. However the ill Success put no Stop to the Czar's Progress, but he returned with the second Convoy; which put Prince *Galliczin* in a Condition to form an Army of twenty Thousand Foot and four Thousand Horse that were followed by a good Train of Artillery. The Czar put out to Sea himself with twenty Frigates to go in quest of a Squadron of *Swedish* Ships that were in the Gulph; but having learnt that they were so advantageously posted, that there was no Possibility of attacking them, he very readily abandoned this Project to return and join his Army which was then at *Schrendo* about five Leagues from *Helsingfos*. On the 2d. of *September* the *Russians* forced the Passage of *Carelssoio*, which was defended by eight Hundred *Swedes*, this opened to them the Way to *Abo*, where the *Russian* Army arrived on the 8th; and found the Place abandoned to them, with only twenty Persons left in it; who were very kindly treated by the Czar. In this Town his Majesty found much Provision, but the greatest Booty was the large
Number

Number of Books which he sent to *Petersburgh*, to help to furnish the Library he was making there.

After the taking of *Abo*, his Majesty returned to *Petersburgh*; leaving Orders with his Generals to follow the *Swedish* Army that was on the Side of *Thavaasthus*, and which consisted of nine or ten Thousand Men at most.

Thavaasthus is not a Place of any Strength, however the *Swedes* defended it for some Time very courageously, and then quitted it to retire among the Mountains and Bogs, with which this Country abounds, and having thrown some of their Artillery into the Water, they posted themselves at the advantageous Passage of *Pulkona*, which they guarded with Cannon. The *Russians* followed them in their Retreat, but at the Sight of the Post they were in, made a Halt, and were obliged to throw up an Intrenchment to cover themselves, and even to place some Cannon upon it. The *Russian* Generals, who immediately saw the great Difficulty of carrying this Post, endeavoured to take the Enemy in the Rear, by passing some very deep Morasses, which the *Swedes* had thought impracticable: To this End they got together several Floats of Timber, all the Boats and Pontons that they could, and passed with about seven Thousand Men commanded by the Lieutenant-Generals *Apraxin* and *Butterlin*, and by Major-General *Tshermischev*. *Arnsfeldt* who commanded the *Swedes*, having Notice of their Design, sent some Regiments to support four Hundred Horse, posted where the *Russians* were to come over, who would have met with a vigorous Opposition, if a very thick Fog had not favoured their Passage. Prince *Galliczin* first attacked the *Swedish* Horse, to whose Assistance *Arnsfeldt* advanced with four or five Regiments, which occasioned an obstinate Battle; the *Russians* were drove back by the Cavalry almost into the Water; but the other Wing, who were only engaged with the *Swedish* Infantry, charged with such Vigour that he made them retire. At length Admiral *Apraxin*,

Apraxin, Lieutenant-General *Bruce*, and the Major-Generals *Gollowin* and *Wolokonski* who brought up the Rear with the Dragoons and some Foot that came last over the Floats, charged the *Swedes* so briskly that they drove them from their Intrenchments, and made them betake themselves to Flight with full Speed towards *Norost* and *Tammerfort*. Thus the Victory fell to the *Russians*, who lost indeed seven Hundred Men, but the Enemy had something more than that Number slain and taken Prisoners, besides the Loss of several Pieces of Cannon. The Czar, after this, caused *Thavaasthus* to be fortified to stop the *Swedes* 'till the Season of the Year would permit him to push on his Conquests.

The Troops commanded by Prince *Menzikoff* in *Pomerania*, had as great a Share of Glory; and those in *Holstein* were no small Assistance to the King of *Denmark* in reducing *Tönningen* and General *Steinbock*, who having maintained his Post as long as he could, was at length, through Want and Hunger, forced to submit himself and all his Forces to the hard Conditions of surrendering Prisoners of War, and had then Time to make some serious Reflections on his Cruelty in burning the Town of *Altena*, and ruining Thousands of innocent Persons. As it was not possible to form the Siege of *Stralsund* without being Masters of the Isle of *Rügen*, the *Russians* and *Saxons*, aided by the *Danes*, executed this Design with good Success, on the 23d of July, and the Descent was made near the Village of *Grabaw*, without any other Loss than five or six Men, altho' the Coast was lined with Horse and Foot, and General *Dukker* was not very far from them; but he had retired to *Stralsund* very à propos.

Prince *Menzikoff* had for some Time block'd up *Stetin* with an Army of twenty-four Thousand *Russians*; and according to an Agreement made with the King of *Prussia*, who was very desirous of having that Town; that, with the rest of the High *Swedish Pomerania* were sequestered into his Hands,

as *Holstein* had been into the Hands of the King of *Denmark*, and so the Northern Allies were obliged to withdraw their Troops out of the *Swedish* Provinces in *Germany*. In this Retreat, Prince *Menzikoff* coming into the Territories of *Hambourg*, threatened that City with Military Executions on some Pretence which at such Times Soldiers never want, if the Citizens did not pay him five Hundred Thousand Crowns; but the Demand was compounded for half. The City of *Lubeck* paid him a hundred Thousand, and the City of *Dantzick* a hundred and fifty Thousand. With these Contributions the Prince returned to *Petersburgh*, where he gave an Account to his Czarish Majesty of all he had done in his Absence. That Monarch, very well satisfy'd with the Success of his Arms, could not approve of the Sequestration of *Pomerania*, because it ty'd up his Hands from doing any thing more there, and therefore refused at first to ratify the Treaty made with *Menzikoff*, giving some Reasons against it to the King of *Prussia*, but these were so well answered, that he was satisfy'd, and undertook to find Employment for his Troops elsewhere; which was no difficult Matter, since the Conquests he had already made in *Finland*, opened the Way to more, which were so much the easier, as a Panic was spread over the People not only of this Province, but even beyond the *Bethnick* Gulph.

Although the Emperor and the Powers interested in the War of the North had agreed to hold a Congress at *Brunswick*, where the Regency of *Sweden* consented to send their Plenipotentiaries to treat of a general Peace, and where several Ministers were already arrived, yet this Project came to nothing: The Czar, who desired nothing more than a good Peace that might confirm to him the quiet Possession of his Conquests, foresaw, with Chagrin, the little Success that was like to attend this important Undertaking; and therefore, that he might not give his Enemies Time to recover themselves, or according to the known Maxim, *that it is best to make*

make Peace with Sword in Hand, took all necessary Measures, during the Winter, to pursue his Conquests in *Finland*. His Czarish Majesty still keeping in View his great Design of perfecting the Establishment of his new City of *Petersburgh*, caused at this Time a Thousand Familles to come thither from *Moscow*, he offer'd likewise great Advantages to all Foreigners that should settle there, and published an Order through all the Towns of *Muscovy*, declaring, that all the Goods that were usually sent to *Archangel* to be sold to Strangers or bartered for other Goods, should from thenceforth be sent to *Petersburgh*, requiring all Merchants and others to acquaint their Correspondents in foreign Parts with this Regulation, that they might not be at unnecessary Expences in sending Ships to *Archangel*, and that the Duties which were to be paid at *Petersburgh* were, in every Respect to be the same as were paid before; however the Commerce and Trade of the Merchants was not entirely transplanted to *Petersburgh* till some Years after; he also made publick Declaration, that if the Regency of *Sweden* should stop any Vessels coming towards his Dominions, he was in a Condition to hinder them from entring the Ports of *Sweden*. Moreover, besides a great Number of Gallies and other Barks which he had ordered to be built at *Cronstot*, *Petersburgh*, and other Places, he bought several in *England* and *Holland*, which he gave Orders to have equipt at *Revel*.

Prince *Galliczin* had not remain'd idle after the Battle of *Pulkona*, but kept harrassing the *Swedes* without ceasing, who not being able to make Head against him, made a running Fight of it, so that almost all *Finland* was under Contribution. At length the *Russians*, near *Lapla*, within a quarter of a Mile of *Wasa*, came up with General *Arnfeldt*, who had intrenched himself there with about eight or nine thousand Men, one Part of which were ill-armed Peasants. The *Russian* General attacked them here; they stood firm at first, and repulsed the

the *Russians*, but when they returned to the Charge, the *Finlandish* Peasants took to their Heels, and drew the *Swedish* Soldiers after them. It is true the *Russians* were the Stronger, but they met with such Resistance, that the Victory was chiefly owing to their Numbers; and it was of the more Importance to them, because by that they were become entire Masters of *Finland*. The Czar, soon after this Conquest, caused a Manifesto to be printed and published, wherein he represented, that having often proposed and offer'd an equitable Peace to *Sweden*, and that Crown having continually rejected all such Offers, the *Swedish* Nation could blame nobody but themselves; and that all the Miseries and Calamities they felt, and which might still fall upon them, were to lye at their own Door.

In the Beginning of the Month of *June*, Colonel *Schubajoff*, Governor of *Wybourg* in *Finland*, had Orders to march with a Detachment of a thousand Men of his Garrison, and with a sufficient Train of Artillery, to attack the Capital Fortress of the Province of *Savolaxia* called *Nyslöt*; the Governor, in Obedience to this Order, appeared before the Place on the 8th of *June*, and took Post on a little Island named *Malm*, whence he drove the *Swedes*, who had lodged themselves there to dispute his Passage. He then caused Batteries to be raised at proper Places, and on the 20th they began to Fire upon the Works. The 28th a sufficient Breach being made, the *Swedish* Governor was summoned: He, considering that he had a Retreat to a fortified Castle, and that the Approach to the Town was defended by a rapid Stream which run close by the Walls, would not hearken at first to any Capitulation; but when he saw that the *Russians* were getting ready Floats of Timber for passing the Water, and that they appear'd determined to make the Assault whatever it might cost them, he be-thought himself that if the Place were carried by Storm, the Destruction of the Garrison and Inhabitants would ensue, and so consented to a Capitulation;

lation; pursuant to which, the Place was surrendered to the *Muscovites* on the 29th of the same Month.

The *Swedes* had fitted out their Fleet to Succour *Finland*, or rather to advance towards the Coasts of that Province, to observe the *Russians*, in the Fear they were in of their undertaking to make some Descent on the Island of *Aland*, or even in *Sweden* itself: This Fleet, commanded by Admiral *Watrang*, did at first gain some Advantages on the Coast of *Abo*, where they sunk some *Russian* Vessels, took about 200 Prisoners, and seized on the Port of *Twerwin*, from whence they hoped to be able to oppose any Descent in the Island of *Aland*. The Czar's Fleet consisted of thirty Ships of the Line; the greatest Part of which had been built in *England* and *Holland*, and were now at *Revel* to be victualled. These thirty Ships were followed by some Frigates and Yachts, by 80 Gallies and 100 Demi-Galleys, without reckoning a great Number of flat Boats called *Schampavies*. This Fleet was got together under *Cronslot*, whither the *Swedes* intended to go and burn it, but the Advice-Yachts making Report, that they had perceived the *Swedish* Vice-Admiral *Lilie* standing out to Sea with fourteen Men of War, the *Russian* Rear-Admiral desired the Admiral to order him to take a View of the Enemy, and to detach him with twenty-five Gallies towards the Isles nearest adjacent to the *Swedish* Fleet; which was approved; the said Rear-Admiral, which was the Czar himself, was no sooner arrived in full View of the Station which the Enemy had kept a long Time, than he observ'd that the *Swedish* Admiral *Watrang* continued there with six Men of War of the Line, and three Frigates, and that the *Swedish* Vice-Admiral was steering his Course towards the South-East, having with him Bomb-Vessels; whence he judged that his Design might be to attack the *Russian* Fleet at *Revel* or their Gallies. The Rear-Admiral immediately sent an Account of this in Writing to the Admiral, and desired.

desired him to come and join him the next Morning.

After some Deliberation, the Resolution was taken to detach twenty Gallies to endeavour to pass behind the Enemy's Fleet as near to the Coast as was practicable, by favour of a Calm which happened at that Time; and this was forthwith executed under the Command of Commodore *Ismaiewitz*, Brigadier *Wolcoff*, and Captain *Bredake*. The Enemy perceiving it, immediately gave the Signal for weighing Anchor, and making ready to sail, and fired very hard at the *Russian* Gallies; but the Bullets could not reach them, by reason of the too great Distance, and their large Ships could not approach nearer to the Shore. The Admiral seeing those twenty Gallies had passed so successfully, detach'd fifteen more under the Command of Brigadier *Le Fort*, the Captains *Dumont* and *Grier*, who passed likewise by rowing. Hereupon the *Swedish* Admiral put abroad a white Ensign, which was a Signal for his Vice-Admiral to return. In the mean while, it being known that the Enemy had a Frigate, six Gallies, and three less Vessels at the Place where the *Russians* designed to put ashore, Commodore *Ismaiewitz* judged it best to make directly thither and attack them; but it was too late, and besides, the *Swedish* Vice-Admiral had joined Admiral *Watrang*, which obliged him to defer it. At the same Time, the *Russian* Admiral determined to attempt to force a Passage, if it should be necessary, through the Enemy's Fleet, which had changed their Station a little to go and assist the forementioned thirty Gallies. The next Day this Resolution, tho' very hazardous, was executed with so great Order and Success, that the *Russians* passed close by the Enemy, sustaining all their Fire, with the Loss only of one Galley, which had the Misfortune to touch and stick fast upon a Sand.

All the Fleet having passed thus, Commodore *Ismaiewitz* gave Notice that he had blocked up the Enemy's Rear-Admiral; whereupon the *Russian* Admiral

miral *Apraxin* ranged the Fleet in Order of Battle, sent Adjutant-General *Tagusinsky* to summon the said *Swedish* Rear-Admiral *Ebrenschield* to surrender, and, on his Refusal, caused him to be attacked by the Vanguard at three in the Afternoon so vigorously, that notwithstanding the superior Fire of the Enemy, who had a greater Number of Guns than the *Russians*, and the extraordinary Resistance they made for two Hours, the Frigate as also the Gallies were taken by Boarding. The Rear-Admiral *Ebrenschield* having first taken down his Flag, leaped into a Shallop to endeavour to make his Escape, but he was taken, after some Resistance, by Captain *Bakeoff*.

This Attack by the *Russian* Vanguard, was commanded and conducted by the Czar, Rear-Admiral only of his own Fleet, and by General *Weide*; and the Bravery which the Officers and Soldiers shewed in this Action cannot be sufficiently set forth; for besides that the *Russian* Vessels were much less in Bulk than those of the Enemy, they could not oppose a wider Front to them than they themselves had, and the Fire of the others Cannon being superior to that of the *Muscovites*, they could not overcome them but by boarding them. In this Action the *Swedes* lost 936 Soldiers and Sailors, of whom 577 were alive and made Prisoners. The *Russians* had one Colonel, two Captains, two Lieutenants, two Sub-Lieutenants, one Adjutant, and 103 Soldiers killed; and one Brigadier, seven Captains, four Lieutenants, three Sub-Lieutenants, one Ensign and 309 Soldiers wounded, besides 13 Seamen killed, and 16 wounded, which made in the whole 124 killed, and 341 wounded. The *Swedish* Vessels, in which were 116 Guns with all the Prisoners, were sent to *Revel*.

The first Consequence of this Victory, was the Taking the Island of *Aland*, where the Czar landed 16,000 Men, and took the Fort and other Posts, designing to transport thither his Forces incamped near *Abo*, from whence, having but twelve Leagues

to the Coasts of *Sweden*, he thought to make his intended Descent at *Stockholm*: It is hardly to be imagined with how much Terror the People of that Capital were seized, every one began to think of his own Safety, and the Generals took all necessary Precautions to defend the Entry into the Port, by recalling Admiral *Watrang*, whom they posted, with a Squadron, between *Aland* and *Scheeren*: But the Season of the Year not permitting his Czarish Majesty to execute so important an Enterprize at that Time, and covered with Laurels already, he retook the Route of *Revel*, and from thence returned to *Petersburgh*, into which City he made a most triumphant Entry.

His Majesty, having stopt a few Days at *Cronslot*, advanced as far as *Catherine Hof*, where he continued, two Days, the Czarina being just then brought to bed of a Princess, to whom he gave the Name of *Anne*. On the 20th of *September*, he approached the Fortress with the *Russian* and *Swedish* Ships, and was saluted with 150 Guns. First, came three *Russian* Gallies. Secondly, three *Swedish* Scher-boats of four Guns each. Thirdly, Six *Swedish* Gallies of 14 Guns each. Fourthly, A *Swedish* Frigot (all these taken in the Fight with Admiral *Ehrenschildt*) all with the *Swedish* Colours hanging down. Fifthly, The *Scampavia* of the Czar, as Rear-Admiral. Sixthly, Other *Russian* *Scampavies*, which Vessels being come up over-against the Triumphant Arch that was erected on the Bridge near the Fortress, they saluted the same with all their Cannon, and were answered with the like Discharge from the Cannon of the Fort, and the Admiralty. All the Men that were on Board landed there, and the Procession began in the following Order.

1. A Company of *Preobrazinski*, led by Major-General *Gollowzin*. 2. The Cannon on their Carriages that was taken the last Winter near *Wasa* by the Lieutenant-General Prince *Galliczin* over the *Swedish* Major-General *Arenfeldt*. 3. Sixty-three Colours or Standards taken in the Action aforesaid, and

and the last Engagement. 4. Two Hundred *Swedish* Subaltern Sea-Officers, Soldiers and Seamen. 5. Two Companies of *Preobrazinski*. 6. The *Swedish* Sea-Officers, Prisoners. 7. The Flag of the Rear-Admiral *Ebrenschield*. 8. The *Swedish* Rear-Admiral *Ebrenschield*. 9. The *Muscovite* Rear-Admiral, being the Czar himself, with the rest of the Regiments of *Preobrazinski*.

As soon as his Majesty came under the Triumphal Arch, all the Senators, Grandees, and foreign Ministers, repair'd thither to congratulate his Majesty upon his Victory, and the Governor of *Moscow*, in the Name of the Empire of *Muscovy*, complimented him on his Bravery, and thank'd him for his good Services. The Triumphal Arch was most magnificently adorned, and represented divers Emblems: Among others was to be seen the *Russian* Eagle seizing an Elephant, with this Inscription; *The Russian Eagle catches no Flies*; [AQUILA NON CAPIT MUSCAS.] alluding to the Name of the *Swedish* Frigate called the *Elephant*. In this Order the Victorious and Vanquished proceeded to the Fortrefs, where the Vice-Czar *Romadonofski* sitting on a Throne, surrounded by the Senate, caused the Czar, as Rear-Admiral, to be called before the Assembly, and received at his Hands a Relation in Writing of the Victory obtain'd. The same being read by *Romadonofski* and the Senators, they took it under Consideration, and proposed several Questions to the *Russian* Rear-Admiral; after which, they unanimously declared him *Vice-Admiral* of *Russia*, in Recompence for his faithful Services done to his native Country, of which Proclamation being made, the whole Room resounded with *Sdrastvi Vice-Admiral. Health to the Vice-Admiral.*

The Czar having returned Thanks, went on board his Sloop, on which he hoisted the Flag of Vice-Admiral, and having received many Compliments and Congratulations, went to Prince *Menzikoff's* Palace, where a noble Entertainment was prepared. After being risen from Table, he shewed

particular

particular Marks of Esteem to M. Ehbrenschield, and said to all the Noble Russians standing about him ; *Here you see a brave and faithful Servant of his Master, who has made himself worthy of the highest Reward at his Hands, and who shall always have my Favour as long as he is with me, though he killed me many a brave Russian: I forgive it you,* (said he, turning to the Swede with a Smile) *and you may depend on my good Will.* Ehbrenschield having thanked the Czar, answered ; *However honourably I may have acted with regard to my Master, I did but my Duty: I sought Death, [he had received seven Wounds] but did not meet it, and it is no small Comfort to me in my Misfortune to be a Prisoner of your Majesty, and to be used so favourably, and with so much Distinction, by so great a Sea-Officer, and now worthily Vice-Admiral.*

M. Ehbrenschield affirmed, that the Russians had fought like Lions, and that nothing but his own Experience could have convinced him, that the Czar had made so good Soldiers of his stupid Subjects. Such is the Effect of severe Discipline, Time and Prudence. One of the Ships which had a Share in the Victory before-mentioned, had been built at *Petersburgh*, and launch'd there, upon which Occasion, the Czar being on board his new Vessel, with several old Russians sitting about him, addressed the following Discourse to them.

‘ Brethren, said he, who is that Man among you, who thirty Years ago could have had only the Thought of being employ’d with me in Ship-Carpenter’s Work here in the *Baltick* ; of coming hither in a German Dress to settle in these Countries conquered by our Fatigues and Bravery ; of living to see so many brave and victorious Soldiers and Seamen sprung from Russian Blood ; to see our Sons coming home able Men from foreign Countries ; to see so many outlandish Artificers and Handicrafts-Men settling in our Dominions, and to see the remotest Potentates express so great an Esteem for us ? The Historians place the an-

VOL. II. I cient

' cient Seat of all Sciences in *Greece*, from
 ' whence being expell'd by the Fatality of the
 ' Times, they spread into *Italy*, and afterwards
 ' dispersed themselves all over *Europe*, but by the
 ' Perverseness of our Ancestors were hindered from
 ' penetrating any farther than into *Poland*, though
 ' the *Polanders*, as well as the *Germans*, formerly
 ' groped in the same Darkeness in which we have
 ' lived hitherto, but the indefatigable Care of their
 ' Governors open'd their Eyes at length, that they
 ' made themselves Masters of those Arts, Sciences
 ' and Improvements of Life that formerly *Greece*
 ' boasted of. It is now our Turn, if you will
 ' seriously second my Designs, and add to your
 ' blind Obedience a voluntary Knowledge, and em-
 ' ploy yourselves to the Enquiry of Good and Evil.
 ' I can compare this Transmigration of Sciences
 ' with nothing better than the Circulation of the
 ' Blood in the human Body ; and my Mind almost
 ' gives me, they will, some Time or other, quit
 ' their Abode in *England*, *France*, and *Germany*,
 ' and come to settle for some Centuries among us,
 ' and, perhaps, afterwards return again to their
 ' original Home into *Greece*. In the mean Time, I
 ' earnestly recommend to your Practice the *Latin*
 ' Saying, *Ora & Labora*, Pray and Work, and in
 ' that Case be persuaded, you may happen, even in
 ' your Life-time, to put other civilized Nations to
 ' the Blush, and to carry the Glory of the *Russian*
 ' Name to the highest Pitch.

The old *Russians* heard this Harangue of their
 Monarch with a respectful Silence, often crying out,
Je Jeplanda, viz. *that is true*, adding, that they
 were all disposed to follow his Orders, and to set
 him before them for an Example ; whether they
 were sincere or not, is another Question : However,
 this confirms the Judgment made of him, by Rear-
 Admiral *Ebrenschield*, and the Idea that most Men
 had of his great Capacity, the Extent of his Genius,
 and his fine Understanding. Those who had the
 Honour

Honour to be about him, could not but own that he was the most judicious Minister, the most experienced General, Officer, and Soldier, in his Empire; the most learned of all the *Russian* Theologists or Philosophers; very well versed in History and Mechanics; an able Ship-builder, and a good Sailor: And altho' in all the Arts he practised he had but mean Disciples, obstinate and illiterate, yet he set them all on a good Foot, and disciplined his Troops in such a Manner, and brought them to such a Degree of Reputation, especially his Infantry, that there were no Troops in the World they would yield to.

Things were in this Sate, when *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden*, return'd to his Dominions, after the most remarkable Action of *Bender*, wherein, as *M. Fontenelle* says, he had done more than ever *Roman* durst feign to do, he was carried Prisoner, by the Sultan's Order, to *Adrianople*, and kept for some Time under Confinement in the Borough of *Dimotica*, 'till, by the Interposition of the *French* Ambassador, the *Porte* was prevailed on to use him with less Rigour. And he was then sent to a Village called *Demirtash*, in Hopes the *French* Ambassador would be able to dispose him to leave the *Turkish* Dominions, and return Home by Sea; but he continued obstinate, and immoveably persisted in his first Designs, feeding himself with vain Expectations, that, by his Intrigues at the *Porte*, he should be able to kindle a new War between the *Czar* and the *Turk*, but finding himself disappointed herein, and even slighted so much by the *Turks*, that they paid him no Marks of Respect, and, at last, took from him the Allowance they had always made him, he was forced by meer Necessity to quit their Territories: And, having passed *incognito* through *Transilvania*, *Hungary*, *Austria*, and *Germany*, arrived at *Stralsund* on the 22d of *November* in the Night, attended only by Colonel *During* and two Servants, after having rode near three

Hundred German Leagues in sixteen Days, and not once had his Boots off in that Time.

He was complimented on his Return by all the neighbouring Princes, who were desirous to bring him, if possible, to listen to a Peace, but he was of a Temper not to suffer Mediators to prescribe Laws to him, and therefore his first Thoughts were bent upon the Means of raising 25,000 Men in *Pomerania*, and Money to support the necessary Expence of renewing the War.

The Courage of the *Swedes* was very much revived at the Return of their Prince, which had been so greatly sunk before by the many Losses they had sustained, and by the continual and successful Progress of the *Muscovite* Arms, that they began to fear for their Capital itself. The Presence of the King open'd a new Scene; that Prince did not think fit to declare his Mind on the Propositions made him immediately after his Return, *viz.* First, *To confirm the Treaty for the Sequestration of Stetin; and, Secondly, To promise to forbear all Hostilities against the Danes and Saxons within the Empire; his Prussian Majesty engaging on his Part, that the Kings of Poland and Denmark should not attack the Swedish Pomerania:* And his not declaring himself on these two Articles, was look'd upon as a plain Indication of his Design of renewing the War in the *Lower Saxony*, for the recovering the Duchy of *Bremen*, yielded by the King of *Denmark*, on certain Conditions, to the Elector of *Hanover*, just then ascended the Throne of *Great-Britain*; and for restoring the Ducal House of *Holstein*. Whereupon, the King of *Prussia* assembled his Forces, which were quartered in his distant Dominions, to be in a Readiness to form an Army for securing *Stetin*, and preserving the Peace of the *Lower Saxony*, in concert with the House of *Brunswick*, and other Princes concern'd therein. It is not in the least doubted, that the *French* assisted *Sweden* with Money for carrying on their Preparations; and the *Landgrave* of *Hesse-Cassel* was to lend his Forces, in
Consideration

Consideration of the Marriage of the Hereditary Prince his Son, with the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora*, who are the present King and Queen of *Sweden*.

The Czar, on the other Hand, declared, that as he withdrew his Troops from *Pomerania* only upon Account of the strong Instances of the King of *Prussia*, who thereby secured the whole Country to *Sweden*, he was resolved to send a powerful Army to assist his Allies in reducing the Island of *Rugen*, the Fortresses of *Stralsund* and *Wismar*, and to drive the *Swedes* entirely out of *Germany*, unless the King of *Sweden* accepted the Propositions of the King of *Prussia*, and consequently a Neutrality for the Territories belonging to the respective Parties in the Empire.

The Joy the *Swedes* conceived upon the first News of the Arrival of their King in *Pomerania*, was very much lessen'd by the Resolution of his Majesty to continue the War in *Germany*, and his forbidding all his Subjects in general to come to him without express Leave. He promised them that he would give such a Diversion to the Forces of the Czar, as should oblige him to abandon his Enterprises against *Sweden*.

In the mean Time, the Czar having gain'd in Person the Sea Victory before related over the *Swedes*, he was so much encouraged thereby to augment his Fleet, that he had next Summer a Fleet of his own, consisting of fifty Ships of the Line of Battle, and resolved to engage the whole *Swedish* Fleet, in order to carry on his Design of attacking *Stockholm*.

His Czarish Majesty, even when most embarrassed with his Wars abroad, neglected no Opportunity of improving the State of his Affairs, and the Manners of his People at home. That Great Man being sensible that all the Pains he took to polish his Nobility, by introducing Arts and Learning among them, and sending away almost all the Sons of the Noblemen to travel abroad, and learn the Languages and Customs of the polite Nations of

Europe, would be to no Purpose unless he could also inspire the Fair-Sex with the same Politeness, made an Order, at this Time, that such of the Nobility who were of Age, and in a Condition to travel, and were marry'd, should take their Wives along with them, by which Means both Sexes might become equally polished. The Ladies were infinitely pleased with this, for they were now to be allowed a reasonable Liberty; whereas before they were under an ignominious and barbarous Slavery, as are the Women in all the Eastern Parts of the World.

The Renown of the Czar's great Exploits having spread through the vast Dominions of the *Usbeck Tartars*, as well as other Nations, brought to his Court this Year an Ambassador from their *Can*, or *Cham*, who arrived at *Petersburgh* on the 17th of *May*, and had Audience of the Czar the next Day, according to a Ceremonial agreed upon: The Ambassador ought to have made his Speech kneeling, but the Czar was pleased to wave that Ceremony for that Time, and therefore admitted him only at Prince *Dolgoruki's* House. The Ambassador, upon his entering the Room, put his Hands on his Knees, and made three very low Bows, then he made his Speech, which being interpreted, the Czar caused a short Answer to be made to it only by a Secretary, (whereas *Persian* Ambassadors are answered by the Great Chancellor) and assured him of his Favour by laying his own Hand on his Head. His Commission consisted of three Articles: First, that his Prince and Master *Hadgi Mahomet Babadir Cham* rejoiced at his Czarish Majesty's Success in War, and the Increase of his Power, and recommended himself to his Favour and Protection. Secondly, he desired the Czar to enjoin his Vassal the *Tartarian Can Ajuga*, to keep good Neighbourhood and Peace with him, he seeming inclined to join with the *Tartars* subject to *China*, and to stir up others of his Neighbours against him: For which the *Can* of *Usbeck* offered in Acknowledgement fifty Thousand Soldiers.

Soldiers to the Czar, who should always be ready to march upon his Command. Thirdly, for a farther Testimony of the *Can's* Friendship, he offered a Passage through his Dominions for the Czar's Yearly Caravans to *China*, and even proposed to enter into a Treaty of Commerce with *Russia*; by which an incredible Advantage was to accrue to his Czarish Majesty, considering the Caravans were at that Time obliged to make their Journey to *Peking* with great Inconvenience, and in a Year's Time, through the whole Extent of *Siberia*, following the Windings and Turnings of the Rivers, there being no beaten Road; whereas they might go thither through his Master's Dominions on a good Road in four Months. He afterwards laid many Silks, and other *Chinese* and *Persian* Goods, together with rare Furs, at the Czar's Feet, as a Present from his Master; telling him withal, that he left some *Persian* Horses and Beasts behind him at *Moscow*, and expressing his Concern that a fine Leopard and an Ape died on the Road.

In this Speech he never styled the Czar otherwise than the *wise Emperor*, which with these *Tartars* is the highest Title of Honour. The Ambassador's Name was *Atscherbi*, he was about fifty Years of Age, of a lively and venerable Aspect; he wore a long Beard; his Habit was according to the Fashion of the Eastern Nations, and on his Turbant he wore an Ostrich's Feather, which, as he said, only Princes and Lords of the first Rank were allowed to wear in his Country.

After the Audience, the Czar sent to him to go with the Great Chancellor, Count *Golofkin*, on board a Snow, and follow him to *Cronstet*, which he did the next Day at the Hour appointed, about Dinner Time, with seven Senators; the Weather was sultry, and they sailed with a gentle Breeze, till being got about two Leagues from *Petersburgh*, by the Unskilfulness of the *Russian* Captain, they got among the Flats, and the Snow in which the Ambassador

was, at length struck on the Sand. The Sailors worked till Seven in the Evening before they got off, and about Nine so violent a Storm arose as had not been known in those Parts for four Years: Their Condition was so much the worse, as their Captain and Mate, both *Russians*, had but very little Experience, and the Vessel they were in was both old and leaky. About Twelve at Night, all the Boats ty'd to the Vessel were beat to Pieces, and they lost their best Anchor, and with it all Courage, thinking then of nothing but Death. The Ambassador of *Usbeck*, who had never been on such a Sea before, turn'd pale, and at length wrapping himself up in a Silk Quilt, caused his Priest to sit down on his Knees before him, and read something out of a Book of the Prophet *Aly*, he being of the *Persian* Religion.

Towards Morning the Storm began to abate, and about Ten the Czar sent to enquire after the Welfare of his *Tartarian* Guest, for whom he had expressed, as the Messenger told him, a great Concern all Night; the Vessel was afterwards towed gently out of the Flats. And when it came to an Anchor, his Czarish Majesty, who was on Board the *Gatherine* with his whole Court, sent Orders for the Ambassador and the rest of his Company not to go on Shore, but to stay in their Vessel till he came to them. His Czarish Majesty congratulated him on his safe Arrival, and going into his Cabin continued with the Company above two Hours. The Ambassador of *Usbeck* caused divers Fruits of his Country to be served up, and sent for his Singers and Musicians to entertain him.

The Czar asked this Ambassador several Questions relating to his Country, of which he gave the following Account. That as to himself, he was his Master's first Servant, and had been his Governor; the *Can* was then upwards of twenty Years of Age, and was married the Year before to the King of *Persia's* eldest Daughter, with whom he had a rich Dowry; his Country was called *Usbeck*, and his Residence

Residence *Chiva*, which only consisted of Tents and Huts, and was never fixed on a certain Place; the *Can* was a Sovereign Prince, but his Authority was limited by a Sort of Senate; the Country bordered upon *China*, *Indostan*, and *Persia*, with which Nations they had hitherto lived in Amity; but their Wars had generally been with the neighbouring *Tartars* on this Side *Russia*; his Master was able to raise an Army of two hundred Thousand Men, all on Horseback; (which his Czarish Majesty judged to be understood of all his Subjects, reckoning old and young) they had no Cannon, till very lately they had took some from their Enemies, which, however, were neither of the same Size, nor gave such a Report as those of the *Russians*; the strangest of their Neighbours was the *Great Mogul*, on Account of his Government, and the odd Way of obtaining it; for when the reigning Emperor has several Sons, certain Governments are assign'd to each of them; but they give their Orders out of a Prison, to which they remain constantly confined during their Father's Life; but upon his Death, are set at Liberty, and every one of them gathering as many Forces as he can raise, fight among themselves till one overcomes the rest, who causes them to be put to Death, and butcher'd without Mercy: In this Manner the present Emperor came to the Throne, and had, at the Time of this Relation, five Sons himself. The Czar took this Opportunity of reasoning on Cruelty and Tyranny, and commended the *Turks* for having, for thirty or forty Years then past, changed their Maxims of State, as to that Point; to which he added something more in Praise of the great *Chinese* Empire, and then retired to his House.

About this Time, a Scheme or Draught of a Bridge was laid before the Czar, which some thought would be very convenient to be built over the *Neva* to join *Petersburgh* to the *Terra firma* of *Ingria*, from whence there was no Passage but by Boats with Oars; but his Majesty was so far from approving

this Project, that he forbade even the Use of Boats with Oars, and order'd, that for the Time to come, no one should cross the River but in Boats with Sails; this was the Occasion of many Boats being lost; it answer'd the Czar's End however, which was to oblige the indocile *Russians* to learn Navigation whether they would or no.

On the 23d of *July* this Year, the Imperial Princess, Consort of the Czarewitz, was brought to-bed of a Daughter, who was baptized by the Name of *Natalia*. The Czarewitz himself was at that Time at *Carlesbad*, whither he was gone on a pretended Indisposition, that he might be out of the Way at the Delivery of the amiable but too unfortunate Princess his Spouse, whose Melancholy the Czar and Czarina did all that was possible to alleviate, charmed with the Sweetness of her Temper, and the great Regard she always shewed to their Majesties.

His Czarish Majesty, whose Thoughts were continually bent upon the Glory and Welfare of his People, employed a great Part of his Time this Year in fortifying the Citadel of *Petersburgh*, in raising other publick Edifices, and in building Ships, about which he found Business for forty Thousand Hands; but as these Works were not carried on with so much Expedition as he desired, he forced the Peasants of *Finland*, and the *Swedish* Prisoners, to assist in them; six Thousand of the latter were brought from *Samara*, a Town on the *Volga*, where they had buried a great Part of their Comrades, employ'd in the unwholesome Mines of Sulphur. The Czarina *Catharine* was so much touched with Pity at the Sight of them, when they arrived at *Petersburgh*, that she ordered Winter Garments and Money to be distributed among them.

His Majesty gave Orders, that whoever built Houses at *Petersburgh* for the future, should make the Walls of Brick, and cover the Roofs with Tiles. He spared nothing to encourage able Artificers, from all Parts of *Europe*, to come and settle in his Domi-

Dominions ; and sent for that Purpose to his Agent in *France*, to procure the best Workmen, promising them, among other Advantages, to have their House-Rent free, and that they should be exempt from all Taxes for ten Years.

His Majesty engaged the Czarina, Dowager of the Czar *John*, to leave *Moscow* with the Princesses her Daughters, and come to reside in *Petersburgh*, into which City he introduced from divers Places near twelve Thousand Families.

At the Time of solemnizing the Feast of St. *Andrew* this Year, the Czarina appeared with the Collar of the new Order of St. *Catharine*, instituted by the Czar in Honour to her, who had taken the Name of that Saint on the Declaration of his Majesty's Marriage with her. She had full Power of bestowing it on such of her own Sex as she should think proper. The Ensigns of this Order are a broad white Ribbon, to which is fixed a Medal enriched with precious Stones, wore over the Right Shoulder; and adorned with the Image of St. *Catharine*, with this Motto, *Out of Love and Fidelity*: The Occasion of erecting this Order being to perpetuate the Memory of the *Love* and *Fidelity* of that Princess to his Majesty, in his distressful Condition on the Banks of the River *Pruth*. Her Majesty bestowed this Order in the Year 1725, on her eldest Daughter the Princess *Anne*, when she was married to the Duke of *Holslein*, and to her other Daughter, the Princess *Elizabeth*, the same Day ; and afterwards, in the Year 1726, she conferred it on the Duchess of *Mecklenbourg*, and her Sister the Duchess Dowager of *Courland*, the present Empress of *Russia*, and on the Princesses *Pascovia* and *Menzikoff*.

His Czarish Majesty having, with infinite Pains and Assiduity, been searching into the Causes of the Disorders that had crept into the Administration of his Affairs, and at length discover'd from whence it proceeded that his Army had been so ill paid, and suffered so much as it had ; that many Thousand Workmen had miserably perished ; his Trade decayed ;

decayed; and his Revenues were in Confusion; took a firm Resolution to remedy these Evils, and in the Beginning of the Year 1715, established a *Grand Inquisition*, under the Direction of General *Basil Dolgoruki*, to examine certain Lords and others, who it was said had defrauded his Majesty of some Millions.

Most of the Great Men in *Russia* were affected by the Enquiry that was now set on foot, and were obliged to give an Account of their Conduct. The Great Admiral *Apraxin*, Prince *Menzikoff*, M. *Korsakoff*, Vice-Governor of *Petersburgh*; M. *Kikin*, President, and M. *Sinawin*, first Commissioner of the Admiralty; General *Bruce*, Great Master of the Artillery; *Wolkenski* and *Apouchin*, Senators; with an incredible Number of other Officers of the second and third Rank, were called to Account. *Apraxin*, *Menzikoff*, and *Bruce* alledged for their Excuse, that they had seldom been at *Petersburgh*, but for the greatest Part of their Time in the Field or in foreign Parts, so that they had been so far from being able to find out the ill Practices of their unfaithful Servants, or to prevent them, that they were even unacquainted with what was done during that Time in their own Houses; which Excuse, partly on Account of its Probability, and partly in Favour of them, was allowed; with this Proviso however, that their Purves were to smart severely for their Defaults. The others, who could not justify their Conduct, underwent greater Punishments; *Korsakoff* publickly suffered the *Knout*; *Apouchin* and *Wolkonsky* were punished after the same Manner, and had besides red-hot Irons drawn over their Tongues; some of an inferior Degree were chastised with *Batoags*, and others sent into *Siberia*, and other remote Places, and had all their Estates confiscated. The Inquisition being ended, a proper Regulation was made to prevent the like Faults of Commissaries for the future, and to make the Burthen lie a great deal easier on the People. This

Discovery was a new Proof of the great Sagacity and admirable Genius of the Czar.

On the 3d of *January* his Majesty sent a *Russian* Lieutenant-Colonel to *Pillau* near *Königsberg* to conduct over the Snow in Sleds, by the Help of large Rollers, the great Globe of *Gottorp*, which was brought in that Manner to *Riga*, and from thence to *Petersburgh* by Sea: This Machine was made after a Design of *Tycho Brahe*; and was so large that twelve Persons could sit conveniently round a Table within Side of it to make celestial Observations, by turning it round. The Czar had seen this Curiosity at *Gottorp*, and was so wonderfully pleased with it; that he beg'd it of the King of *Denmark*, who was then Master of that City, and put himself to a great Expence in bringing it to *Petersburgh*, whole Forests being cut through to make Way for it. All useful Arts and Sciences were much encouraged by the Czar, and many Books were already produced by the Press; which he had ordered to be set up at *Moscow*, and these were such as he had given Directions for himself, among others he caus'd the Apophthegms of Great Men to be collected in three Volumes, together with short select Sentences, which, by their concise and lively Turn, he thought would be more proper to form the Manners of his People than formal and tedious Treatises of Morals.

Notwithstanding the King of *Sweden* was return'd to his Dominions, and the Czar had no longer any Troops in *Poland*; notwithstanding the *Porte* had ratify'd the last Treaty, and the Boundaries of the two Empires were settled, and the *Russian* Hostages sent Home with great Civility, yet the *Turks* and *Tartars* continued still in Arms; and his Czarish Majesty having been informed from good Hands, that the King of *Sweden*, before his Departure from *Bender*, had agreed to a new Project with the *Porte*, according to which those two Powers were to fall upon him at once, as soon as the *Swedish* Army was in a Condition to act, he took all necessary Precautions on this Account, and in the Distribution of his

his Troops, took care to have a considerable Body in the *Ukrain*, and on the frontier Provinces of the vagabond *Tartars*.

The King of *Sweden*'s Conduct towards the King of *Prussia*, from whom he would have exacted with a high Hand, the Restitution of *Stetin* and the rest of *Pomerania* which was under Sequestration, drew upon him new Enemies, and those were so many new Allies to the Czar, who agreed with them to make a Diversion in *Sweden*, while they carried on the Siege of *Stralsund*.

On the first News of the *Tartars* being in Motion, his Czarish Majesty sent fresh Troops into the *Ukrain*, to reinforce those that were already about the Fortresses of *Kiow*, *Czernikoff*, and *Pultowa*, which this Monarch had put in a Condition to cover all the Country. But the Alarm from this Side was groundless, the *Turks* having Designs elsewhere, and not against *Russia*.

About the same Time the *Donski Cossacks*, (who in the last Rupture with the *Porte* had revolted and joined with the *Tartars*) sent an Embassy to *Petersburgh* to make their Submission, and intreat his Pardon, which was readily granted by the Clemency of that Prince whose Beneficence extended to all Degrees of People, and who had had four unfortunate and persecuted Princes, Refugees at his Court at *Petersburgh* at one Time; viz. *Cantemir* the Hospodar of *Moldavia*; the two Sons of *Cantacuzeno*, late Hospodar of *Walachia*, strangled at *Constantinople*, who had married the younger Sister of the Hospodar of *Moldavia*, which Lady, after her Husband's untimely Death, had made her Escape out of Prison in *Turky* with her two Sons, one of whom was greatly beloved by the Czar for his extraordinary Merit, and made a Major-General in his Service, with an annual Pension of five Thousand Roubles; the fourth Prince was *Militetski*, who was divested of his Dominions in *Georgia* by the King of *Persia*, and died at *Moscow*; his only Son being General of the Artillery in the Czar's Army, was taken

taken Prisoner in the Battle of *Narva*, and died at *Stockholm*. The Czar had promised his Father to re-establish him in his Dominions by Force of Arms, as soon as the *Swedish* War was finished.

During the Time that Preparations were making for a Descent into *Sweden*, the Czar amused his People with one of those Spectacles which politick Princes make use of to take off the Attention of their Subjects from the Burthen of those Taxes which they are obliged to raise on such Emergencies as he was now to prepare for.

The Czar for very good Reasons had abolished the Patriarchal Dignity, or rather re-united it to the Crown; and to render the Character of the ancient Patriarch ridiculous, and make it despised by the People, he created one *Sotoff* his Jester, *Mock-Patriarch*. He had been his Majesty's Writing-Master in his younger Years, and at the Age of Seventy was advanced to be his Jester, then made *Mock-Patriarch*, and for the Humour's Sake was raised to the Dignity of a *Prince*, and at length declared *Pope*: Invested with these imaginary Characters, and being now in the Eighty-fourth Year of his Age, the Czar married him to a buxom Widow of Thirty-four, and the Nuptials of this extraordinary Couple were solemnized by the Court in Masks, or Mock Shew. The Company consisted of about four Hundred Persons of both Sexes. Every four Persons had their proper Dress and peculiar musical Instruments, so that they represented an Hundred different Sorts of Habits and Musick, particularly of the *Asiatick Nations*. The four Persons appointed to invite the Guests, were the greatest Stammerers that could be found in all *Russia*. Old decrepid Men who were not able to walk or stand, had been picked out to serve for Bridesmen, Stewards, and Waiters. There were four Running-Footmen, the most unweildy Fellows, who had been troubled with the Gout most of their Lifetime, and were so fat and bulky that they wanted others to lead them. The *Mock Czar* of *Moscow*, who repre-

represented King *David* in his Dress, instead of a Harp had a Lyre covered with a Bear-Skin to play upon. He being the Chief of the Company, was carried on a Sort of a Pageant placed on a Sled, to the four Corners of which were tyed as many Bears, which being prick'd with Goads by Fellows purposely appointed for it, made such a frightful Roaring as well suited the confused and horrible Din raised by the disagreeing Instruments of the rest of the Company. The Czar himself was dressed like a Boor of *Frizeland*, and skillfully beat a Drum, in Company with three Generals. In this Manner, Bells ringing every where, the ill-matched Couple were attended by the Masks to the Altar of the great Church, where they were joined in Matrimony by a Priest a Hundred Years old, who had lost his Eye-sight and Memory, to supply which Defect, a Pair of Spectacles were put on his Nose, two Candles held before his Eyes, and the Words sounded into his Ears which he was to pronounce. From Church the Procession went to the Czar's Palace, where the Diversions lasted some Days. Many strange Adventures and comical Accidents happened on their riding on Sleds through the Streets, too long to be related here. Thus much may suffice to shew that the Czar among all the heavy Cares of Government, knew how to set apart some Days for the Relaxation of his Mind, and how ingenious he was in the Contrivance of those Diversions.

The Armies being come into the Field in *Pomerania*, and his *Prussian* Majesty having likewise sent thither a large Body of Troops, he published a Manifesto concerning his taking in Sequestration *Swedish Pomerania*, and the March of his Army to prevent the imminent Danger that threatened his own Dominions and the *German* Empire, in which he set forth:

That he and the King his Father had by no Means been inclined to engage in the War in the North, but were desirous to observe a strict *Neutrality*, and pre-

preserve a perfect Friendship with all the contending Parties: But that after the King of Sweden's General, Count *Steinbock* and his Army were forced to surrender, and the Northern Allies had reduced *Bremen Verden*, and were going to march with their victorious Army from *Holstein* into *Swedish Pomerania*, he came into a Treaty with his Minister Count *Welling*, and the Duke Administrator of *Holstein*, that he would jointly with the Administrator garriſon the Towns of *Stetin* and *Wismar* under the Name of a *Conventional Sequeſtration* to ſecure them and the reſt of *Swedish Pomerania* from all Hoſtilities from the Northern Allies.

The Court of *Holſtein Gottorp* having propoſed this in the moſt preſſing and moving Manner to the King of *Pruſſia*, as what would be beſt for the common Cauſe, and particularly for the King of *Sweden*, he undertook it, on Condition that the Charge of the *Sequeſtration* ſhould be borne by the Revenues of the Province: But when the *Sequeſtration* was to be effected, and the *Pruſſian* and *Holſtein* Troops were to enter *Stetin* and *Wismar*, the Count *Meyerfeldt* Governor-General of the *Swedish Pomerania* would not agree to it, tho' earneſtly preſſed by the Prince Administrator and Count *Welling*.

The King of *Pruſſia* upon this declined concerning himſelf any farther with the Affair at that Time, not being willing to do the leaſt Thing that might be interpreted offering a Violence to the King of *Sweden*. Affairs being in this Poſture, the Northern Allies, and particularly the King of *Poland* and the Czar, purſued their former Reſolution to make themſelves Maſters of all the *Swedish Pomerania*, and marching thither accordingly with their Armies, they poſſeſſed themſelves of the Iſland of *Rugen*, laid Siege to *Stetin*, and as his *Pruſſian* Maſteſty would not lend him his heavy Artillery, they furniſhed themſelves from *Saxony* and the Town of *Stade*, and therewith attacked the Town of *Stetin* ſo vigorouſly that they forced the Garriſon to reſolve on a Surrender in a few Days, ſo that they capitulated.

capitulated with Prince *Menzikoff* who commanded the Siege.

Count *Meyerfeldt* came at last to perceive that it would be more for his Master's Interest to accept the *Sequestration* agreed to by Count *Welling*, than to suffer *Stetin* to fall into the Hands of the Czar and the King of *Poland*, and therefore joined his pressing Instances with those of the Court of *Holstein Gottorp*, that his *Prussian* Majesty would become a Mediator, and take the *Sequestration* upon himself.

The King of *Prussia* suffered himself to be persuaded to this, but two new Difficulties arose in the Affair. 1. That before the *Polish* and *Muscovite* Armies would evacuate the Country, or give over the Siege of *Stetin*, they demanded 800,000 Dollars in Money, as a Compensation for their Charge. 2. That the King of *Prussia* should engage himself by a solemn Treaty, to become Guarantee, that during the War in the North no *Swedish* Troops should march from *Pomerania* into *Poland* or *Saxony*; and the better to enable his *Prussian* Majesty to prevent this, that not only *Stetin* but the whole District from the River *Oder* to that of *Pene*, inclusive of *Wolgast*, should be put into his Possession, and that with his Army he should oppose the *Swedes*, if they attempted to march from *Poland* into *Pomerania* and *Saxony*. And on the other hand, the Czar and the King of *Poland* offered to oblige themselves, that during this War in the North their Troops should not again enter *Pomerania*, but look upon it as a neutral Country, and they required that the King of *Prussia* should be the Guarantee of this Treaty on both Sides.

His *Prussian* Majesty would have gladly declined entering into any Engagements with the Northern Allies upon these two Points, but that he found there was no Possibility to avoid complying with their Demands, without suffering *Stetin* to fall into their Hands, and all *Swedish Pomerania* to be utterly ruined. He therefore having conferred with the

the *Holstein* Minister upon these Incidents, did by his Consent agree to pay them 400,000 Rix-Dollars on the King of *Sweden's* Account.

Upon a Representation of this State of Affairs to Count *Welling*, he produced full Powers from the King of *Sweden*, and the *Sequestration* was also agreed to in the Name of the House of *Holstein* and with the General-Governor Count *Meyerfeldt*, by which *Stetin* was garrison'd with half *Holstein* and half *Prussian* Troops.

Upon his *Prussian* Majesty's acquainting the King of *Sweden* with this Agreement, he did not, in his first Answer to him, seem to shew any Dislike to his Proceedings. But after his Arrival at *Stralsund*, he declared in a very haughty Manner that he would make void by Force of Arms all that the King of *Prussia* had done with relation to the *Sequestration* of *Swedish Pomerania*.

The Landgrave of *Hessel-Cassel* offered his Mediation, and in an Interview with his *Prussian* Majesty, proposed to give Security for repaying him the 400,000 Rix-Dollars, (which the King of *Sweden* had refused to do) provided the *Prussians* did immediately evacuate *Stetin*, and admit of a *Hessian* Garrison. The Landgrave declaring at the same Time, that though the King of *Sweden* might perhaps leave *Saxony* in Repose, he would not be ty'd up from invading *Poland*; which being directly contrary to the Treaty betwixt the King of *Prussia* and the Northern Allies, for the Preservation of *Stetin* and *Swedish Pomerania*, and for continuing the Peace of the neighbouring Countries, as well as the whole Empire, the King of *Prussia* would not accept the Proposal, which was likewise openly protested against by the Ministers of the Czar and the King of *Poland*, who declared, that if it was accepted their Masters would again march into *Pomerania*.

During the Time of the Conferences between the King of *Prussia* and the Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*, the *French* King's Mediation was offered be-

twixt their *Prussian* and *Swedish* Majesties, which was accepted by his *Prussian* Majesty, but several Months passed without the least Effect from it, or the King of *Sweden*'s declaring himself upon the most equitable Demands of the King of *Prussia*; and though his *Prussian* Majesty, as a farther Proof of his sincere Desire to live in a good Friendship and Understanding with the Crown of *Sweden*, declared, that he had no Design in the least to keep *Stetin* for himself, and proposed to put that Town and *Pomerania* in the Emperor's Hands, by way of *Sequestration*, until such Time as the Matter should be accommodated; yet the King of *Sweden* rejected that Proposal, because, no doubt, he foresaw that the having an Imperial Garrison in *Stetin*, was inconsistent with his Designs; so that he persisted immoveably in his Resolution, that the *Sequestration* should be taken off, and *Stetin* forthwith restored to him, without repaying the 400,000 Rix-Dollars which the King of *Prussia* advanced for him, nor would he be diverted from his Design of invading *Poland* and *Saxony*, when he saw fit, that he might transfer the War thither, and attack those whom he called his FALSE FRIENDS.

With such Views the King of *Sweden* made all possible Preparations, and put his Fleet to Sea betimes, by which he alarmed the Sea Coasts of *Prussian Pomerania*; transported a considerable Number of Troops from *Sweden* to *Germany*; and that he might attack *Prussia* itself, used his Endeavours to procure Troops from the Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*, and other Princes of the Empire, so that 'tis plain by all Circumstances that the King of *Sweden*, instead of shewing any Gratitude to the King of *Prussia*, for what he had done for his Interest and Advantage, in delivering *Stetin* and *Swedish Pomerania* from the Northern Allies, had taken a firm Resolution to commit Hostilities, and make War against his *Prussian* Majesty, on Pretence of Revenge: And having made Preparations accordingly, he lost no Time, but in the Beginning of the Year

assidg'd by Force the *Prussian* Garrison from the Town of *Wolgast*, tho' included in the *Sequestration*, and thus made his first Step towards attacking his *Prussian* Majesty.

And though it had been easy for the King of *Prussia* to have repulsed the *Swedes* in such a Manner as that they should not have found their Account in this Act of Hostility, yet his *Prussian* Majesty was so far from giving any Handle for kindling a War, that he immediately sent an Officer to *Stralsund*, with a Representation against those Proceedings, and carried his Moderation and Love to Peace so far, notwithstanding these Affronts offered him in *February*, that at the Instance and Desire of the King of *France's* Minister, the Count de *Rottenburg*, he stay'd till *May*, without entering into any Measures with other Potentates against the King of *Sweden*, or committing the least Hostilities upon him, in hopes his *Swedish* Majesty would have made a positive Declaration before that Time, whether he would accommodate the Affair in a friendly Manner, or decide it by the Sword.

Yet that Time not only elapsed without the least Answer from the King of *Sweden*; but at the Close of *April*, his Majesty committed further Hostilities against his *Prussian* Majesty, and with some Thousands of Men attack'd the Isle of *Usedom*, which was comprehended in the *Sequestration* as well as *Wolgast*, block'd it up in a revengeful Manner, and hindring the *Prussians*, who were posted there, from receiving necessary Provisions, forced them to surrender, and drove them from thence. He likewise sent Capers and other armed Vessels into the River *Pene*, which block'd up the *Prussian* Garrison in *Stetin* by Sea, though that Town was included in the *Sequestration*, and thus having made himself Master of *Usedom*, he formed the like Design against the Island of *Wollin*, that he might open his Way into *Prussian Pomerania*, and afterwards into *Prussia* itself. To this End, he landed a considerable Number of *Swedish* Troops in the Jurisdiction of *Dantzick*, that they might join his Party in *Poland*; but his Design

sign miscarry'd, by the Defeat of the *Swedish* Squadron on the Coast of *Holstein*, and by the good Precautions which his *Prussian* Majesty had taken to secure the Island of *Wollin*.

The King of *Prussia* referred himself to all the impartial Potentates of *Europe*, whether he could in Honour and Conscience recede from his Engagements with the Northern Allies, for taking *Swedish Pomerania* into *Sequestration*, without exposing himself to their just Resentment, by breaking his Treaties with them, which were made for saving *Swedish Pomerania*, and preserving Peace in the Empire and neighbouring Countries. He likewise appealed, whether he ought to deliver up *Stetin* to the King of *Sweden*, and thereby open a Door for him to transfer the War into *Poland* and *Saxony*? Or rather, if he was not obliged, in the Sight of God and Man, to continue firm in his Engagements, and thereby prevent a new and destructive War in the Empire, in the Heart of his own Dominions, and in *Poland*, with which Republick his Majesty is entered into a perpetual Alliance? And whether from the King of *Sweden*'s Obstinacy, his rejecting all equitable Proposals made him, and his Hostilities against the King of *Prussia*, any thing else can be inferred, than that the King of *Sweden* had revengefully declared and made War against the King of *Prussia*; and that unless his *Prussian* Majesty would expose himself and his Dominions, by farther Delays and an unseasonable Moderation, to the Danger of being invaded, destroyed, and utterly laid waste by Fire and Sword, which the *Swedish* Armies have practised in other Countries, he was not under an unavoidable Necessity to apply a desperate Cure to this desperate Disease, and for this End, in God's Name, to make Use of that Power and Strength which he had given him?

His *Prussian* Majesty was also willing to refer himself to the Judgment of his Imperial Majesty, and the Determination of the Empire, whether in that whole Affair, he had not all along acted ac-

cording

tording to the Constitutions of the Empire, and particularly in Pursuance of those Ordinances for preserving the Peace, according to the Duty of a true Patriot, the respective Offices he bore in the Circles of Upper and Lower Saxony, and *Westphalia*, and exactly according to the Emperor's express Directions, to prevent the War the Crown of *Sweden* threaten'd by the well-known March of the *Crassavian* Troops against *Poland*, *Pomerania*, and the Empire.

It farther appears, that his *Prussian* Majesty did this on the Foot of the *Neutrality* agreed to by the Emperor and Empire, and that by his taking upon him the *Sequestration*, he secured the Peace of those Countries, of the whole Empire, and particularly of *Swedish Pomerania*, during the War in the North. His *Prussian* Majesty likewise appeals, whether the King of *Sweden* might not have promised himself strict Justice from the Emperor, with respect to *Bremen* and *Verden*, and have fully recover'd and preserv'd all his Dominions in the Empire, had he made Application to his Imperial Majesty, in such a Manner as is required by the Constitutions of the Empire, sent an Envoy to the Congress of *Brunswick*, appointed by his Imperial Majesty, and had he accepted the *Sequestration*, which instead of being in the least hurtful, would have been highly Advantageous to him.

He also referred it to the Judgment of his Imperial Majesty, and the Empire, whether it was not directly against the Constitutions of the Empire, and deserved the Punishment thereby appointed in such Cases, that the King of *Sweden* had rejected the *Sequestration* which his Ministers agreed to, by Virtue of his own full Powers, for his saving his Dominions in *Germany*, and had likewise refus'd to submit this Affair to the Imperial Decision; and much more, since he had kindled a new War in the Empire, and was resolved to decide the Matter by the Sword. The King of *Prussia* likewise appealed, whether he could have done otherwise than he did,
without

without an unanswerable Failure of his Duty, considering the Offices he bears in his Circles, and that he was indispensibly obliged in Conjunction with his Majesty of *Great-Britain*, and other Princes of *Lower-Saxony*, with those of *Upper-Saxony*, by Virtue of Correspondence with the Princes, Condirectors, and Estates of the *Westphalian Circle*, to oppose the King of *Sweden*'s kindling a War in the Empire, and earnestly to dissuade such States and Members of the Empire, who secretly favoured him, from countenancing that King, or joining him with any Troops in his Designs to break the Peace of the Empire.

His *Prussian* Majesty protested before God and the whole World, that he had nothing else in View but to preserve himself, his own Dominions, and the whole *Roman* Empire, his native Country, in which he had so great an Interest, against the turbulent, bloody, and cruel Designs of the King of *Sweden*, to ruin so many Millions of innocent People, and that his *Prussian* Majesty would in the Prosecution of that Affair, as he had before done, strictly keep to the Constitutions of the Empire, according to his Offices in the Circles, for the common Welfare, and the Accomplishment of the above-mentioned Treaties: And when Affairs were brought to such a State, that the Empire might have no more Trouble to fear from the King of *Sweden*, his *Prussian* Majesty would lay down his Arms, and submit the Decision of the Affair, together with the Satisfaction due to him from the King of *Sweden*, and what should be further necessary for a Pacification in the North to the Congress appointed by his Imperial Majesty at *Brunswick*, or to any other Treaties that might be set on Foot elsewhere for that End.

When his Czarish Majesty first received Advice of the Count *de Croissy*'s Arrival at *Berlin*, to offer the Mediation of the *French* King for reconciling the Differences between the Kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, he took that Opportunity to declare, that he would,

for

for his Part, not accept of the Mediation of any other for the Peace of the North, than the King of *Great-Britain* and the States-General; the first of whom seeing the common Danger to which all the Princes of *Lower-Saxony* were exposed, by having their Country made the Seat of the War, engaged as Elector of *Hanover* to take joint Measures with the Kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia* for the Security of the Peace of the Empire, and act against *Sweden*. This produced an Agreement between that Prince and the *Danes*, by Virtue of which, the latter made over to his *Britannick* Majesty, as Elector of *Hanover*, the Duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*.

The Northern Allies having sent their Forces into *Pomerania*, it was not doubted but the Czar when he put to Sea would join the *Danes*, that together they might make a Descent on the Island of *Rügen*; but continuing at *Revel* till the latter End of *June*, he steer'd his Course towards *Gotland*, with a Design to shut up the Passages from *Stockholm* to *Pomerania*, in which he succeeded: For the Army that was in *Finland*, or more properly in *East-Bothnia* and *Lapenia*, made a Shew of undertaking an Irruption into the North of *Sweden*, therefore the Troops about *Stockholm* not knowing against whom they had best to march, in that Uncertainty remain'd near the Capital, which facilitated the Course of the *Russians*. Towards the Middle of *September* the *Russian* Fleet sailed from the Island of *Gotland* to the Coasts of *Sundermania*, and landed fifteen thousand Foot Soldiers at *Fesel*, about eight Leagues from the *Swedish* Army, while a Body of Horse, from the Army in *Finland*, went round the *Bothnick* Gulph to penetrate into the Northern Provinces of *Sweden*, which put that Kingdom in a terrible Consternation.

Besides all this, his Czarish Majesty ordered General *Czeremetoff* to go with twelve or fifteen thousand Men into *Pomerania*, to strengthen the Army of the Allies, and not only put an End to the tedious Siege of *Stralsund*, but to take from the *Swedes* the

Town of *Wismar*, the only Place they had left on the *Baltick* Sea on the Side next *Germany*, and which the *Danes* and the *Hanoverians* kept blocked up. *Stralsund* surrendered at the latter End of *December*, and the King of *Sweden* himself, having a narrow Escape for his Life, got off in a small Bark, with ten Persons only, and landed at *Isled* in *Scandinavia*, and from thence went to *Carelscreon*, where he continued, altho' so near his Capital, all the Winter in ordering new Levies.

Prince *Galliczin* who commanded in *Finland*, obtained many Advantages also, for he surprized the Fortrefs of *Ula*, where he found twenty Pieces of Cannon, and a Quantity of Ammunition, and drove the *Swedish* Troops from thence, obliging them to pass the Torrents of *Kimi* and *Torno*: So that there remained in all the Grand Duchy of *Finland*, but three or four hundred *Swedes*, shut up in the Fortrefs of *Gajanebourg*, situated on an inaccessible Rock.

The Czar had ever since his return to *Petersburgh* given his utmost Attention to the Affairs of State, and the carrying on his Fortifications and Buildings in that City. He set up, at this Time, a new Academy under the Direction of the *Sieur de St. Hilaire*, a *Frenchman*, where Riding was taught; foreign Languages, Mathematicks, and all Things proper for the Education of Gentlemen. On the 22d of *October* he had the inexpressible Joy of seeing a Son born to the *Czarewitz*; but a great Damp was put to this Joy by the Death of the illustrious Princess who brought him into the World. The *Czarewitz* himself indeed shewed but little Concern on the Occasion, having on all Accounts expressed no manner of Regard for this virtuous and every way deserving Princess, who, with a Husband of so bruish a Temper, had been unhappy from the Day of her Marriage to this the Hour of her Death. The Reasons which induced the *Czarewitz* to marry have already been mentioned; but as Affection was not the Motive, after he brought his Consort into *Russia*,

Russia, he treated her without common Decency, they lived in Apartments at different Ends of the same House, and hardly saw each other once a Week, so that if the Czarewitz had not looked upon the begetting an Heir, as the Support of his own Safety they would perhaps have been altogether invisible to each other. He even neglected the Repair of the House to that Degree, that the Princess was exposed to the Injuries of the Weather in her very Bed-chamber, and if the Czar happened to expostulate with him on any Subject of that sort, he would load the Princess with Reproaches as if it was she who accused him to his Father, whereas she bore her Fate with an uncommon Resignation and Constancy, and had no other Witnesses of her Complaints and Tears, but the Princess of *East-Frizeland*, her Companion, and the Walls of her own Apartments.

The Czarewitz had taken a *Finlandish* Woman Captive into this House openly, and was continually in her Company from Morning to Night. This Treatment of the Princess, together with the Neglect of her Midwives in her Lying-in were the Occasions of her Death. Six Days after her Delivery, she was seized with so dangerous an Indisposition, that her Recovery was immediately despaired of; when she discovered that her End was approaching, she desired to see the Czar, for the Czarina was so near her Time that she could not go abroad. The Czar being indisposed at the same Time, was carried thither on a Machine rolling upon Wheels. Being arrived at the Princess's Apartment, she took leave of him in the most moving Expressions, and recommended her two Children, and her Servants to his Care and Protection; whereupon she embraced her two Children in the tenderest Manner imaginable, almost melting away in Tears, and delivered them away to the Czarewitz, who took them in his Arms, and carried them to his Apartments, but never returned afterwards. Then she sent for her Servants, who, to

the Number of two hundred Persons and upwards, lay prostrate on the Ground in the Anti-chamber, praying and calling to Heaven to assist their dying Mistress in her last Moments. She comforted them, gave them several Admonitions, and at last her Blessing, and then desired to be left alone with the Minister. The Physicians were endeavouring to persuade her to take some Medicines, but she flung the Phials behind the Bed, saying with some Emotion, *Do not torment me any more but let me die in quiet, for I will live no longer.* At length, on the 1st of November, having continued all that Day in fervent Devotion till eleven at Night, she departed an unfortunate Life, after having endured for the last five Days the most acute Pains, in the twenty-first Year of her Age, having been married four Years and six Days. Her Corpse was, according to her Desire, interred without being embalmed, in the great Church of the Fortrefs, whither it was carried on the 7th of November, with a Funeral Pomp becoming her Birth. Her Son *Peter Alexowitz* afterwards became Emperor of *Russia*, upon the Decease of the Empress *Catharine*, who reigned a short Time after her Husband *PETER the GREAT*.

The next Day after the Interment of the Princess, Consort of the Czarewitz, the Czarina *Catharine* was brought to Bed of a Prince, to the unspeakable Joy of the Czar; the Rejoicings ordered to be made on that Account lasted eight Days successively. On the 17th, the new-born Prince was baptized by the Name of *Peter Petrovitz*, the Kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia* being Godfathers. The Solemnities on this Account were attended with most extraordinary Pomp. What was the most curious was a Pye, served up at the Table of the Gentlemen, which being opened, a well-shaped Dwarf-Woman stepp'd out of it; being stark naked, except her Head-Dress, and some Ornaments of red Ribbons: She made a well-set Speech to the Company, filled some Glasses of Wine which she had in the Pye with her, and drank several Healths; after

after which, she was carried off the Table again. On the Ladies Table, a Man-Dwarf was served up in the same Manner. In the Dusk of the Evening the Company broke up, and went to the Island *Jennessari*, where a noble Fire-work was play'd off in Honour to the young Prince. There were several curious Devices on it, and on the Top of all a Motto in large *Russian* Characters: *Hope with Patience.*

On the 4th of *December*, the Czar received Advice of the taking of the Island of *Rugen*, and on the 9th gave a splendid Entertainment on that Account, where, among other Curiosities, were two hundred Melons, brought from *Astracan* by Water, which were distributed among the Company. His Majesty was pleased to tell them, that *Astracan* was so fruitful a Country, that it might be accounted a Paradise, if it had a Communication by Water with *Indostan*, *Persia*, and especially with the *Black-Sea*, by which it might impart its noble and cheap Produce to other Countries: That it was true, Commodities might be carried into *Persia* by the *Caspian Sea*, but there was no Possibility of carrying them farther up into that Kingdom by Water; and as to the intended Communication between *Astracan* and the *Black-Sea*, and so on to the *Mediterranean*, the same was not yet opened, because of the Difficulties and Obstructions attending the cutting of the Canal between the River *Wolga* and *Don*, which was attempted in the Year 1707.

In the Beginning of the Year 1716, the Czar being apprehensive that the *Tartars*, at the Instigation of the *Turks*, might intermeddle with the Affairs of *Poland*, and approach the Frontiers with their Swarms, sent Orders to General *Wiefsbach*, who during the Summer had his Station near *Kiew* at *Bagstaff*, and in the Autumn at *Starobud*, to march with six Regiments of Dragoons behind *Veronitz*, on the *Don*, to keep a watchful Eye on the Motions of the *Tartars*. The *Zaporozian* and other *Cossacks*

under the *Russian* Dominion, were likewise ordered to be in a Readiness to mount on the first Notice.

The Czarina Dowager *Marvea Matweefna*, Relict of the late Czar *Theodore Alexowitz*, PETER's eldest Brother, died at *Petersburgh* on the 14th of *January*. She was Sister to the Grand Admiral *Apraxin*, and in the 51st Year of her Age; but had been supposed dead by many People long before, because she lived but four Weeks in the State of Matrimony with her Consort, and upon his premature Death, in the Year 1682, had shut herself up in her own Apartments out of immoderate Grief, and was for seven Years together not to be seen by any Body but her own Servants. Her Corpse was carried with great Pomp to be interred in the Evening or Twilight. The Procession went from the House of Mourning to the Church in the Fortress, over the Ice, the Length of an *English* Mile, through a double Row of Flambeaus. The Privy Counsellor *Tolstoy* carried the Crown, which was richly set with precious Stones. The Coffin was carried on a Sled, as were likewise in Sleds two Hundred Mourners in long Robes, and three Hundred Persons more who attended the Corpse. The Funeral Ceremonies being performed, the Coffin was put into a new Vault made for the Czarish Family, where then lay one Prince and two Princesses, the Czar's Children. The whole *Russian* Clergy; the *Archireje* [Archbishop;] the Metropolitans; the *Archimandrites* [Abbots;] *Popes* [Priests;] Singers, and all other Churchmen, preceded the Corpse, dressed in their several magnificent Habits after the *Russian* Manner, with innumerable Tapers and Censers, during continual Singing; all which added very much to the Decency of the Procession.

The Custom which of old had obtained on the like Occasions, of immoderate weeping, making Lamentations, and loud Groans and Cries, the Czar would have entirely abolished, and Orders were given, before this Funeral, to abstain from any such Lamentations. The Generality of the common People

ple still held that superstitious Opinion, that the Soul of the Deceased haunted the Place where it left the Body, for six Weeks after, during which Time, the nearest Relations used to perfume the Bed, and have daily Mass said near it. When this Czarina died, there yet remained another Czarina Dowager, the Relict of the Czar *John Alexowitz*, half Brother also of PETER, whose Name was *Proscovia*, Mother of the present Empress of *Russia*.

The Czar, at this Time, received News of an Irruption which the *Cubanski Tartars*, commanded by the Son of the Cham, an Ally of the Grand Signior, had made into the Kingdom of *Casan*, and which was become almost an annual Custom with them. They were six Thousand strong, and in their March had made seven or eight Thousand Captives: Colonel *Schwartz*, a German by Birth, who had been eighteen Years in the Czar's Service, overtook them in their Retreat, at the Head of his Regiment composed of twelve Hundred Germans, taken from among the *Swedish* Prisoners. He was then about two Hundred and fifty Wersts from *Casan*, and these Maroders finding themselves obliged to fight or abandon the Slaves they had made, and all their Booty, had the Cruelty to place five Hundred *Russian* Women in their Front, whom they resolved to expose to the Enemies first Fire; but Colonel *Schwartz* would not fire upon them, but attacked the *Tartars* in Flank with Sword in Hand; he put them to flight, took many of them, and among them the commanding Cham's Son, whom he forthwith caused to be hanged on a Tree; he rescued the *Russian* Prisoners, and got fifteen Hundred of the Enemy's Horses, which with other Booty he distributed among his Men. The said *Schwartz* came to *Petersburgh*, to make Report of this Expedition, and afterwards returned with new Instructions.

The Affairs of *Poland* were now fallen into great Confusion, where a new Confederation was set on foot and headed by *Gurzynski*, Lieutenant of the

Palatine of *Sandomir* : The Confederates were resolved to hearken to no Accommodation till the *Saxon* Troops were dismissed. Several Great Men interposed to persuade them to lay down their Arms, and assured them, that the King would send away those Forces ; but they answered, that as the like Promises had been made them before, and never performed, they would not be deceived any more.

The two Parties fell upon one another, and many brave Men lost their Lives in the several Skirmishes and Battles they had together. The *Saxons* being very much weakened, were in great Danger of being cut to Pieces, which made King *Augustus* apply to his old Ally for Succour ; but his Czarish Majesty, for weighty Reasons, not thinking it proper at that Time to carry his Arms into *Poland*, endeavoured to reconcile the Confederates and their Sovereign by Mediation. *M. Daxow* and Prince *Dolgoruki* were charged with the Negotiation, which lasted a long Time, on Account of the Obstinacy of the Confederates, who did not lay down their Arms till the *Saxons* were sent out of the Kingdom.

Many important Affairs required the Czar's Presence in the *Lower-Saxony*, where the King of *Denmark* thought he had much Need of his Assistance and prudent Advice ; threatened as he was to see his Dominions made the Theatre of the Northern War, since the King of *Sweden*, driven entirely out of *Germany* by the Loss of *Stralsund* and *Rugen*, had repassed the *Baltick-Sea*.

End of the Fourth BOOK.



BOOK V.

The CONTENTS.

The Czar sets out for Germany. The Marriage of his Niece with the Duke of Mecklenbourg.. An Interview between the Czar and the King of Prussia. The Surrender of Wismar. An Interview between the Czar and the King of Denmark. The Czar commands the Fleets of four Nations. Lays aside his Design against Schonen. The Manifesto of the King of Denmark, with relation to the intended Descent in Schonen. The Project of Baron Gortz. The Czar arrives in Holland. The Affairs of Poland. A Discovery of the Intrigues of Baron Gortz and Count Gyllembourg. The Memorial of the Czar's Minister thereupon at the British Court. Answer to the same. The Czar arrives at Paris. Goes to the Spaw. Returns to Holland, and so by Dantzick to Peterburgh.

ON the 6th of February, both their Czarish Majesties set out for Germany: The Czarina chose always to be near her Husband, and especially at this Time, when he was not perfectly recovered from an Indisposition that obliged him for some Time to keep his Chamber. Their Majesties took the Route of Riga, where they arrived on the 12th. The Czar went immediately to visit the Works which he had ordered to be raised at Dunamunde, and some Russian Frigates that were at Anchor. From Riga the Court went on the 23d to Libaw, on the 25th to Memel, and

and on the 29th to *Dantzick*. Their Majesties continued in this City till the latter End of *April*; but it is not to be supposed that his Czarish Majesty spent all that Time in Idleness, or in trifling Diversions.

Having concluded the Marriage of his Niece the Princess *Catharine*, eldest Daughter of the Czar *John*, or *Iwan-Alexiewitz*, and the Czarina *Proscovia*, with Duke *Charles Leopold* of *Mecklenbourg Sverin*. His Majesty resolved to procure the Possession of *Wismar* for that Prince, for which Reason he sent about twelve Thousand *Russians* towards *Mecklenbourg*, to assist in taking that important Place from the *Swedes*. During the Time that he gave Orders for the March of these Troops, which were already in *Courland*, he received the agreeable News of the Surrender of *Cajanebourg*, the last Place that the *Swedes* held in *Finland*. The *Swedish* Commandant stipulated, that he should go out with his Garrison, which consisted of two Hundred and sixty Men; and that he should be escorted twelve Miles from thence, thinking he should be then out of Danger; but hearing afterwards on the Road, that there was a Body of *Russians* at above twenty-four Miles distance, on the Side of *Sweden*, into whose Hands he could not avoid falling, he chose rather to yield himself Prisoner to his Conqueror. In this Fortrefs were found twenty-five Pieces of Cannon, with Ammunition and Provisions for eighteen Months.

On the 19th of *April*, the Marriage of the Czarian Princess with the Duke of *Mecklenbourg* was celebrated at *Dantzick*, in the Presence of their Czarish Majesties, in their Chapel, by an Archimandrite of the *Russian Church*. The King of *Poland*, who was come to *Dantzick* to confer with the Czar upon the new Commotions in his Kingdom, went likewise to the Chapel on this Occasion, attended by a large Train of Coaches, in one of which was his Polish Majesty with General *Flemming*, and General *Wiczdum*; the Bishops of *Ermeland* and *Gulm*, with

with several Officers and other Persons of Distinction, followed in the rest. The Czar afterwards proceeded on Horseback; the Czarina and the Princess came afterwards, with a great Number of Ladies in Coaches. The Bride had an Imperial Crown on her Head, enrich'd with Diamonds; over her Vest, which was of Silver Brocade, she had a long Robe of Crimson Velvet, with a double Border of Ermine, the Train of which was supported by two Gentlemen. All this illustrious Company were magnificently entertained by Count *G. Ioskin*, the Grand Chancellor. The Feast was in common for the whole City, the Fountains ran with Wine, and a roasted Ox was given to the Populace.

On the 29th, the King of *Poland* gave a splendid Entertainment and Ball on Account of the Marriage and the Czar having assisted at it, the next Day, hearing that forty-five of his Gallies were arrived at *Koningsberg*, set out with all Expedition for that Place, to review them.

In *Koningsberg*, the Capital of *Prussia*, his Majesty found the famous *Persian* Ambassador, who had been in *France* for some Time before the Death of *Lewis XIV.* and gave Audience to him the 4th of *May*. On the 5th he embark'd on board the Imperial Galley, and returned to *Dantzick*, where he arrived on the 9th, with about thirty Gallies, he landed at the *Galantine* Point, and came into the City in the Afternoon.

During the Absence of his Czarish Majesty, the following Articles were delivered to the Magistrates of the City.

I. That all Commerce and Correspondence between the City and *Sweden* should be forbidden, and that a *Muscovite* Commissary should be allowed to reside near the *Mundre-Schantz*, to visit all the Ships.

II. That the City should furnish four Privateers of twelve Guns, and fifty Men each, to be maintained by them during the War.

III. That

III. That a *Muscovite* Officer should be allowed on board each of those Capers.

IV. That if the City would not fit out those Privateers, it was required that they should pay 200,000 Rix-Dollars in Specie.

V. And that in Case his Czarish Majesty did think fit to make any Transportation from *Dantzick* to *Copenhagen*, the City should be obliged to furnish two or three Ships.

The Czar insisted on the Acceptation of these Articles; and if the Magistrates refused, his Ministers signified, that he would declare against the City, and use them as Enemies; but the King of *Poland* having by his Mediation amicably adjusted the Difference, his Majesty caused his little Army, encamped near the Place, to break up, and sent back his Gallies. The *Dantzickers* were to pay 100,000 Rix-Dollars; to renounce all Commerce with *Sweden* during the War, and to maintain four Ships to be furnished by his *Polish* Majesty. His Czarish Majesty, on his Return to *Dantzick*, was saluted by one Hundred and fifty Pieces of Cannon, to let him see that they were in no want of Artillery. He set out the next Day for *Stolpe*, in his Way to *Sietin*, whither the King of *Prussia* came *incognito* to confer with him upon the Situation of the Affairs of the North, particularly on the Side of *Denmark*. These Princes took together those Measures which were afterwards put in Execution. They agreed in opposing the Progress of the King of *Sweden* into the Dominions of the *Danes*; but thought it not for the common Interest to assist *Denmark* in making Conquests on the *Swedes*, who were already weakened enough by the Loss of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*; insomuch that it was to be feared, that if they should push their Conquests any farther against the Crown, other Powers would arm in its Favour.

These Principles were the Foundation of all that was afterwards done in Concert between his Czarish Majesty

Majesty and the King of *Denmark*, the Steps that they took, to outward Appearance, were sufficient to embarrass the *Swedes* in the Execution of their Designs, but were to go no farther, whatever Hopes might be conceived by the *Danes*.

His Czarish Majesty went to visit *Stralsund*, and from thence passed into *Mecklenbourg*, where the Allies were pushing on the Siege of *Wismar* with great Vigour. His Majesty, with the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, had formed a Project, in respect to this Place, which has been hinted at before; which was to put the Duke in Possession of that Fortress, that the *Russians* might always have a Retreat for their Ships on that Side the *Baltick-Sea*. For this Purpose the Czar ordered a large Body of Troops to advance that Way, which at first consisted only of 12,000 Men, but was soon augmented to twenty-six Thousand. But this Army came too late, the Town having surrendered on the 14th of *April*, with Fort *Valvis*; and thus the fine Project fell to the Ground.

The Articles of the Capitulation of *Wismar* were as follow :

I. The Town of *Wismar*, with the Fort named *Valvis*, shall be surrendered to the Besiegers, who grant to the Garrison all usual Honours.

II. The Garrison shall march out of the Town twenty-four Hours after the Ratification of the King of *Denmark* is come; and as soon as they are pass'd the *Liege Port*, they shall lay down their Arms, and surrender themselves Prisoners of War. Except one Thousand Men of the *Swedish* Nation, with their Officers, viz. one Major-General, two Colonels, four Lieutenant-Colonels, five Majors, twenty-seven Captains, four Quarter-Masters, and forty-six Subalterns, who shall keep their Arms and Baggage to be transported to *Sweden*, with good Passports; and in the mean Time they shall be put into Quarters between *Dassau*, *Glus*, and *Obdach*, where they shall live at their own Expence.

III. They

III. They shall pay for the Carriage of their Baggage.

IV. The Sick shall be taken Care of in the Town till they be cured.

V. The Officers may leave their Goods and Baggage in the Town, for three Months after the Capitulation.

VI. The *Swedes*, in want of ready Money, shall give good Security.

VII. All that hath been taken, either by Sea or Land, during the Time of the Siege, shall not be reclaimed.

VIII. The Civil Officers may remain, if they will, in the Town, without being disturbed; but those who chuse to retire, may do it in three Months Time.

IX. All the Officers, Civil and Military, and the other Inhabitants of the Town, shall be permitted to enjoy their Goods, Lands, and Estates in *Bremen*, *Pomerania*, and *Rugen*, as long as they live peaceably, and do not take Arms against the Northern Allies.

X. All the Acts, Documents, and Papers shall be faithfully declared and delivered; and they shall remain in the Archive.

XI. The Mortgages and Alienations of Lands shall be referred to the Examination that shall be made of them hereafter.

XII. The Deserters shall be delivered up immediately after the Evacuation of the Town.

XIII. Those who are comprised in the Capitulation of *Tonningen*, and in the Council of War formerly held at *Rensburgh*, shall be exempt, and shall not be prosecuted for the Cause of Desertion.

XIV. None of those who by this Capitulation are to have their Liberty, shall be forced to take Service: Neither shall any of the Men be disturbed in their Quarters.

XV. No

XV. No Resentment shall be shewn against the Burghers, who performed Military Service during the Blockade of the Town.

XVI. The Ships and native Subjects of the Northern Allies, who have served in the Town, shall be treated in the same Manner as other Prisoners of War.

XVII. The Besieged shall give a faithful and exact List of all the Cannon, Mortars, and the Military Ammunition; and also of all other Effects, Boats, &c. and especially of the Mines.

XVIII. It shall be permitted to the Swedes to bring Victuals and Forage from *Lubeck* and other Places, at their own Expence; for which Purpose Passports shall be given them.

XIX. The Allies shall permit them to frieght Ships as well at *Wismar* as at *Lubeck*, and even to cause them to come from *Sweden* to *Cluseret* or *Tarnowitz*, under good Passports.

XX. All the Articles which concern the Town of *Wismar* shall be regulated as soon as the Regency is established there.

XXI. The Garrison shall be allowed to send immediately two Expresses to his *Swedish* Majesty, to make Report of what has passed, and to press the necessary Preparations for the Transport and Convoy of those that are to be set at Liberty.

XXII. The Hostages shall be set at Liberty as soon as the Capitulation is signed.

XXIII. The Volunteers are likewise declared free.

XXIV. Those of the Garrison who were disbanded at the Review last Year, but for want of Ships were obliged to remain here, shall likewise have free Passports.

XXV. And Passports shall also be given to those who have Part in the Capitulation, when their Term is expired.

Done at *Little Mecklenbourg*,
the 19th of *April*, 1716.

These

These Articles were punctually executed, and the Allies took Possession of *Wismar*, with the following Number of Troops, viz. two *Danish* Battalions, two *Prussian*, and two *Hanoverian*. The *Muscovites*, who arrived at the Camp some Days before the Place was surrender'd, pretended to have some of their Troops put in Garrison there; but this was refused by General *Deawitz*, as an unreasonable Pretension; and the *Russian* General having sent an Express to the Czar upon that Subject, his Majesty declared that he had given no Orders for such a Demand. However, he was so much chagrined on the Disappointment of his Design upon this Place, that from hence may be dated the Epoch of several memorable Events, especially the Misunderstanding that happened between him and the Court of *Hanover*.

While the Czar was consulting with the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, how they should make up the Loss of *Wismar*, the King of *Denmark* arrived at *Altena*, and the next Day the *Danish* and *Russian* Ministers notified to the Magistrates of *Hambourg*, that their Masters designing to have an Interview in the Gardens of *Ham* and *Horn*, they desired necessary Orders might be given for their Reception; whereupon the Council of the City met, and after some Debates, it was resolved, that the fine Pleasure-House and Gardens of Counsellor *Michael Wilkens*, with six or seven others adjoining, should be immediately prepared for the Reception of the King of *Denmark*, and that of the late *Octavio Beltgens*, with eight other Gardens near it, should be prepared for the Czar and his Retinue. Another House was also prepared for the King of *Prussia*, in case he should have come thither.

These Gardens being very near the Town of *Hambourg*, the Magistrates intreated the Princes who were to meet there, not to bring any Troops with them, and assured them, that they would provide what Guard they pleased to attend them; which Request being communicated to the Ministers

sters of *Denmark* and *Russia*, the King of *Denmark* set out from *Altena* on the 28th of *May*, and proceeded through the City of *Hambourg* in great State to the Garden prepared for him, where, understanding that the Czar was, much about the same Time, arrivèd at *Ham*, he paid him a Visit, and had a Conference with him alone, which lasted about two Hours; the next Morning the Czar made a Visit to his *Danish* Majesty, and had another long Conference with him. These two Monarchs continued together till the 4th of *June*, and agreed to make a Descent in *Schonen*, that they might oblige the King of *Sweden* to quit *Norway*, into which Country he was penetrated with an Army of 20,000 Men, and was advancing towards *Christiana*, the Capital of the Kingdom.

The Czar, who made a Shew of being one of the first in this Expedition, was to join his Fleet and Gallies with those of *Denmark*; and the Rendezvous for the Troops and Vessels was to be at *Copenhagen*, and about it. He left *Hambourg*, and crossing the *Elbe*, lay at *Harburgh*, and set out on the 5th for *Pyrmont*, through the Country of *Brunswick-Lunenburgh*. On the 30th of the same Month, he returned from *Pyrmont* to *Schwerin* in *Mecklenbourgh*, and on the 4th of *July*, their Czarish Majesties came to *Rostock*, where the forty-five Gallies were arrivèd, after having landed a Body of Troops in the Island of *Rugen*, where the Czar went to review them. The Galley of the Grand Admiral had five Hundred Men on board, that of the Admiral three Hundred and fifty, and five others had two Hundred and fifty each, they had each of them sixty Oars; the thirty-nine other Gallies were of the second Rate, and were mann'd with one Hundred and fifty Hands each. The Czar commanded the Gallies, and the Velt-Mareschal *Czeremetoff* had the Command of eight Thousand Men. Two other Bodies of Troops entered on the other Side into *Mecklenbourgh*, under the Command of Prince *Repnin* and General *Baur*. During their March the
King

King of *Denmark* spared no Pains to get together all the Transport Vessels he could, while every Thing necessary for the Descent was prepared on the other Side.

In the mean Time, the *Russian* Troops were in Motion on all Sides to advance toward *Jutland*. About the Middle of *July*, the Czar came with the Czarina to *Lubeck*: He commanded the Gallies himself, with which he arrived on the 17th in the Road of *Copenhagen*, where the Fleet was received by a Discharge of the Artillery from the Town, and the Guns of all the *Russian* and *Danish* Vessels. The King of *Denmark* having Advice that the Czar approached the Port, embarked on a Shallop with his chief Ministers, and came before that Monarch at Fort *Provestein*, then going on board the same Galley, they arrived together at the City, followed by the other Gallies. On the 23d the Czarina arrived also at the Capital of *Denmark*, where the Court and the City used their utmost Endeavours to shew them all manner of Diversions, while they waited for the Execution of the Grand Project, of which they promised themselves the greatest Success; and indeed, according to all Appearance, this Descent was likely to turn greatly to the Advantage of the Allies.

His Czarish Majesty, during his Stay in *Denmark*, which was near three Months, visited the Colleges, the Academies, and conversed with the Learned. He went out almost every Day in a Boat, coasting the two Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, measuring the Bays, and sounding the Depths, and laid down the whole so exactly on Charts, that the least Bank of Sand did not escape him. And he who was the first of all the *Russians* that had any Knowledge of the Sea, received the highest Mark of Honour from the most experienced Nations in Maritime Affairs, by having their united Fleets put under his Command. For at this Time, the *British* and *Dutch* Squadrons arriving in the Road of *Copenhagen*, with a great Number of Merchant-

chant-Ships designed for several Ports of the *Baltick*, this Monarch proposed to Admiral *Norris*, and Rear-Admiral *Grave*, to join the *Russian* and *Danish* Fleets with them, that they might together engage or drive the *Swedish* Fleet into Port.

Several Councils being held upon this, it was resolved to give the chief Command of the united Fleets to the Czar himself, so that the *British* Admiral Sir *John Norris*, should command the Vanguard, the Czar the Body of Battle, the *Danish* Admiral, Count *Guldenlew*, the Rear; and that the *Dutch* Commadore, *Grave*, with his Squadron, and five *British* Men of War, should proceed with the Trade of both Nations for their respective Harbours in the *Baltick*. According to this Resolution, the Czar hoisted, on the 16th of *August*, on board one of his finest Ships, his Imperial Flag, as Admiral, to signify that he had taken upon him the Command of the combined Fleet, and was thereupon immediately saluted by Sir *John Norris* with a Discharge of his Cannon, and having received the same Compliment from the *Danes* and *Dutch*, his Czarish Majesty gave a Signal to sail. The united Fleet was obliged to come to an Anchor in the *Kiøgerbocht* the 18th, from whence they sailed towards *Bornholm*, where being informed that the *Swedish* Fleet was returned to *Carelscoon*, to take in Provisions, the *British* and *Dutch* Merchant Ships, with their Convoy, separated, and proceeded on their respective Voyages for *Dantzick*, *Riga*, and other Ports; the Czar himself went to *Stralsund*, to cause his Forces quartered there to embark, and then returned to *Copenhagen*.

His Czarish Majesty declared that he had never more Satisfaction in all his Life, than when he was at the Head of these four united Fleets, which made so great a Figure at Sea: But this Declaration must be looked upon only as a Copy of his Countenance; for the Appearance of the *British* and *Dutch* Fleets could not be very agreeable to him, which prevented the Designs he had formed, it was thought, against

Denmark itself, after his Disappointment at *Wisnar*. On his Return, his Czarish Majesty and the King of *Denmark* held a Council of War, wherein the Dispositions for the great Enterprize of the Descent in *Schonen* were concerted, and the Troops ordered to be in Readiness to embark; but these Orders were on a sudden unexpectedly countermanded, and the Project, which had been so much talked of, and which was to reduce the King of *Sweden* to any Terms the Allies should think proper to impose upon him, was laid aside, after the vast Expence the *Danes* and *Muscovites* had been at for the Transportation of the Forces, and other Preparations; his Czarish Majesty was pleased to declare that he thought the Season too far spent, and that it would be better to defer it 'till the Spring; the Reason of this sudden Alteration will be seen hereafter. The Court of *Denmark* having in vain endeavoured to persuade him to execute what was so far advanced, thought proper to vindicate their own Conduct, by publishing a Manifesto to the following Effect:

‘ THERE being no Doubt but most Courts
 ‘ will be surprized that the Descent upon
 ‘ *Schonen* hath not been put in Execution, notwithstanding the great Preparations made for that
 ‘ Purpose, and that all his Czarish Majesty’s Troops
 ‘ who were in *Germany*, were transported to *Zeeland*
 ‘ not without great Trouble and Danger, partly
 ‘ by his own Gallies, and partly by his own *Danish*
 ‘ Majesty’s and other Vessels; and that the said
 ‘ Descent is deferred ‘till another Time; his *Danish*
 ‘ Majesty hath therefore, in order to clear himself
 ‘ of all Imputation and Reproach, both now and in
 ‘ future Times, thought fit most graciously to order
 ‘ the that following true Account of this Affair,
 ‘ should be given to all impartial Persons.
 ‘ Since the *Swedes* to the Honour of the Arms of
 ‘ the Allies, and for the Security of the Empire,
 ‘ were entirely driven out of their *German* Domi-
 ‘ nions, there was, according to all the Rules of
 ‘ Policy

Policy, and Reasons of War, no other Way left than vigorously to attack the still obstinate King of *Sweden* in the very Heart of his Country, thereby, with God's Assistance, to force him to a lasting, good, and advantageous Peace for the Allies. The King of *Denmark* and his Czarish Majesty were both of this Opinion, and did, in order to put so good a Design in Execution, agree upon an Interview, which at last (notwithstanding his *Danish* Majesty's Presence upon the Account of *Norway's* being invaded, was most necessary in his own Capital, and that the *Muscovite* Ambassador M. *Dolgoruki* had given quite other Assurances) was held at *Ham* and *Horn* near *Hambourg*, after his *Danish* Majesty had stay'd there six Weeks for the Czar. In this Conference it was, on the 3d of *June*, agreed between both their Majesties, after several Debates, that the Descent upon *Schonen* should positively be undertaken this Year, and every Thing relating to the forwarding the same was entirely consented to. Hereupon his *Danish* Majesty made all Haste for his Return to his Dominions, and gave Orders to work Day and Night to get his Fleet ready to put to Sea; the Transport Ships were also gathered from all Parts of his Dominions, both with inexpressible Charges, and great Prejudice to his Subjects Trade. Thus his Majesty (as the Czar himself upon his Arrival at *Copenhagen* owned) did his utmost to provide all Necessaries, and to forward the Descent, upon whose Success every Thing depended. It happened however, in the mean while, and before the Descent was agreed in the Conference at *Ham* and *Horn*, that his *Danish* Majesty was obliged to secure his invaded and much oppress'd Kingdom of *Norway*, by sending thither a considerable Squadron out of his Fleet, under the Command of Vice-Admiral *Gabel*; which Squadron could not be recalled before the Enemy had left that Kingdom, without endangering a great Part thereof; so that out of Necessity the said Vice-Admiral

Admiral was forc'd to tarry there 'till the 12th of *July*, when his *Danish* Majesty sent him express Orders to return with all possible Speed, Wind and Weather permitting; but this blowing for some Time contrary, his being detained, and the Loss of Time could not be attributed but to Providence, who commands the Winds and the Waves, and therefore the Blame thereof cannot be laid to his *Danish* Majesty.

The *Swedens* were all the while powerful at Sea; and his *Czarish* Majesty himself did not think it adviseable, that the Remainder of the *Danish* Fleet in Conjunction with the Men of War then at *Copenhagen*, should go to Convoy the *Russian* Troops from *Restock*, before the above-mentioned Squadron under Vice-Admiral *Gabel*, (whose speedy Return no Body wish'd more heartily for than his *Danish* Majesty) was arriv'd. This happening at last in the Month of *August*, the confederate Fleet put to Sea, and the transporting of the said Troops hither to *Zeeland* was put in Execution, though with a great deal of Trouble and Danger; but it took up so much Time, that the Descent could not be ready 'till *September* following. Now, when all these Preparations, as well for the Descent, as the imbarcking of the Armies, were entirely ready, his *Danish* Majesty assur'd himself that the Descent should be made within a few Days, at farthest by the 21st of *September*. The *Russian* Generals and Ministers first rais'd some Difficulties to those of *Denmark*; and afterwards, on the 17th of *September*, declar'd in an appointed Conference, that his *Czarish* Majesty, considering the present Situation of Affairs, was of Opinion that neither Forage nor Provision could be had in *Schonen*; that consequently the Descent was not adviseable to be attempted this Year, but ought to be put off 'till next Spring. It may easily be imagin'd how much his *Danish* Majesty was surpriz'd at this, especially seeing the Czar, if he had alter'd his Opinion as to this De-

sign so solemnly concerted, might have declar'd it sooner, and thereby sav'd his *Danish* Majesty several Tons of Gold, spent upon the necessary Preparations. His *Danish* Majesty did, however, in a Letter dated the 20th of *September*, amply represent to the Czar, that although the Season was very much advanc'd, the Descent might nevertheless easily be undertaken with such a superior Force, as to get a Footing in *Schenen*; where, being assur'd there had been a very plentiful Harvest, he did not doubt but Subsistence might be found; besides, that having an open Communication with his Countries, it might be easily transported from thence. His *Danish* Majesty alledg'd also several weighty Reasons why the Descent was either to be made this Year, or the Thoughts of making it next Spring be entirely laid aside. Nor did he alone make those moving Remonstrances to the Czar, but the Resident and Admiral of a certain Potentate seconded the same also in a most pressing Manner, and by express Order; endeavouring to bring the Czar into their Opinion, and to persuade him to go on with the Descent; but his Czarish Majesty declared by his Answer of the 12th of *September*, That he would adhere to the Resolutions he had once taken concerning this Delay of making the Descent; but if his *Danish* Majesty was resolv'd to venture on the Descent, that he then, according to the Treaty made near *Stralsund*, would assist him only with the fifteen Battalions and the Thousand Horse therein stipulated; that next Spring he would comply with every Thing else, and neither could nor would declare himself farther in this Affair. Since then his *Danish* Majesty could not, without running so great a Hazard, undertake so great a Work only with his own Army and the said fifteen Battalions, he desired in another Letter of the 23d of *September*, that his Czarish Majesty would be pleas'd to add thirteen Battalions more to the fifteen, and so assist him with twenty-eight Battalions

‘ Battalions of his Troops; in which Case his *Danish* Majesty would still this Year attempt the Descent: But even this could not be obtain’d from his Czarish Majesty, who absolutely refused it by his Ambassador on the 24th *ditto*. Whereupon his *Danish* Majesty, in his Letter on the 26th declar’d to the Czar, that since Things stood thus, he desir’d none of his Troops, but that they might all speedily be transported out of his Dominions; that so the Transports, whose Freight stood him in 40,000 Rix-Dollars *per* Month, might be discharged, and his Subjects eas’d of the intolerable Contributions they now underwent. This he could do no less than agree to, and accordingly all the *Russian* Troops immediately embark’d, in order to sail with the first favourable Wind.

‘ It must be left to Providence and Time to discover what may have induc’d the Czar to a Resolution so prejudicial to the Northern Alliance, and most advantageous to the common Enemy. It must in the mean Time be owned by the impartial World, that in Regard to the above-mentioned true Circumstances it was not his *Danish* Majesty’s Fault that the Descent was not made this Year, and thereby, if possible, the Way made to a good and speedy Peace; but that it hath been only prevented by the aforesaid his Czarish Majesty’s Resolutions: And it is therefore his *Danish* Majesty’s most gracious Pleasure, that his Resident, *Myn Heer Van Stöcken* shall, in case any Thing be mentioned contrary hereunto make use of this Account to contradict and refute all the bad Imputations which those Proceedings might perhaps occasion.

Written at the German Secretary’s Office at Copenhagen the 10th of October, 1716.

Although

Although this Manifesto charged the Czar with being the Cause of disappointing the projected Descent upon *Schonen*, he did not think fit, knowing his own secret Motives, to publish any Answer to it; but having caused all his Forces to re-imbark, they sailed on the 23d of *October* for *Meclenbourg*, and being arrived there, Orders were given for their March through *Pomerania* into *Poland*. On the 26th the Czar was nobly entertained at *Copenhagen*, and having taken Leave of the Court, set out with the Czarina the next Day for *Hamburg*. He passed the *Belt* on the 28th, and viewing *Tonningen* and *Frederickstat*, proceeded to *Lubeck*.

While the *Danes* and *Muscovites* were employed in making the necessary Preparations for putting their grand Project in Execution, the King of *Sweden* retired with his Forces out of *Norway*, in order to oppose his Enemies in *Schonen*. He quitted *Swinsund* on the 28th of *August*, and after having caused the Bridge to be broken down, and a small Fort to be thrown up at that Place to prevent the *Danes* from laying another, he left the Count *de la Gardi*, with four Battalions of Infantry, and about a Thousand Horse and Dragoons to command at that Pass. On the 12th of *September* he went to visit the Princess his Sister at *Wadstena*, and from thence the next Day arrived at *Lund* in *Schonen*, where he fixed his Head-Quarters, and whither all the Regiments that were to compose the *Swedish* Army were ordered; but he put himself in Motion again to return to *Norway*, upon the Design of making the Descent being laid aside, which, as it was reported, was brought about by a secret Intrigue of *Baron Gortz*, who was become chief Minister and Favourite of *Charles XII.* and who had projected a strange Revolution in the Affairs of *Europe*, which was to be accomplished by making Peace between his Master and *Peter Alexowitz*. The Plan was too flattering to the Ambition of those great Princes to be resisted by either of them; and *England*, *Poland*, *Denmark*, and *Prussia* were to feel the Effects of it.

There was no Likelihood of the Czar's making Peace with the King of *Sweden* without his yielding up to him many of those Provinces that he had conquered on the East and North of the *Baltick*; but *Gortz* persuaded the King of *Sweden* that he would have ample Amends made him for relinquishing those Places the Czar was already Master of, and himself in no Condition to retrieve, by having the Honour of re-placing *Stanislaus* on the Throne of *Poland*, by setting the Crown of *England* on the Head of the pretended King, the Son of *James II.* and by restoring the Duke of *Holslein* to that Duchy; besides, that being united with the Czar there was nothing they might not undertake.

The Czar on his Part had for some Time been secretly discontented with the Allies, who were all for preventing his having any Footing in *Germany*, and who would not so much as suffer any of the *Muscovite* Forces that were in *Mecklenbourg* to be at the Siege of *Wismar*, so much were they jealous of his Power; and this Discontent of the Czar was perhaps what prevented the utter Ruin of the King of *Sweden*, and was now likely to reconcile him to his most powerful Enemy, if Baron *Gortz's* Project had taken Effect. The first Step to which was by the Means of Doctor *Areskine* the Czar's Physician, to sound Prince *Menzikoff*, who was charmed with the Design, and soon brought the Czar into it, as was reported; but we shall see presently how desirous he was to clear himself of any such Imputation.

From *Lubeck* his Czarish Majesty went by *Schwerin* to *Havelberg*, where he had a private Interview with the King of *Prussia*, who came thither only with a few of his Ministers. These two Monarchs conferr'd together for two Days on the Affairs of *Poland*, and particularly concerning the City of *Elbing*, which the late King of *Prussia* had resigned for a considerable Sum, of which neither Principal nor Interest had been paid.

The Czar afterwards returned by the *Elb* to *Hambourg* and *Altena*, where he staid a Day longer than he at first intended, to put an End to an Affair that had given some Trouble to the City of *Hambourg*, which was this: A Person of Distinction among the *Cossacks*, Nephew to the famous *Mazeppa*, called Count *Wrynorowski*, being a little before arrived at *Hambourg*, was seiz'd at the Request of the *Muscovite* Minister, as a Subject of the Czar; but as he was engaged in the Service of the *Swedes*, they declar'd for him, and threatened the *Hambourghers* with the highest Resentment of the King of *Sweden*, if they deliver'd him up to the Czar, which was likewise forbid by the Emperor. All Persons concerned were highly embarrassed in this Affair, but it took a happy Turn for the *Hambourghers*, for the Count himself desired of the Magistrates, that he might be conducted to the Czar at *Altena*, in Hopes of obtaining his Pardon, and wrote a very submissive Letter to his Czarish Majesty, to pray him to grant him Audience. He was accordingly conducted under a Guard to *Altena*, where he was put into the Hands of the *Danes*, and guarded in his Lodgings: The next Day the Czar went to see him, before whom he fell on his Knees, kissed the Bottom of his Garment, and asked his Pardon, Life, and Liberty; his Majesty raised him, and said, *Fear Nothing, I have more Goodness towards you than you imagine; tell only all that you know.* His Majesty then caused his Sword to be returned to him, and he was sent to *Schwerin*, under a Guard of a hundred *Russian* Dragoons. This Count was brought very young into the *Swedish* Party by his Uncle, General *Mazeppa*, but came to *Hambourg* as soon as he could, to acknowledge his Fault, and ask Pardon, which he soon obtain'd, the Czarina having promised to intercede for him.

His Czarish Majesty had a Sword set with Diamonds presented him by the Magistrates of *Hambourg*, whom he assured of his Friendship, and then set out for *Amsterdam* in *Holland*, where he arrived

on the 17th of *December* in the Evening, being saluted by a Discharge of the Artillery, and the next Morning was attended by four Deputies, which the States of *Holland* had named to wait upon him during his Residence in that Province; where I shall leave him for some Time, to make his Observation, according to Custom, on all Things that might be useful to his People, and turn to the Affairs of *Poland*.

Prince *Dolgoruki*, who was the Mediator in the Name of the Czar between the *Poles* and the *Saxons*, at length engaged both Parties, after many sharp Encounters on each Side, to consent to a Treaty, and a Congress was accordingly appointed to be held at *Lublin*; but all that could be done there was to bring them to agree to an Armistice, which was soon violated, and this fruitless Congress transfer'd to *Warsaw*; and the Obstinacy of the Confederates gave them Room to fear there would be no more to be done here than at *Lublin*, the Czar ordered General *Ronne* to enter *Poland* with a Body of Troops to support that Party which was most inclined to Peace. The Arrival of these Troops was the Subject of great Complaints, and the Deputies of the Confederates declared, that they could not agree to dissolve the Confederacy, nor proceed farther in the Treaty 'till Prince *Dolgoruki* had sent Orders for them to withdraw out of the *Polish* Territories; but the Mediator answer'd, that the *Muscovite* Troops had marched into *Poland* in Pursuance of the Agreement made at *Dantzick*, that his Czarish Majesty should send his Troops into *Poland* to act against such as should disturb the publick Tranquility; that seeing the Confederates had chosen the Czar for Mediator, it did not belong to them to prescribe Laws to him; but that they ought to conform themselves to the Measures his Majesty thought most convenient for the Establishment of the publick Peace, which he advised them to conclude without farther Delay; promising that immediately after the Conclusion of it he would cause

the said Troops to retire, as he had already declared. The Confederates reply'd to this, that a Mediator ought not to make Use of Arms, but hear what the Parties at Variance had to say, and endeavour to reconcile them without Threats and Menaces: But they were given to understand that though what they alledg'd might be true between private Men, that Princes in Arms followed other Maxims. This occasioned a warm Debate, and in the Conclusion Prince *Dolgoruki* declared in plain Terms, that the Troops of his Master should not withdraw out of the *Polish* Territories before the Treaty was actually signed. Upon this the Deputies having consulted among themselves, declared that they would proceed no farther in the Treaty 'till Prince *Dolgoruki* had put into their Hands an Order for the Retreat of the *Muscovites*; and so the Conferences broke up. After which the Deputies apply'd themselves to the Pope's Nuncio and the Imperial Ambassador, to desire the King to insist on the Retreat of the *Muscovites*.

The King's Plenipotentiaries accordingly desired the Mediator to order the Retreat of those Troops, if it was in his Power; and sent to acquaint the Deputies of the Confederates, that they approved their Instances in that Particular; but that the surest Way to obtain it, was forthwith to conclude a Peace. The Deputies having maturely weighed this Matter, the Palatine of *Podolia* was desired to return for Answer, that they requested a Conference might be held the following Day; which being granted, this Article was then again warmly debated, and though some of the Deputies could not at first be prevail'd on to desist from their former Demand, yet it was at length agreed to, the Deputies contenting themselves with a Declaration sign'd by the Mediator, importing, that the King's Plenipotentiaries engag'd, that his Majesty should use his Endeavours with the Czar for the Retreat of his Forces immediately after the Conclusion of the Peace. Then the Mediator read the Project for the Suspension

sion of Arms; but that not being agreed to, the King once more declar'd, that he would forthwith set out for the Army. This alarmed the Confederates, who desir'd that the Conferences might begin early the next Morning, to endeavour to adjust that Affair; which being agreed to, the Article for a longer Suspension of Arms was sign'd by the Bishop of *Cujavia* on the Part of the King, and by the Deputies of the Confederacy. Count *Fleming* refus'd to sign it at that Time, because no Provision was made in it for the Subsistence of the *Saxon* Troops while they were to continue in *Poland*; but in another Conference on the 10th, some Alterations having been made in this Article, Count *Fleming* sign'd it, and the next Day sent Orders to the *Saxon* Troops to publish the Prolongation of the Suspension of Arms, and observe it themselves, upon Pain of incurring his Majesty's Displeasure; and the Deputies engaged that the Marshals of the Confederates should cause to be published the like Suspension, and forbid all Manner of Hostilities against the *Saxons*.

The other chief Articles agreed on in the following Conferences were, That the King might, if he pleas'd, be out of the Kingdom three Months in the Year: That the *Saxon* Ministers should not concern themselves with the Affairs of *Poland*: That the King might keep a *Saxon* Guard; but they were not to exceed the Number of 1200 Men, and were to be maintain'd at the King's own Charge: That the Commanders of them should take an Oath of Fidelity to the King and the Republick: That no foreign Troops should be brought into the Kingdom upon any Pretence whatsoever; nor should these 1200 be augmented by any new Levies; together with some other Articles of less Moment. So that the Kingdom of *Poland*, whose Affairs had been in the utmost Confusion for many Years, had now a fair Prospect of seeing better Days, unless some unforeseen Accident disturb'd the Tranquility

Tranquility they hope to enjoy by Means of this Treaty of Pacification.

There were, at this Time, in *Poland* thirty thousand *Russians*, under the Command of General *Ronne*; and General *Baur* had brought five or six thousand more out of *Lower Saxony*, for whom he exacted Quarters in *Polish Prussia* and *Great Poland*. And his Czarish Majesty did not think proper to recall them immediately lest the Confederates should take up Arms again. Let us now return to *Holland*, where we left the *Russian* Monarch, who had set Prince *Menzikoff* at the Head of the Regency, that were to govern his vast Empire, in his Absence.

Whilst the Czar expected his Consort at *Amsterdam*, a Courier brought him the News, that at that Instant, when she was preparing to set out from *Wesel*, she was delivered of a Prince, which was on the 13th of *January*, the States-General were desired by his Majesty to stand Godfathers, but the Child died the same Day it was born. His Majesty passed his Time at *Amsterdam*, and the Places about it, in making, as he was always wont, judicious Remarks on all Things relating to Commerce and Navigation; he visited the Ship-Carpenters Yards, the Storehouses of the *East-India* Company, and those of the Admiralty and principal Merchants. He view'd the Country Seats about, and saw again with Pleasure the little Cottage where he had lodg'd at *Sardam*, in his first Journey to *Holland*, and found it now honoured with the Name of the *Prinsbuis*, or the House of the Prince.

The Czarina arrived at *Amsterdam* on the 10th of *February*, and was received and complimented in the same Manner as the Czar had been; on the 9th of *March* following, their Majesties went to the *Hague*, and being at the House of Prince *Kurakin*, were complimented by the Deputies of the States of *Holland*, who were at that Time assembled, and by a Deputation extraordinary from the States-General. Their Majesties continued at the *Hague* till the 4th.

of *April*, during which Time a Discovery was made in *England* of some Intrigues of *Baron Gortz* and *Count Gyllembourg*, which tended to excite a Rebellion in *Great-Britain* to introduce the Pretender there, *Count Gyllembourg*, who was cloathed with the Character of Envoy-Extraordinary, was put under an Arrest in *London*, and all his Papers seized. The States-General arrested *Baron Gortz*, and young *Gyllembourg* in *Holland*, at the Request of the King of *Great-Britain*; all the Letters found among their Papers were immediately publish'd, by which it appear'd that a Design had been carried on to raise a Rebellion, which was to be put in Execution in the Month of *March*, and that the King of *Sweden* was to make a Descent in *England* with 10,000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, a sufficient Train of Artillery, and Arms for 10 or 12,000 Men more.

Some of the Letters of these Ministers intimated, especially of young *Gyllembourg*, wrote from the *Hague* on the 17th of *November* 1716, not that the Czar had any Share as yet in the Plot, but that they were in Hopes of bringing him into it. This gave Occasion to accuse his Czarish Majesty of having been consulted in forming this Project; there were likewise some Passages relating to *Dr. Areskine* the Czar's Physician beforementioned, his Majesty therefore on the 12th of *March* caused *M. Wesselowski*, Secretary of the Embassy, to present the following Memorial to *Mr. Stanhope*, to be laid before the King of *Great-Britain*.

S I R,

AS soon as his Czarish Majesty, my Master, received the agreeable News of the happy Discovery of the Conspiracy which the *Swedish* Ministers had carry'd on against your Majesty and Government, to excite among your Subjects a Rebellion that was to be supported by *Swedish* Troops: His Majesty immediately commanded me to congratulate, in his Majesty's Name, with your

‘ your Majesty, upon this happy Discovery; and
‘ to testify to you the Share his Majesty takes in
‘ this happy Event, and how sensibly he is affected
‘ with every Thing that tends to the Advantage of
‘ your Majesty, and your Royal Family. These
‘ Commands I have executed with all possible Speed
‘ and Respect : But his Czarish Majesty was no less
‘ concern’d than surpriz’d to see by the Letters that
‘ pass’d between the *Swedish* Ministers about this
‘ Conspiracy, and which, by your Majesty’s Order,
‘ have been publish’d and communicated to me,
‘ that the Artifice and Malice of his Enemies have
‘ been carry’d so far as to dare to endeavour, against
‘ all likelihood, to make his Czarish Majesty, my
‘ Master, in some Measure, a Party concern’d to that
‘ wicked Attempt ; and, against their Conscience to
‘ impute to him Sentiments equally inconsistent with
‘ his Majesty’s Honour and Reputation, with his
‘ own Interests, and with the Tenor of his Con-
‘ duct ; all which demonstrate, that it is not possible
‘ for his Majesty ever to be capable of harbouring
‘ such Thoughts.

‘ His Majesty’s Surprise, in that Respect, was
‘ the greater, in that his Enemies, to give some
‘ Colour to their malicious Insinuations, have been
‘ so daring, as to mention in their Letters, that
‘ Mr. *Areskine*, Physician to the Czar my Master,
‘ had held a Correspondence with the Earl of *Mar*,
‘ and had suggested to him, that his Czarish Ma-
‘ jesty is sensible of the just Cause of the Pretender,
‘ and that he wishes for nothing more than a Con-
‘ juncture, in which he may be able to restore him
‘ to his Dominions ; with other odious Expressions :
‘ Although his Czarish Majesty, considering his said
‘ Physician’s good Behaviour for the Space of
‘ thirteen Years, during which, he has been in his
‘ Service, cannot believe that he can have forgot-
‘ himself so far, as, without any Order, to enter
‘ into so criminal a Correspondence, the rather,
‘ because his Majesty never admits him to his Coun-
‘ cils, on Matters of State, but only employs him

‘ in the Way of his Profession. Much less can his
‘ Majesty believe, that he has been so daring as to
‘ abuse his Name in an Affair of such a Nature, and
‘ to father such base Things upon him, to the
‘ Hazard of his Life and Fortune. For, as soon as
‘ the Czar, my Master, was inform’d, That some
‘ Relations of his said Physician had been engaged
‘ in the late Rebellion against your Majesty, he did
‘ immediately forbid him to hold any Correspondence
‘ with them, not only about Matters of Moment,
‘ but even concerning their Family Affairs. Nevertheless
‘ his Czarish Majesty did not fail, with eager Zeal,
‘ to examine him about it, as soon as he receiv’d
‘ the News of it; but he protested that he was
‘ entirely innocent of this whole Plot; the rather,
‘ because he never received Orders from his Czarish
‘ Majesty to enter into such Affairs, or to hold
‘ so dangerous a Correspondence, which might
‘ tend to the Prejudice of his Majesty’s Interests,
‘ and to the Interruption of the good Harmony
‘ establish’d between his Czarish Majesty and your
‘ Majesty; and he afterwards declar’d, upon Oath,
‘ and on the Forfeiture of his Life, that he never
‘ wrote such Letters, either to the Earl of *Mar*, or
‘ any other; and he is confident, that no Man can
‘ prove any such thing against him, and that no
‘ such Letters of his can be found any where; and
‘ in case any should, he voluntarily submits himself
‘ to the most rigorous Punishment. As for the rest,
‘ this Affair is of such a Nature, that whoever will
‘ consider it without Prejudice, will easily acknowledge,
‘ and clearly see the Artifice and Falsity that
‘ lurks under it. For it evidently appears by the
‘ Czar my Master’s past Conduct, and by the repeated
‘ Proofs he has given, on all Occasions, of his good
‘ Intentions for the Interest of your Majesty, and
‘ of all your Royal Family, both from the first
‘ Establishment of the Friendship between his Czarish
‘ Majesty and your Majesty, even when your Majesty
‘ was but one of the Electors of the Empire, and since
‘ your happy Accession to the
British

British Throne. All these, I say, evince how far his Czarish Majesty is from the Thoughts which his Enemies have dared to impute to him in their said Letters, in so false and injurious a Manner. Your Majesty may well remember, as well as all *Europe*, with what Joy the Czar, my Master, receiv'd the News of your Advancement to the Throne of *Great-Britain*; and what Advantages he caus'd to be propos'd to your Majesty by his Ministers, towards a stricter Union with your Majesty. And besides, the Application with which his Czarish Majesty has ever endeavour'd to preserve your Majesty's Friendship, sufficiently shews the Regard he had for you; and that he never did, nor ever will make any Step that may occasion any Alteration or Coldness. Therefore it is easy to see, that his Czarish Majesty could never have the Thought of favouring the Pretender, or to enter with him directly or indirectly into any Measures to your Majesty's Prejudice; much less still, to favour the Design of the King of *Sweden*, his principal and perpetual Enemy, to advance the said Pretender to the Throne of *Great-Britain*. Can such a Design be consistent with his Czarish Majesty's Interests? Would he not on the contrary have easily perceiv'd the pernicious Consequences of it? For if the said Pretender should come to that Crown, he would not fail, out of Gratitude, to assist the King of *Sweden* against the Czar my Master. His Majesty has already shewn how far he is from any such Thoughts, when not only the last Year, he offer'd to be Guaranty of the Succession to the Crown of *Great-Britain*, in the House of *Hanover*, as it is now settled, but also towards the End of the said Year, and in the Beginning of this present, he offer'd to enter into a Treaty with your Majesty upon the same Foot, and had expressly command'd his Ministers as well at *Hanover* as at the *Hague*, to prosecute that Negotiation; nor is it his Czarish Majesty's Fault, that the said Negotiation was

not

not brought to a happy Conclusion, although his
 Czarish Majesty has of late observed divers Counter-Steps which your Majesty's Ministers have
 taken in several foreign Courts, particularly at the
 Court of his Imperial Majesty, as well as those of the
 Kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia*, as also at the Diet
 of *Ratisben*, without any Occasion given on his
 Side. And tho' his Czarish Majesty had sufficient
 Reasons to take Precautions and provide for his
 private Security upon the Report that has been
 spread, and the Information he received from several
 Parts, that your Majesty was treating of a
 particular Peace with the King of *Sweden*, promising
 even Assistance against his Czarish Majesty upon
 his yielding the Duchy of *Bremen*, as appears clearly
 enough, even from the Letters of his *Swedish*
 Ministers, that have been published, nor was, perhaps,
 that Report, at that Time already groundless. But
 however, it made no Manner of Impression upon
 his Majesty's Mind, nor gave him the least Thought
 of a particular Peace. On the contrary, he has not
 only caus'd all the Proposals that have been made
 to him from any Side, to be faithfully communicated
 to your Majesty and your Allies, but has also lately
 endeavoured by sending to your Majesty his Privy
 Counsellor, the *Sieur Telskey*, to remove all Occasion
 of Distrust, which some ill-grounded Insinuations
 might have occasioned, and to re-establish the
 ancient good Harmony, and at the same time concert
 with your Majesty the necessary Measures for the
 vigorous Prosecution of the War against the
 common Enemy, in order to procure a firm and
 advantageous Peace to all the Northern Allies in
 general; and to conclude thereupon, either a formal
 Treaty, or a Concert, towards which his Czarish
 Majesty shew'd all imaginable Disposition; but the
 said Negotiations having been broken against all
 Expectation, and for Reason of small Importance,
 on your Majesty's Part. And even Access to your
 Person having been deny'd to his Czarish

‘ Czarish Majesty’s Ministers, he might, with
‘ more Reason, have given Credit to the Insinua-
‘ tions that were made to him, and have taken his
‘ Measures accordingly : But his Czarish Majesty
‘ has seen all this with a great deal of Patience, as
‘ also the other Steps that have been made to his
‘ Prejudice, contrary to the Obligations of Friend-
‘ ship and Alliances as well at *Copenhagen* as in the
‘ Empire ; which Steps were not many Removes
‘ from an open Rupture. Notwithstanding all this,
‘ his Czarish Majesty still offers to renew a good
‘ Friendship with his Majesty. And as your Ma-
‘ jesty as well as your Ministers, know very well
‘ the Truth of all that is above represented, so on
‘ the other hand, it is certain, as every one may
‘ easily imagine, that all those malicious Insinuations
‘ have been spread, and perhaps written by the
‘ Enemy, in all Appearance, with an Intention to
‘ encourage the *English* Faction, who have entered
‘ into their pernicious Design ; and, by such Re-
‘ ports, to create a Distrust between the Czar my
‘ Master and your Majesty. It is farther evident,
‘ that this obstinate Enemy, in the weak Condition
‘ to which he is reduc’d, runs all Hazards, and on-
‘ ly studies to disunite the *Northern Allies* by his
‘ Intrigues and artful Insinuations, and would fain
‘ improve the Misunderstanding he endeavours, by
‘ any Means, to create amongst them, thereby in
‘ some Measure to retrieve his broken Affairs.
‘ Therefore his Czarish Majesty could not but be
‘ very much concern’d at your Majesty’s causing to
‘ be printed in the said Letters of the *Swedish* Mi-
‘ nisters, the malicious Insinuations of his Ene-
‘ mies, which wound the Honour and Reputation
‘ of his Czarish Majesty, without either a previous
‘ Communication of the same, or demanding an
‘ Explanation of those Passages ; which, neverthe-
‘ less, should have been done, as well by Virtue of
‘ the good Intelligence established between the Czar
‘ my Master and your Majesty, as of the recipro-
‘ cal Obligations of one Ally to another. His Cza-
‘ rish

‘ rish Majesty, however, can entertain no other
‘ Thoughts about it, than that some ill-minded
‘ Persons have endeavoured to take Advantage of
‘ this Occasion, to render himself and his Conduct
‘ obnoxious both to your Majesty and other Potentates, and to break off the good Harmony which
‘ has hitherto subsisted, to the mutual Advantage
‘ of the *Russian* and *British* Nations, as also to hinder for the future a stricter Union between them,
‘ to which his Czarish Majesty is ready to give his
‘ Consent. But in order to remove all the sinister
‘ Impressions which those malicious Insinuations
‘ may have made on the Mind of your Majesty and
‘ of the whole World, and to shew how far his
‘ Czarish Majesty is from having any Share in the
‘ horrid Attempt of your Enemies, his Majesty has
‘ most graciously commanded the under-written
‘ Secretary of the Embassy, solemnly to protest, in
‘ his Name, against all those false Insinuations, as
‘ he most expressly does by this present Memorial,
‘ declaring on the Part of his Czarish Majesty,
‘ That his Majesty looks upon the said false Insinuations spread by the Enemy, as Calumnies truly
‘ base and ignominious; and, as such, reserves to
‘ himself to shew his Resentment against the Authors of them. Moreover, his Czarish Majesty
‘ would be glad, if, contrary to all Expectation,
‘ any Thing could be discover’d whereby his Physician *Areskine* might be convicted of having held a
‘ Correspondence so injurious and prejudicial to
‘ his Czarish Majesty, and that the whole were
‘ communicated to him, that he might clearly shew
‘ to the whole World, by the Resentment he would
‘ express of it, that his Czarish Majesty never gave
‘ any Order about it, nor ever had the Thought
‘ of having the least Share in so base and so detestable an Attempt.

‘ The under-written Secretary of the Embassy
‘ has the Honour, in the Name of his Czarish
‘ Majesty, his Master, to assure your Majesty in
‘ the strongest Manner, That as his Majesty never
‘ had

‘ had any other Intention, than to continue in good
 ‘ Intelligence and Friendship with your Majesty,
 ‘ and to cultivate it more and more with all ima-
 ‘ ginable Care, so his Czarish Majesty will ever
 ‘ persevere in these Sentiments, being ready in the
 ‘ present Juncture, to enter with your Majesty as
 ‘ King of *Great-Britain*, into all the necessary and
 ‘ fitting Engagements for the Good and Security of
 ‘ both Powers; and to testify the Regard his Cza-
 ‘ rish Majesty has for your Majesty’s Person, and
 ‘ the Consideration he entertains for the *British* Na-
 ‘ tion, who, Time out of Mind, have maintain’d
 ‘ with his Predecessors, a good Correspondence,
 ‘ Amity, and Commerce. Moreover, to give fresh
 ‘ Instances of it, his Czarish Majesty is inclin’d to
 ‘ grant them such Advantages for their Trade, and
 ‘ in other Respects, as may reasonably be expected
 ‘ from a good Friend and Ally; and his Czarish
 ‘ Majesty will contribute, as far as lies in his
 ‘ Power, to the bringing at last to Reason, and to
 ‘ a firm and lasting Peace, that implacable and
 ‘ dangerous common Enemy, and towards establish-
 ‘ ing the Freedom and Security of Trade, to the
 ‘ Advantage of both Nations.

‘ The under-written Secretary of the Embassy
 ‘ is commanded to demand an Explication of these
 ‘ Matters, and also your Majesty’s Resolution on
 ‘ the Contents of this Memorial; and he hopes that
 ‘ by the Sincerity of his Czarish Majesty’s Proceed-
 ‘ ings, not only your Majesty, but likewise the
 ‘ whole World, will be convinced of the Upright-
 ‘ ness of his Intentions, and of his unblemish’d
 ‘ Conduct, and that all the artful Insinuations that
 ‘ have been spread Abroad against his Czarish Ma-
 ‘ jesty, will be dissipated and confounded.

WESSELOWSKI.

The King having caused this Memorial to be examined, and it being observ’d that some Articles of it related to him as Elector of *Hanover*, and others

as King of *Great-Britain*, his Majesty order'd two several Answers to be return'd to it : One of them by Mr. Secretary *Starkope*, the other by the Chancery of *Hanover*. The first of them is as follows :

WHITEHALL, *March 20, 1716-17. O.S.*

SIR,

HAVING communicated to the King the Memorial you delivered to me from his Czarish Majesty, I am commanded to tell you, That the Assurances it contains of the obliging Manner with which his Czarish Majesty has concern'd himself in the Discovery of the Conspiracy carry'd on by the *Swedish* Ministers, as also of the Disposition he is in, to live with the King in the same Amity and Confidence as for the Time past, are very agreable to the King, who will ever be ready on his Part, to answer the same in such a Manner as his Czarish Majesty will have Reason to be satisfy'd with ; of which you may assure him.

The King is very far from having the least Suspicion that his Czarish Majesty is enter'd into any Engagements in Favour of the Pretender, or that he had a Share in the Intrigues of the *Swedish* Ministers. And as for the Physician *Areskine*, his Czarish Majesty may easily understand that it was not possible to suppress, in the printed Letters, such Passages as concern him, the King having had so strong Reasons to communicate those Letters to the Parliament as they were found, that this occasion'd the leaving in them the odious Reflections therein contain'd against some of our Ministers. His Majesty has, on this Occasion, sufficiently shewn his Regard to the Czar, since he never caus'd any Complaint to be made to him against the said Physician, although there were such Indications against him ; which shews, that his Majesty will see without any Uneasiness, that

‘ that the Czar passes over in Oblivion the Affairs about that Physician.

‘ It had been a great Satisfaction for the King to have an Interview with the Czar in his Passage through *Holland*, but his Czarish Majesty’s Indisposition not having permitted it, the King would have seen and heard with Pleasure Messieurs *Kurakin* and *Tolstoy*, had not they arriv’d at *Vlaerdingen* just at the Moment his Majesty was going to embark; nor could he put off his Departure, by Reason of the Necessity he was under of making use of the Tide.

‘ As for the Complaints contain’d in the said Memorial, of the Steps which the King may have caus’d to be made in divers Courts of *Germany*, upon Account of the Stay of the *Russian* Troops in the Empire, although it were true that the *British* Ministers had acted in all the said Courts with Vigour, in order to procure the withdrawing of the said Troops out of the Empire; his Czarish Majesty ought not in the least to be surprized at it, considering the ancient and strict Union which has so long subsisted between *Great-Britain*, the Emperor, and the Empire, which Union was last Year knit faster, and strengthen’d by a new Treaty of Alliance between the Emperor and the King; but as these Complaints, as well as what is insinuated in your Memorial touching some Negotiation towards a separate Peace between the King and *Sweden*, concerns his Majesty as Prince of the Empire, since *Great-Britain* is not in War with *Sweden*, I do not doubt but you will receive a full and satisfactory Answer in that respect from his Majesty’s Ministers, who are trusted with his Affairs, in Quality of Elector and Prince of the Empire.

‘ As for the Offers contain’d in your Memorial, relating to Alliances, his Majesty having nothing more at Heart than to live in a perfect good Understanding with his Czarish Majesty, he will ever be ready to enter into such Negotiations as
‘ may

‘ may more and more confirm and establish that
 ‘ good Intelligence, for the mutual Interest of their
 ‘ Majesties and their Kingdoms, I am persuaded
 ‘ that you will contribute thereto, as far as lies in
 ‘ your Power, and on my Part, I will endeavour
 ‘ the same with all possible Zeal; of which I desire
 ‘ you to be pleased to assure his Czarish Majesty.
 ‘ I am, &c.

J. STANHOPE.

At the same Time Monsieur *Wesselowski* received the following Answer from the Chancery of *Hanover*.

S I R,

‘ **T**HE King has order’d the following An-
 ‘ swers to be given to the Memorial deli-
 ‘ ver’d to his Majesty on the Part of the Czar of
 ‘ *Muscovy*: That the Assurances which it contains
 ‘ of the obliging manner in which the Czar in-
 ‘ terests himself in the Discovery of the Plot car-
 ‘ ried on by the *Swedish* Ministers, and of the In-
 ‘ clination he has to live in Friendship and Confi-
 ‘ dence with his Majesty as formerly, are highly
 ‘ acceptable; and his Majesty desires *M. Wesselow-
 ‘ ski* to return Thanks to the Czar, with Assurance,
 ‘ that his Majesty is ready, on his Part, to answer
 ‘ the same in a satisfactory manner.

‘ The King has not forgot the good Intentions
 ‘ and Affections which the Czar express’d to him
 ‘ before and after his Accession to the Crown of
 ‘ *Great-Britain*; but since nothing can lessen such a
 ‘ good Understanding, except the Continuance of
 ‘ the *Russian* Troops in the Empire, his Majesty
 ‘ owns, that he caused Instances to be made to the
 ‘ Courts of *Vienna*, *Denmark*, and *Prussia*, to unite
 ‘ their Endeavours to dispose the Czar to withdraw
 ‘ his Troops.

‘ His Majesty was obliged to make Remon-
 ‘ strances to the Czar himself, by Virtue of his En-
 ‘ gagements with the Emperor, by the Rank he has
 ‘ in

in the Empire, and in the Circle of *Lower Saxony*, and by the great Concern he has in the Tranquility of his Neighbours. His Majesty was also induc'd to it by a Consideration of the Prejudice which would accrue to the *Northern Allies* in general, and to the Czar in particular, by the Continuance of the *Russian Troops* in the Empire; his Majesty was likewise moved to it by the sincere Desire he has to remove the Obstacle which overthrows the Harmony and Union between the *Northern Allies*, and which is inconsistent with that good Understanding which is between his Majesty and the Czar of *Muscovy*, and is so necessary for the publick Good. His Majesty therefore hopes that the Czar will have a due Regard thereto, and by a speedy withdrawing of his Troops, he will put Affairs on such a Foot, that they may always maintain a good and mutual Amity, since it is apparent, that the Continuance of the *Russian Troops* in the Empire, is directly contrary to all Engagements between his Majesty and the Czar; and in regard the keeping the *Russian Troops* in the Empire, intimate another Aim than to act against *Sweden*, the World cannot but suspect, that those Troops continued where they are, upon Views different from those which the Allies of his Majesty had, which create Distrust and Jealousies that cannot be remov'd but by withdrawing the said Troops.

As for the rest, his Majesty has not the least Suspicion that the Czar has enter'd into any Engagement in Favour of the Pretender, or was any way concern'd in the pernicious Projects of the *Swedish* Ministers. As for the Physician *Areskine*, the Czar may easily judge that it was impossible, in the printed Papers, to omit the Passages which concern him, because the King had weighty Reasons to impart to the Parliament the Letters entire, and as they were found; and for this Reason several odious Reflections against his Majesty's own Ministers were likewise not left

out. His Majesty has on this Occasion, sufficiently demonstrated his Esteem for the Czar, since he has not complained to the Czar against his Physician, though there were strong Presumptions against him; from whence it appears, that his Majesty will not be concern'd if the Czar will bury in Oblivion the Affair of his Physician.

It would have been to his Majesty's great Satisfaction, to have had an Interview with the Czar, as he pass'd thro' *Holland*; but because the Czar's Indisposition would not permit it, the King should have been glad to have seen M. *Kurakin* and M. *Tolstoy*, if they had not come to *Vlaerdingben* the same Hour his Majesty went on Board, and his Departure admitted of no Delay, as being under a Necessity to make Use of the Opportunity of a favourable Wind.

His Majesty declares, That he has not made the least Step towards a particular Peace with *Sweden*; and if there had been any Rumour of that Nature, it is to be imputed to the Artifice of the *Swedish* Ministers, as plainly appears by the Letter of Count *Gyllenbourg* to Baron *Gortz*, dated *December 9, 1716*, in which he frankly owns, That he had charged the Gentleman whom he had sent to the Czar's Court, to insinuate, That King *George* would make all possible Offers to obtain *Bremen* from the King of *Sweden* at the Cost of the Czar, who was to be the Sacrifice for it.

As to what Count *Gyllembourg* says in one of his Letters concerning a Treaty for a particular Peace between the Czar of *Muscovy* and the King of *Sweden*, it is plain, as is set forth in the Memorial, That the Count suggested it with an Intention to create Diffidence between the King and the Czar; because the Count did not write those Letters with a View that they should be read by no Body but Baron *Gortz*. Lastly, his Majesty has always been convinc'd, and is so still, that a Prince so prudent as the Czar, is not capable of being cajol'd and hoodwink'd by the Artifices of this Baron,

‘ Baron, or Proposals of a particular Peace, if he
 ‘ had made any : Such a Peace would have prov’d
 ‘ prejudicial to the Czar, who has all along given
 ‘ so many Proofs of his Adherence and Firmness to
 ‘ the *Northern Alliance*, that the King never trou-
 ‘ bled himself about it ; and for this Reason his
 ‘ Majesty never suggested to the Czar, that he had
 ‘ ever entertain’d the least Suspicion of it.

‘ As to the Proposals contain’d in the Memorial,
 ‘ with respect of Alliances which the Czar offers to
 ‘ make with his Majesty, the same shall be well re-
 ‘ ceiv’d at all times ; and the King will so answer
 ‘ them that the Czar shall have Reason to be satis-
 ‘ fy’d, provided the Obstacles of the Continuance
 ‘ of the *Russian Troops* in the Empire be remov’d.

Done at *London*, *March 31*,

N. S. 1717.

The Czar left the *Hague* on the fourth of *April* to go to *Paris* ; his Court was small, but chosen ; and the Czarina accompanied him as far as *Rotterdam*, from whence she came back to the *Hague*, and then to *Amsterdam*, where she waited his Return. His Czarish Majesty pass’d through *Zeeland* in his Way to *Antwerp*, where the Princes of *Holstein-Ploen* and *de la Tour*, appointed to attend him while he was in *Flanders*, came to receive him in the Emperor’s Name. On the 14th he arrived at *Brussels*, and pass’d from thence by the Way of *Ghent* and *Bruges* to *Dunkirk*, to view the *Ris-Bank* there, having a Design to make one on the Model of that at *Cronstot* or *Petersburgh*.

On the 7th of *May* his Majesty arrived at *Paris*, where very great Preparations were made to receive him, being conducted by the *Mareschal de Tesse* to the old *Louvre*, he found there a magnificent Ambigu prepared for his Entertainment, composed of eight Hundred Dishes of Flesh, Fish, Fowl, and Fruits. He was lodged in the *Hotel de Lesdiguières*, where he the next Morning received a Visit from the Duke of *Orleans*, the Regent, with whom

whom he discoursed for above an Hour; and when that Prince had left him, his Majesty spoke of him in such Terms as not only did Honour to the Regent, but to himself, in being capable of forming so solid a Judgment of that great and knowing Politician. The Regent was no less charmed with the Understanding and Behaviour of the Emperor of *Russia*. So that the Interview of these two great Princes was not unlike that of *Hannibal* and *Scipio*, who did not leave one another but with a reciprocal Admiration.

On the 10th the King of *France*, accompanied by the Marechal *Villeroy*, and the principal Officers of his Household, and followed by a Detachment of fifty of the Life-Guards, came to visit his Czarish Majesty at the *Hotel de Lesdiguières*. He went down to receive the young Monarch at his Coach, and conducted him to his Apartment, where they staid together some Time, and then his Czarish Majesty waited on him to his Coach again. The Day following the Czar, accompanied by the Lords of his Train, returned the Visit to the King in Coaches which his most Christian Majesty had sent for him; the young King came to receive him at his Coach, and after some short Discourse conducted him thither again, the *Swiss* and *French* Guards being all the Time under Arms. The same Day the Provost of Merchants, and the *Eschevins*, [or Aldermen] in their Habits of Ceremony went to wait upon his Czarish Majesty, and brought him the usual Presents of the City, conducted by the Marquis de *Dreux*, Grand-Master of the Ceremonies. In the Morning the Czar went to the *Palace-Royal*, that of *Victoires*, that of *Louis le Grand*, and to see the Arsenal; and on the 12th he went to the *Gobelins*, and to the King's Garden, and in the Afternoon to the *Observatory*.

On the 14th in the Afternoon, the Czar came to the *Palace-Royal*, to make a Visit to Monsieur the Duke of *Orleans*. His Royal Highness, accompanied by the principal Officers of his Household, received

ceived him as he alighted from his Coach, and conducted him into his Apartment, where he shewed him his Gallery of Paintings: The Czar went afterwards to visit *Madame*, who received him at the Door of her Apartment, and presented to him the Duke *de Chartres*, and *Mademoiselle de Montpensier*. After the Visit, M. the Duke of *Orleans* led him into the Lodge of the *Palace-Royal*, where he saw an Opera. When he went out, he was conducted by his Royal Highness to his Coach. The same Day in the Morning, the Czar went to the Royal Academy of Painting and Sculpture, and he saw in the great Gallery of the *Louvre*, the Plans in Relief of the fortified Towns of the Kingdom; and afterwards walk'd in the Garden of the *Tuileries*. The 16th he was at the *Hostel Royal des Invalids*; the 17th he pass'd the Day at the Castle of *Mendon*, where he was regaled by the Duke Regent; and in his Return to *Paris*, by the *Elysian Fields*, he found the Guards under Arms performing their Exercise.

His Czarish Majesty, a few Days after, went to *Fontainebleau*, and in the Way dined at the Duke *d'Antin's*, at *Petitbourg*. The next Morning he hunted the Stag with the King's Dogs, and was accompanied by the Count *de Toulouse*. After the Hunting was over, his Majesty dined in the Pavilion. He returned at Night to *Petitbourg*, where the Duke *d'Antin* entertained him as magnificently as the Day before: And after having gone over the Gardens and Terrasse which looks into the *Seine*, he went, on the 1st of *June*, into the *Gondola* that carried him back to *Paris*, his Court following in other Boats. In the Way, he stopp'd at *Choisi*, where the Princess Dowager of *Centi* received him, and shewed him her Gardens and Apartments. Continuing then his Journey in the *Gondola*, and having gone through all the Bridges in *Paris*, he landed at the *Porte de la Conference*, and going into his Coach, went along the Ramparts of the City, and bought in the Shop of an Artificer a large Quantity of Fuses and Petards,

Petards, which he afterwards fired himself in the Garden of the *Hotel de Lesdignieres*.

On the 2d of *June*, in the Afternoon, his Majesty went to the Royal Abbey of *St. Denis*, where he saw the Church, the Treasury, and the new Building, in which the *Benedictins* prepared a fine Colation for him, in one of the Cells at the End of the *Dormitory*, from whence the Prospect is most surprizingly agreeable. From *St. Denis* he returned by *St. Ouen* where the *Duke de Tresmes*, with all his Family, attended him. On the third, the *Russian* Monarch went from *Paris* to *Versailles*, with all his Court, accompanied by the *Marschal de Tessé*, and by the *Marquis de Bellegarde*, Son of the *Duke d'Antin*, which last named young Lord, was appointed to do the Honours of the Royal Houses, in the Room of his Father, who could not attend his *Czarish* Majesty at that Time, on Account of some important Affairs he had as Counsellor of State.

His Majesty, at this Time, made no Stay at *Versailles*, but went to *Trianon*, where he continued till the 6th, and then went to see the Castle of *Clagny*, and the great *Aqueduct*, and from thence to *Marly*. On the 10th, *Monsieur de Verton*, the King's *Maitre d'Hotel*, who had Orders from Court to wait upon his *Czarish* Majesty, entertained him with a very grand Fire-Work, preceded by a fine Concert of Musick, and Illuminations in the Gardens and Groves, the Night concluded with a sort of Ball, all the Ladies, whom Curiosity had drawn to *Marly*, dancing in the *Salloon*; and the *Czar* was so well pleased with this Evening's Gallantry, that he sat up much longer than his usual Hour of going to Rest. On the 11th, he went to *St. Germain en Laye*, and viewed the old and new Castle there, and afterwards to *St. Cyr*, where he saw *Madame de Maintenon*, who received him on her Bed. He saw the five Classes, and all the young *Demoiselles*, in their several Apartments, and was very much pleased with the useful and magnificent Establishment of this House.

House, and the Manner in which the Virgins were educated.

On the 12th in the Morning, he returned to *Versailles*, and viewed the Apartments and Cabinet of Medals, and in the Afternoon, the great and little Stables; after which, he went to *Chailot*, and having made a Visit to the late Queen of *England*, Widow of *James* the Second, came back in the Evening, and went to the House of *M. de Launai*, in the Mint, where the Duke *d'Antin* attended him; that Lord caused a Gold Medal to be struck before him, which he presented to him, and his Czarish Majesty was much surprized to find his own Bust on one Side, with this Inscription, *PETRUS ALEXIEWITZ TZAR, MAG. RUSS. IMPERATOR*; on the Reverse was Fame in the Air, holding two Trumpets, with this Inscription, *Vires acquirit eundo*; and on the Exergue, *Lutet Paris. 1717*. A Number of Medals with the same Impressions on Silver were presented to the Persons who accompanied him.

On the 13th, he received a Visit from the Pope's Nuncio, who making him a Compliment in the *Italian Tongue*, was answered by the Vice-Chancellor *Schaffner*. In the Evening his Czarish Majesty went to the Duke *d'Antin's*, where he sup'd with the Count *de Toulouse*.

On the 14th in the Morning, he went to see the Royal Printing House, and being, as every where else, very curious in enquiring into the Art, several Proofs were pull'd, to shew him the Method of Printing. He went afterwards to visit the College of the four Nations, founded by Cardinal *Mazarin*; he viewed the Church and the Library, and, discoursing with much Freedom with *M. Varignon*, the most famous Geometrician of the Kingdom, he inform'd himself of all that was necessary for a Foundation of the like Sort; for besides two Colleges he had already founded in his Dominions, one at *Moscow*, and one at *Petersburgh*, he intended to erect others. He went next to the House of the

Sieur *Pigeon*, the Maker of a very curious moving Sphere, according to the *Copernican* System, which pleased him so well, that he ordered it to be purchased, when he went away, for two Thousand Crowns. His Majesty went afterwards to the *Sorbonne*, where he was received by the Doctors of the House, for whom he expressed a great Esteem. He much admired the Tomb of Cardinal *de Richelieu*, in this Place, which is looked upon as a wonderful Piece of Workmanship. His Majesty went in the Afternoon up to the Towers of *Nôtre-Dame*, from whence he had a Prospect of the whole City: And on his Return to the *Hotel de Lesdiguières*, he found the Ambassadors of *Portugal* and *Malta*, who were come, with large Retinues, to wait upon him.

On the 15th, his Majesty went to see the fine Works at the *Gobelins*. Among many Pieces of Tapestry that were exposed to View, he seemed the most delighted with the History of *Don Quixot*, done after the Designs of young *Coytel*, of which his most Christian Majesty made him a Present, with some other Pieces. In the Evening he took a Walk in the *Cours*.

On the 16th, the Czar, accompanied by the Duke of *Orleans*, saw a Review of the *Gens d'Armes*, *Chevaux Legers*, the *Mousquetairs*, and the Life-Guards, which were drawn up on several Lines in the *Elysian Fields*: He was on Horseback, and went all along the Lines and Ranks, and after having seen the Foot-Guards perform their Exercise, went to *St. Ouen*, and supp'd with the Duke de *Tresmes*, Governor of *Paris*.

On the 17th, the Czar having spent two Hours at the *Observatory*, supp'd with the Mareschal *Villars*. The next Day having sent for M. *Delisle*, the Geographer, he discoursed a long Time with him, by an Interpreter, on the Situation and Extent of his Empire, which were better known to this Prince himself than to any Body else. To give a better Idea of them, he ordered two Manuscript Charts to be brought, which he had caused to be made of

Part of his Dominions, and shewed M. *Delisle* the Situation of a new Fortrefs he had built in *Tartary*, in the new Acquisitions he had made by the Submission of one of the *Tartarian* Kings, who was become his Vassal, and by the Junction of a hundred Thousand *Calmucks*, with the other *Tartars* who were already under his Dominion. His Majesty went afterwards to see several Chymical Experiments, that were prepared for him at the *Sieur Geofroi's*. In the Afternoon, he received a Visit from the Duke of *Orleans*, and then went to the *Louvre*, where he saw the King of *France incognito* in his Cabinet. From thence he went to the *Palace-Royal*, to visit Monsieur and Madame the Dutchess of *Orleans*. His Czarish Majesty, the same Day, saw an Operation performed on a blind Man, whom Mr. *Wallace*, an *Englilh* Occulift, restored to Sight. The Patient was an Invalid of fifty-six Years of Age, who had been blind ever since the Battle of *Blenheim*, and was brought to the *Hotel de Lesdiguières*, on Purpose to undergo this Operation in the Czar's Presence. His Majesty, when the Needle was first put to the Eye, turned away his Head for a Moment; but Curiosity soon got the better of that sudden Motion, and he saw the Work perform'd, and had Proof of the Cataract's being removed; for putting his Hand before the Invalid, he perceived he could distinguish it, which he could not before the Operation. This happy Success made his Czarish Majesty promise Mr. *Wallace* to send him a Pupil, to be brought up under so great a Man.

On the 19th, he went to see the Parliament sitting. He was carried thro' the House of the first President, and conducted from thence, by the Baliff of the Palace, into the great Chamber, and placed in one of the Lanthorns, decorated for that Purpose, from whence he saw the venerable Magistrates sitting on their high Benches. A Cause being called, when the two Advocates, *Melchault* and *Guerin*, had spoke on each Side, and the Advocate-General,

Monsieur de Lamoignon, had summ'd up the Affair, he took Notice that there were many Instances of the Court's being consulted by Sovereigns, in Matters of the greatest Importance with regard to their own States; but that the Monarch of a Country so distant from *France*, and equally powerful both in *Europe* and *Asia*, should have a Desire to see their august Assembly, was a very extraordinary Example: And added, that he thought such an Honour ought to be preserved in the Registers of the Parliament, and transmitted to Posterity. When the Assembly rose, his Czarish Majesty, at his going away, saluted the august Senate, who were all in their Scarlet Robes, and the Presidents in their Furr Gowns, which was a Compliment had been paid to none but the Emperor CHARLES the Fifth.

The same Day the *French* King went to the *Hotel de Lesdiguières*, in the Afternoon, to make a Visit to the Czar, who afterwards went to the *Academy of Sciences*, where the Members entertained him with whatever they had that was curious or new in Machines or Experiments, and his Majesty was so much delighted with them, that he afterwards, when he returned to *Petersburgh*, caused Dr. *Areskin*, his Physician, to write a Letter to the Abbot *Bignon* their President, desiring to be admitted a Member of their Society, to which they returned an Answer, with Thanks for the Honour he did them, and received another Letter from him, wrote with his own Hand. From this Time he was looked upon as one of their Members, and had the Volume of their Transactions punctually sent to him, as an Academician, every Year till his Death.

The Czar, after having heard the Mass of the *Pentecoste*, according to the ancient Style and Liturgy of the *Greek* Church, set out from *Paris* on the 21st, in order to go to the *Spaw*: He was escorted by ten *Musquetaries*, who were to be relieved successively by the like Number, till he came to *Soissons*. He supp'd, and lay the first Night at *Livry*, at the House of the Marquis of that Name, where he

he drank the Healths of the King and Monsieur the Regent.

His Czarish Majesty was very liberal at his Departure from *Paris*. He presented the Marquis de *Livry* with his Picture set with Diamonds, valued 40,000 Livres, and the Marquis de *Theſſe*, and the Duke d' *Antin* with the like. He left 10,000 Crowns to be distributed to the King's Servants who attended him, besides 15,000 Livres to the Gardiners of *Versailles*, and other Royal Palaces. The King would have made him a Present of a Sword set with Diamonds, but he desired to be excused from accepting any Presents in Gold and Jewels, but accepted four Suits of fine rich Tapestry Hangings out of the Royal Wardrobe, being as fine a Work as ever was seen; and some Pictures and other Curiosities from the Regent, and other Princes. The Czar left a very great Reputation at the *French* Court, and the *French* Virtuoli were very much surprized to see a Prince, born in one of the most ignorant Parts of the World, so fond of Arts and Sciences, and exceed, in that Respect, all the Princes who had the Advantage to be born in more polite Countries.

His Czarish Majesty arrived, by *Rancy*, *Soissons*, *Rheims*, *Charleville*, *Givet*, and *Beuvignes*, at *Namure* on the 25th. When the Count de *Hompesch*, Governor of that famous Fortrefs for the *States-General*, received Advice that he was expected at *Givet*, he sent Major-General *Du Portal* to receive him at that Place, and conduct him to *Namure*. The Count de *Lannoy*, Administrator of the Province, sent his Coach and six Horses, preceded by twelve Halberdiers in new Cloaths, with Cockades in their Hats, to receive him just without the Town, as supposing that he would land there; but his Majesty went on Shore at the Gate of *Groignon*, and was complimented by a Discharge of six Salvoes from all the Artillery of the Castle and Town. He mounted a Horse that was presented to him by the Count de *Hompesch*, who attended him there, with the chief Officers of the Garrison, and then his Majesty went

to the Castle, being followed by Prince *Kurakin*, and the other Lords of his Court. He was about two Hours on Horseback, viewing all the Fortifications, and made as judicious Remarks as the most skilful Engineer. Then he returned to the Castle, where he was entertained by the Count *de Hompesch*. The Czar shewed himself very affable to the whole Company, drank several Healths, and was pleased to give a particular Relation of the several Battles and Sieges at which he had commanded in Person. After the Entertainment was over, he took Horse again, and rode to the Governor's House, where he supp'd. There was afterwards a Ball, at which several Ladies entertained him with their Voices and Dancing. He also danced with one of them, and stay'd till One a Clock in the Morning, when he went to lye in his Yacht.

The next Day his Majesty saw a Combat of Lances upon the *Sambre*, and went round the Fortifications of the City, attended by the Count *de Hompesch* and the Lords of his Retinue. Then his Majesty returning to his Yacht, received the Compliments of the Deputies, and other Persons of Distinction, and set out at Eleven o'Clock for *Huy*, under as many Salvoes of the Artillery as were discharged at his Arrival.

His Majesty was received at *Liege*, on the 27th, with great Marks of Respect by the Magistrates, and other Officers, in the Name of the Elector of *Cologne*; the next Day he went to *Aix* by *Limbourg*, and from thence to the *Spaw*, where he drank the Waters for some Time: And on the 2d of *August* arrived at *Amsterdam*, in which City the Czarina *Catharine* had impatiently waited his Return. After two or three Days Repose, their Majesties went to see the Province of *Utrecht*, and the Palace of *Loo*, from whence they came back to *Amsterdam*, and took Leave of *Holland*, on the 2d of *September*, to go to *Berlin*, by the Way of *Cleves* and *Magdebourg*.

How strong soever the Czar's Thirst was after Knowledge, and how curious soever he might be

in his Enquires into all Things that he thought might improve himself or his People in all useful Arts and Sciences; yet the Reader is not to suppose that his Majesty spent his Time in *France*, and other Places, merely in the Amusements we have before related; no, he had other Views of a political Kind, suitable to the Greatness of his enterprizing Genius; though, it must be confessed, not strictly agreeable to his Engagements with his Allies.

It is no Secret, that while he was at the Court of *France*, he made Proposals whereby he offered to pour a numerous Army into the Heart of the Empire, which should be at the Disposition of that Crown, provided they would pay him the Subsidies he demanded, which were very large; but his Offers there were rejected, as inconsistent with the Engagements *France* was under by her Alliance with his *Britannick* Majesty, signed at the *Hague* on the 4th of *January*, 1717. And it is said, that the Regent of *France* gave Intelligence of what had passed to King *George I.*

However, his Czarish Majesty, during his Stay at *Paris*, concluded a Treaty of Friendship with *France*, in which the King of *Prussia* was included, and, being much pressed to it by the Regent, he promised to withdraw his Forces from *Mecklembourg*. The King of *Great-Britain*, who was very willing to preserve a good Understanding with him, knowing that, in his Return from *Paris*, he would pass by *Amsterdam*, in *August*, sent Admiral *Norris* and Mr. *Whitworth* to him at that Time, with Orders to thank him for having declared himself at *Paris* about the withdrawing his Forces out of the Empire, and to assure him, that it would be of great Satisfaction to his Majesty to live with him in the same Friendship and Union as before, and to resume the Negotiation of a Treaty of Commerce, which on his Side he would facilitate with all possible Readiness. But the Czar having again insisted on a *British* Squadron of fifteen Men of War to act against *Sweden*, under the Orders of the *Rus-*

ſian Admirals; this Step of his *Britiſh* Maſteſty had no Effect.

The very Day before his Czarish Maſteſty's Return to *Amſterdam*, Baron Gortz was ſet at Liberty, who, after he had had ſeveral Conferences with the *Swediſh* Reſident at *Zutphen*, was admitted, with great Privacy, to an Interview with the Czar and his Miniſters at *Lee*; and having taken upon him to adjust all the Differences between the King of *Sweden* and his Czarish Maſteſty, within three Months after his Arrival in *Sweden*, he ſet out thither by the Way of *Revel*, furniſhed with a Paſſport from the Czar, who on his Side engaged abſolutely to ſuſpend all Operations againſt his *Swediſh* Maſteſty till the End of the ſaid three Months.

His Czarish Maſteſty, before his Return into his own Dominions, being much preſſed by the King and Republick of *Poland*, to eaſe them of the Expence and Damages they ſuſtained by his Troops in that Kingdom, ſent the following Order to the Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetſſ*.

‘ The King and the Republick of *Poland*, having
 ‘ ſent M. *Ponitz*, Staroſte of *Caponitz*, expreſſly to
 ‘ us, to procure the Departure of our Troops; we
 ‘ confirm to you all the Orders and Commands
 ‘ that we have before given to you on this Subject,
 ‘ viz. that you cauſe our Troops to decamp as ſoon
 ‘ as poſſible, and march towards our Frontiers; ob-
 ‘ ſerving good Order in their March, ſo that the
 ‘ Inhabitants may ſuffer no Damage thereby. To
 ‘ this Purpoſe, it is neceſſary that you conſult the
 ‘ Commiſſaries of the Republick, and ſettle with
 ‘ them the Route, by which our Troops may march
 ‘ with the greateſt Conveniency. And as the Sum-
 ‘ mer Seſon is already begun, you are not to quar-
 ‘ ter our Troops on the Lands of the Nobility, nor
 ‘ in the Towns, Burroughs, or Villages; but to
 ‘ cauſe them to encamp, and march in two or three
 ‘ Columns, for the greater Eaſe of the In-
 ‘ habitants. You are very expreſſly enjoined, by
 ‘ theſe

‘ Presents, not to suffer any Provisions or Forage to
 ‘ be taken away, nor the Inhabitants to be mo-
 ‘ lested in any sort; and if Complaints are brought
 ‘ to you of Wrong or Damage done by any of our
 ‘ Army, you are to see that Justice be done accord-
 ‘ ing to the strictest Military Discipline, and the
 ‘ Damages made good. All General Officers are to
 ‘ observe this Order.

Notwithstanding which, the *Russian* Troops still remain’d in *Poland*, which was the Occasion of continual Complaints.

On the 19th of *September*, his Czarish Majesty arrived at *Berlin*, where he was received with a Triple Salvo of the Artillery, and all other Formalities. The Czarina arrived on the 22d, being met at some Distance from the Town by the Queen of *Prussia*, and the Markgravine. Their Czarish Majesties were lodged at *Morbius*, and magnificently entertained by the *Prussian* Court, whither the Duke and Duchess of *Mecklenbourg* came to pay them a Visit; their Majesties continued here but three Days, and then took the Route of *Dantzick*, with which City, a few Days before his Czarish Majesty’s Arrival, Prince *Dolgoruki*, and the other *Russian* Ministers, settled the following Agreement, which terminated all Differences between the Czar, and them, and which his Majesty ratified on his Arrival.

‘ **T**HE Plenipotentiary of his Great Czarish
 ‘ Majesty, the illustrious Prince and Lord,
 ‘ the Lord *Basilus de Dolgoruki*, Lieutenant-General
 ‘ of his Great Czarish Majesty’s Armies, and Lieu-
 ‘ tenant-Colonel of his Life-Guards, also Knight of
 ‘ the Orders of the Elephant and the white Eagle,
 ‘ after having in the Name of his said Majesty
 ‘ made certain Demands upon the City of *Dantzick*,
 ‘ and after for removing the same, the honourable
 ‘ and judicious Lords *Jehn Henry Smith*, and *Sclomont*
 ‘ *Gabriel Schoenmann*, Scheepens of the said City,
 M 5 ‘ have

‘ have, in the Name of the Regency thereof, made
 ‘ faithful Remonstrances, as well of the hearty Re-
 ‘ spect of the City towards his Majesty, as of its In-
 ‘ capacity of complying with the Demands; for
 ‘ divers weighty Considerations, the following Ar-
 ‘ ticles are finally agreed on and concluded between
 ‘ the illustrious the Lord Plenipotentiary of his
 ‘ Great Czarish Majesty on one Side, and the above-
 ‘ named Deputies of the City of *Dantzick* on the
 ‘ other.

‘ I. The City of *Dantzick* promises to forbear all
 ‘ Correspondence and Traffick with *Sweden* till the
 ‘ End of the War, and earnestly forbid all their
 ‘ Subjects the same, and to punish all Persons what-
 ‘ soever of their Burghers or Inhabitants who shall
 ‘ offend therein. And in case it shall please his
 ‘ Great Czarish Majesty to settle an Agent or Com-
 ‘ missary in the City of *Dantzick*, it shall be free for
 ‘ him so to do; and he shall not only enjoy quiet
 ‘ Habitation, but also all the Privileges and Ho-
 ‘ nours which other foreign Commissaries and
 ‘ Agents residing in *Dantzick*, have usually enjoy’d.
 ‘ Which Commissary shall also take Care of the In-
 ‘ terests of his said Czarish Majesty, and especially
 ‘ take Care, that the Prohibition of Correspondence
 ‘ with *Sweden* be duly observed. And in case he
 ‘ shall discover any Thing contrary to this Treaty
 ‘ he shall inform the Magistrates thereof, who shall
 ‘ give him due Countenance, and forthwith redress
 ‘ the Matters complained of.

‘ II. The City of *Dantzick* shall fit out and fur-
 ‘ nish, at their own Cost, the three Frigates they
 ‘ have lately built, to act with the good liking of
 ‘ his Royal Majesty of *Poland*, against *Sweden*, un-
 ‘ der the Colours, and with the Commission of his
 ‘ said Royal Majesty of *Poland*, and act against the
 ‘ Enemy’s Ships. All the said Capers shall be al-
 ‘ lowed to come into all the Havens of his Czarish
 ‘ Majesty. And to the End that they may have the
 ‘ like Liberty in all the Ports of the other high Al-
 ‘ lies,

lies, it shall lye upon the King of *Poland* to sollicite the same, which his Great Czarish Majesty hereby promises to support. In the mean Time, the said Capers shall be furnish'd by his said Royal Majesty, with the exact Orders and Regulations given to other Capers, to whom especial Orders shall be given upon severe Penalties, not to fall upon or injure any Ships belonging to the Subjects of *Dantzick*, or any other of the High Northern Allies or Neutral Nations, when they are able to produce good Passes, Certificates, and Documents, or to visit or interrupt them in their Voyage, or upon any Pretence to demand, or take any Thing from them, or in any manner whatsoever to hurt or damage them.

III. One half of the Ships Crew of the said Capers shall consist of Subjects of his Czarish Majesty, provided his Royal Majesty, of *Poland*, consents to it; but those Men shall take an Oath of Fidelity to the King of *Poland*, and be acknowledged his Subjects.

IV. In order the more to obtain his Czarish Majesty's Favour, and the Conditions here stipulated, the City of *Dantzick* shall pay the Sum of 140,000 Specie Dollars, each of the Value of six Thymfen, which Sum to be paid in three several Terms, the first whereof to be 46,666 Specie Dollars and two Thirds, each Dollar of the Value abovesaid, at the End of three Months after the Ratification hereof; the second of the same Sum at six Months after the End of the first Term; and the other of the same Sum, at six Months after the Expiration of the second Term.

V. In case there shall be Occasion for any of the Frigates, Capers, or Gallies of his Czarish Majesty to come into the Port of *Dantzick*, they shall be permitted so to do. And what is necessary for their Safety shall be granted to them in like Manner as is used to be granted by the Town and Fortresses of the Maritime Potentates of the Alliance. In the mean Time, those Frigates, Capers, and Gallies, shall behave themselves as the Ships
of

‘ of other Nations in Amity ; they shall make no manner of Demand but for what is needful to them, and pay ready Money for the same, and shall not presume to make any Visitation or Stoppage of the Ships coming in or going out.

‘ VI. As soon as this Treaty is concluded and signed by the Plenipotentiaries on both Sides, the Troops of his Czarish Majesty, who were at present in the Territories of the City of *Dantzick*, shall immediately, and without making any Demands, march away out of the same ; and the said Territories shall be at all Times hereafter, with respect to these and all other Troops of the Czar, freed from Quarters, or any other Burthens whatsoever.

‘ VII. The City of *Dantzick*, for this and all Time to come, shall be fully discharged and freed from all manner of Pretences, which in the Name of his Czarish Majesty may or shall be made for any Cause whatsoever to this Time, and for all Times heretofore.

‘ VIII. And in case any Body shall, by reason of this Treaty, in any Manner whatsoever, attack or injure the City of *Dantzick*, his Czarish Majesty shall assist and protect it in the most powerful Manner.

‘ IX. All Freedoms, Profits, and Privileges, that are granted at *Petersburgh* to other Nations in strictest Amity with his Czarish Majesty, shall be granted to the Merchants of *Dantzick*, who came thither for Trade.

‘ X. His Czarish Majesty shall, together with other Potentates, take the most favourable Care for the City of *Dantzick*, that it shall be included in the next Treaty of Peace for the North ; and not only obtain that all Rights and Privileges be secured to them, but also that the free Exercise of the Evangelical Religion, so as before this present War they have enjoy’d, shall be secured and preserved to them for ever.

‘ XI.

‘ XI. These Presents shall be ratified and confirmed, under the Hand and Seal of his Czarish Majesty, and deliver’d at *Dantzick* as soon as may be, and there exchanged against the Ratification of the said City, under their Seal.

‘ In Witness whereof the Plenipotentiaries above-named on both Parts, have put their Hands and Seals to two exact Copies hereof.

Done at *Dantzick*,
Sept. 30, 1717.

From *Dantzick* his Czarish Majesty went, by the Way of *Koningsberg*, *Riga*, and *Revel*, to *Petersburgh*, the Capital of his own Dominions, where a Multiplicity of Affairs of the greatest Importance waited the Arrival of that Monarch.

End of the Fifth B O O K.





 BOOK VI.

The CONTENTS.

The Czar punishes his Ministers who abused the Power given them in his Absence. Makes new Regulations in the State. Negotiations in Pursuance of Gortz's Project. Alarms from the Cubanski-Tartars. The unfortunate Miscarriage of an Expedition near the Caspian Sea. An Enquiry into the Crimes of the Czarewitz, whom his Father obliges to renounce the Succession to his Crown.

HIS Czarish Majesty arrived at *Petersburgh* on the 21st of *October* 1717, after an Absence of sixteen Months; and here he found the Complaints of his People very high against the Ministers with whom he intrusted the Government; he therefore employed the remaining Part of the Year in redressing, with indefatigable Application, the great Disorders committed in the State, and in punishing the Authors of them. He assisted in the Senate every Morning at Four of the Clock, and was at the Pains himself of hearing and examining the Accusations and Defence of the Parties concerned. But as the Affairs of this Inquisition appeared to be of a deeper Die than was at first expected, and that a great deal of Time was required for convicting some of those who stood accused of Breach of Trust; an extraordinary Court of Justice was established, and in the mean Time the Prince of *Wolchinsky*, Governor of *Archangel*, who had been fully convicted of his Crimes, was shot to Death. The said Court

Court of Justice was divided into several Committees, each of which consisted of a Major, a Captain, and a Lieutenant of the Guards, who were to examine into the respective Causes laid before them, and to give Sentence according to common Sense and Equity. And so absolute was the Power of the Czar, that he obliged the Members of a venerable Senate, composed of the Heads of the greatest Families in *Russia*, to appear before a Lieutenant as their Judge, and be called to an Account of their Conduct.

In Order to remedy the great Want of Money which appeared at that Time, his Czarish Majesty issued an Order prohibiting the use of Gold and Silver on Wearing Apparel; several useless Mechanicks who had been brought into the Country were discharged, others were reduced to half Pay, and divers other Methods were tried that were thought conducive to that End. On this Occasion several *Russians* of Distinction entered into a Society for the manufacturing of Silk-Stuffs; for the Encouragement of which, the Czar granted them a Privilege for many Years, and raised the Duties on the Importation of foreign Stuffs to double the Price for the middling Sort, and treble for the best: He likewise published several other Regulations which were the Fruits of the Remarks he made in his last Travels, and appointed several Councils for the Administration of the publick Affairs, like those that had been established by the Duke of *Orleans* in *France*: One for foreign Affairs, a second for the Finances, a third for Justice, a fourth for Revision, a fifth for War, a sixth for the Marine, a seventh for Commerce, an eighth for Receipts and Expences, and a ninth for Arts and Sciences, Mines, Buildings, &c.

About this Time the young *Great Prince* (so the *Czarewitz's* Son was styled) was presented by the the Czar with his Picture set with Diamonds, and as he gave early Proofs of a martial and lively Genius, he was not only declared a Serjeant of the Guards, and cloathed accordingly, but also taught the

the military Exercise, which he very readily learned to that Degree, that he was soon able to perform the principal Part of his Function himself, to the great Satisfaction of the Czar, who had much Affection for him, notwithstanding the just Resentment he had conceived against the Czarewitz his Father; of which the Reader will find a particular Account hereafter.

On the 9th of *December*, M. *Weber*, the King of *Great-Britain's* Resident at *Petersburgh*, who had left that Place during the Czar's Absence, returned with Orders to thank his Czarish Majesty for the obliging Letters he had written from *Amsterdam* to his Majesty by Admiral *Norris*, and to assure him of the King's good Dispositions for maintaining with him the same Union and Friendship as formerly. He discharged this Commission to the Czar's Ministers, and at the same Time gave them to understand how uneasy his Majesty was at the Interview the Czar had at *Leo* with Baron *Gortz*, and at the Appearances there were of his Czarish Majesty's having employ'd that Baron to endeavour to procure a separate Peace with his *Swedish* Majesty.

The Czar's Ministers boldly denied that there had been an Interview at *Leo*; but a little Time after they were obliged to own it. The late Duke of *Ormond* was come at this Time to *Mittau* in *Courland*, and had with him Mr. *Fernegan*, an *English Roman-Catholick*; his Design was not only to negotiate a Marriage between the Princess *Anna-Petrovna* one of the Czar's Daughters, and the Pretender, but also to go over to *Sweden* to persuade *Charler XII.* to make Peace with the Czar, and to turn his Thoughts on setting the Pretender on the Throne of *Great-Britain*; but the Proposal of the Marriage was one Way to frustrate this last Part of their Scheme; for Baron *Gortz* had long intended the Lady here spoken of for the Duke of *Holstein*, who afterwards married her.

Mr. *Fernegan* was sent to *Sweden* to obtain Leave from his *Swedish* Majesty that the Duke of *Ormond* might

might go thither as the *Pretender's* Minister. *Fernegan* had Orders to apply to Baron *Gortz*, which he did accordingly ; but the Answer he brought to the Duke was, that the King of *Sweden* had great Reasons for not admitting him ; he was soon after sent away from *Mittau*, and his Confident *Fernegan* left to manage the Business at *Petersburgh* with all possible Secrecy, never going out but at Night, nor seeing the Czar's Ministers but in Disguise. And while Measures were taking privately for a Congress at *Abo*, to which the Czar's Plenipotentiaries were invited by Baron *Gortz*, his Czarish Majesty set out for *Moscow*, where he had not been for eight Years before.

In the Month of *January* 1718, an Express arrived from *Ukrania*, that the *Cubanski-Tartars* were approaching in great Numbers towards the Frontiers of *Russia* ; but so far from being set on by the *Porte*, that the *Turkish* Governor of *Azoph* had sent Notice of their Design to the *Russian* Officers commanding on the Frontiers, and declar'd that it was out of his Power to check those Robbers, who having found their Account by the In-Road which they made into *Russia* the Year before, seemed resolved to try a second Visit. Upon this all necessary Orders were given at *Petersburgh* for opposing them, the *Cossacks* were ordered to mount, five thousand Dragoons, and the like Number of Infantry were ordered to join them, and to guard the Lines on the River *Don*, which the Czar had caused to be cast up last Summer at a vast Expence, in order to cover his Frontiers against the like Insults. The Grand Signior afterwards, in order to remove all Suspicion, sent a Letter under his own Hand to the Czar, promising that in case these Plunderers being defeated in their Design, should take Refuge in his Dominions, he would cause them to be pursued with Fire and Sword, being willing to discharge, in every Respect, the Obligations of a faithful Neighbour and Confederate.

One 4th of *February* they received more disagreeable Advices at *Petersburgh*, relating to the Expedition near the *Caspian Sea*, of which the Prince *Alexander Bekewitz* had the Command, being sent by the Czar to take Possession of the River in which the Gold Sand is found, and to discover Mines in the Mountains of *Great-Tartary*, at the Head of three Thousand Men; among whom were three Hundred Saxons, who were taken Prisoners at *Pultowa* in the *Swedish* Service. Their Design was to raise two Forts on the *Caspian Sea*, to facilitate the Commerce, and to cover the Gallies that were built for that End; accordingly they erected Forts with Shells, which lye in prodigious Quantities on the Shore, at first without the least Opposition from the *Tartars* and the *Calmucks*. But when the Army penetrated farther into the Country, thro' the great *Step* or Desert, extremely harassed in their March for Want of Water, and arrived at the Place where the Gold Sand is found; the Subjects of the Cham of *Schirvan* taking Umbrage, gathered to the Number of fifty Thousand, and refused to accept the Presents that were tendered to them on the Part of the Czar; however, they feigned Compassion to see so fine an Army in so great Distress, and offered to supply them with Water and Provisions, on Condition that they should separate, and return Home in several Bodies. The General was drawn into the Snare, and, either pressed with great Misery, or for Want of Experience, consented to those Terms, dividing his Forces into several Detachments, some of three Hundred, some of five Hundred Men, in Order to march off, and so they all fell a Sacrifice to the deceitful Enemy. The Prince himself was carried before the Cham's Tent, where a Piece of red Cloth was spread upon the Ground, the usual Sign of Blood among the *Tartars*, and upon his refusing to kneel down, and submit to his melancholly Fate, they first cut him with their Scimeters in the Calves of his Legs, and afterwards massacred him in a most miserable Manner. His divided Forces

Forces were likewise all cut to Pieces, except those of the Artillery, who obtained Quarter, and were afterwards employed by the Enemy in the Siege of *Mezetz*, a Frontier Place of *Persia*, and by the Help of those Gunners, and of the Cannon and Ammunition which they had taken from the *Russians*, they forced the Governor to surrender upon disadvantageous Terms, and got a rich Booty in the Place, where there was a Monastery, the Walls of which were lined all over with Gold Plates. The Musicians, as also several young Volunteers, who were most of them Sons of Boyars, had likewise their Lives spared, and were afterwards sold.

The Father of this unfortunate Prince, a *Circassian* by Birth, had brought himself into Disgrace with the King of *Persia* by refusing to resign to him his Wife, who was a very beautiful Woman; so shaking off his Obedience to that Prince, he came to beg the Protection of the Czar, who received him with great Civility and extraordinary Honours, promising to restore him to his Territories; but he dying soon after, left to this Prince *Alexander* his only Son, the immense Treasures he had brought with him to *Muscovy*, when he fled; the young Prince was married to a Princess of the House of *Galliczin*, who was reckoned the greatest Beauty in all *Russia*, but was unfortunately drowned in the *Volga*, some Time before the unhappy Fate of her Husband.

It was firmly believed that the Czar would take the first Opportunity of revenging himself on those *Tartars*, (called in their own Language *Kibicks*, from their Tents) who have nothing to defend themselves but their Scimeters, Bows and Arrows and very swift Horses, for which Reason he intended to send a less numerous Army against them, which might more easily be furnished with Water and Provisions, and caused new Forts to be raised in their Country for covering those Mines which he intended to open there. The *Persians* had long before an Eye upon the Gold Sand

Sand there, but the Inhabitants choaked up the Mouth of the River *Daria* on the *Caspian* Sea, which gave Passage up to the Mountains from whence the Gold Sand was washed down, and diverted its Course into the flat Country. Part of Prince *Bekewitz's* Commission was to restore Things to their former Condition with respect to the said River, in order to keep open that Communication with the Mountains, and to avoid the troublesome and dangerous Passage thither by Land through the *Step* or Desert. *M. Bliker*, who had formerly been a Refiner in the Mines of *Saxony*, from whence he was sent for to *Russia*, and made a Commissioner of the Mine Works, returned a second Time from that Country to *Petersburgh* with Assays of the Gold Sand and Oar found there, three Ducats weight of which appeared to contain two and one quarter of pure Gold.

But this Undertaking and all others were laid aside for a while, to make way for an Affair which his Czarish Majesty had more at Heart than any Thing else, and which may be looked upon as one of the most extraordinary Events of his Life. This was an Enquiry into the Crimes, and the Punishment of the Disobedience of his Son *Alexis Petrowitz*, the Heir-apparent to his Crown, who, during his Absence, had made his Escape out of the Kingdom, in Breach of the Laws thereof, which made it High-Treason for any one to travel into foreign Parts without the Czar's Licence.

News being now brought from *Novogorod*, that the Privy Counsellor *Tolstoy* was come thither in his Way to *Moscow*, with the Czarewitz, whom, by his Father's Orders, he had been sent to fetch from *Naples*, and whom his Czarish Majesty design'd to punish in an exemplary Manner, the following Manifesto was publish'd, to satisfy every one of the Reasons of his Majesty's Conduct in so delicate an Affair.

PETER I. by the Grace of God, Czar and Emperor of *Russia*, &c. to all our faithful Subjects, Ecclesiastical, Military and Civil, of all the States of the *Russian* Nation.

It is notorious and well known to the greatest Part of our faithful Subjects, and chiefly to those who live in the Places of our Residence, or who are in our Service, with how much Care and Application we have caused our eldest Son *Alexei* to be brought up and educated, having given him for that Purpose, from his Infancy Tutors to teach him the *Russian* Tongue and foreign Languages, and others to instruct him in all Arts and Sciences, in order not only to bring him up in our Christian Orthodox Faith of the *Greek* Confession, but also in the Knowledge of Political and Military Affairs, and likewise of the Constitution of foreign Countries, their Customs and Languages, that through the reading of History and other Books, in all manner of Sciences becoming a Prince of his high Rank, he might acquire the Qualifications worthy of a Successor to our Throne of *Great-Russia*. Nevertheless we have seen with Grief, that all our Attention and Care for the Education and Instruction of our Son, proved ineffectual and useless, seeing he always swerv'd from his filial Obedience, shewing no Application for what was becoming a worthy Successor, and slighting the Precepts of the Masters we had appointed for him, but on the contrary frequenting disorderly Persons, from whom he could learn nothing good, or that could be advantageous and useful to him.

We have not neglected often to endeavour to reclaim and bring him back to his Duty, sometimes by Caresses and gentle Means, sometimes by Reprimands, sometimes by paternal Corrections. We have more than once taken him along with us into our Army and the Field, to cause him to be instructed in the Art of War, as one of the chief

‘ chief Sciences for the Defence of his Country,
 ‘ taking Care all the while to keep him off from
 ‘ any dangerous Occasion, and preserving his Per-
 ‘ son, out of Regard to the Succession, though we ex-
 ‘ posed our own Person to those Perils and Dangers.

‘ We have at other Times left him at *Moscow*,
 ‘ putting into his Hands a sort of Regency in the
 ‘ Empire, in order to form him in the Art of Go-
 ‘ vernment, and that he might learn how to reign
 ‘ after us. We have afterwards sent him into
 ‘ foreign Countries, in Hopes and Expectation, that
 ‘ seeing in his Travels Governments so well regu-
 ‘ lated, this would excite in him some Emulation,
 ‘ and an Inclination to apply himself to do well.
 ‘ But all our Care has been fruitless, and like the
 ‘ Seed of the Doctrine fallen upon a Rock: For he
 ‘ has not only refused to follow that which is good,
 ‘ but even is come to hate it; without shewing any
 ‘ Inclination or Disposition either for Military or
 ‘ Political Affairs, he only and continually convers’d
 ‘ with base and disorderly Persons, whose Morals
 ‘ were rude and abominable.

‘ As we were resolv’d to endeavour by all ima-
 ‘ ginable Means to reclaim him from that disorderly
 ‘ Course, and inspire him with an Inclination to
 ‘ converse with Persons of Virtue and Honour, we
 ‘ exhorted him to chuse a Consort among the Prin-
 ‘ cesses of the chief foreign Houses, as is usual in
 ‘ other Countries, and hath been practis’d by our
 ‘ Ancestors, the Czars of *Russia*, who have con-
 ‘ tracted Alliances by Marriages with other Sove-
 ‘ reign Houses; and we left him at full Liberty to
 ‘ make a Choice.

‘ He declared his Inclination for the Princess,
 ‘ Grand-Daughter to the Duke of *Welfembuttel* then
 ‘ reigning, Sister-in-Law to his Imperial Majesty
 ‘ the Emperor of the *Romans* now reigning, and
 ‘ Cousin to the King of *Great-Britain*, and hav-
 ‘ ing desired us to procure him that Alliance
 ‘ and permit him to marry that Princess, we
 ‘ readily consented thereunto, without any Regard

to the great Expence which was necessarily occasion'd by that Marriage; but after its Consummation, we found ourselves disappointed of the Hope we had, that the Change of the Condition of our Son would produce good Fruit, and a Change in his bad Inclinations, but found quite the Reverse of what we expected: For notwithstanding his Spouse was, as far as we have been able to observe, a wise, sprightly Princess, and of a virtuous Conduct, and that he had himself made that Choice, he lived nevertheless with her in the greatest Disunion, while he redoubled his Affection for lewd People, bringing thereby a Disgrace upon our House, before the foreign Princes, to whom that Princess was related, which drew upon us many Complaints and Reproaches. These frequent Advices and Exhortations prov'd ineffectual, and on the contrary he violated at last the conjugal Faith, and gave his Affection to a Prostitute of the most servile and low Condition, living publickly in that Crime with her, to the great Contempt of his lawful Spouse, who soon after dy'd of Sicknes; but it was believ'd that her Grief, occasion'd by the disorderly Life of her Husband, hastened the End of her Days.

When we saw his Resolution to persevere in his vicious Course, we declared to him at the Funeral of his Consort, that if he did not for the future conform himself to our Will, and apply himself to Things becoming a Prince, presumptive Heir to so great an Empire, we would deprive him of the Succession, without any Regard to his being our only Son, (our second Son was not then born) and that he ought not to rely upon his being so, because we would rather chuse for our Successor a Stranger worthy thereof, than an unworthy Son; that we could not leave our Empire to such a Successor, who would ruin and destroy what the Father hath, by God's Assistance, establish'd, and tarnish the Glory and Honour of the *Russian* Nation, for the acquiring of which we

‘ we had sacrific’d our Ease and our Health, willingly exposing our own Life on several Occasions; besides that the Fear of God’s Judgment would not permit us to leave the Government of such vast Territories in the Hands of one, whose Insufficiency and Unworthiness we were not ignorant of.

‘ In short, we exhorted him, in the most pressing Terms we could make Use of, to behave himself with Discretion, and gave him Time to repent and return to his Duty.

‘ His Answer to these Remonstrances was, That he acknowledg’d himself guilty in all these Points; but alledging the Weakness of his Parts and Genius, which did not permit him to apply himself to the Sciences and other Functions recommended to him, he own’d himself incapable of our Succession, desiring us to discharge him from the same.

‘ Nevertheless, we continu’d to exhort him with a paternal Affection, and joining Menaces to our Exhortations, we forgot nothing to bring him back to the right Way; and the Operations of War having oblig’d us to repair to *Denmark*, we left him at *Petersburgh* to give him Time to return to his Duty, and mend his Ways.

‘ And afterwards, upon the repeated Advices we receiv’d of the Continuation of his disorderly Life, we sent him Orders to come to us at *Copenhagen* to make the Campaign, that he might thereby the better form himself.

‘ But forgetting the Fear and Commandments of God, who enjoyns Obedience even to private Parents, and much more to those who are at the same Time Sovereigns, our paternal Cares had no other Return than an unheard-of Ingratitude; for, instead of coming to us as he was order’d, he withdrew, taking along with him great Sums of Money, and his infamous Concubine, with whom he continu’d to live in a criminal Course. He put himself under the Protection of the Emperor, raising against us, his Father and his Lord, a World

of Calumnies and false Reports, as if we did persecute him, and intended, without Cause, to deprive him of our Succession; alledging moreover, that even his Life was not safe if he continu'd with us, and desiring the Emperor not only to give him Refuge in his Dominions, but also to protect him against us by Force of Arms.

Every one may judge what Shame and Dishonour this Conduct of our Son hath drawn upon us and our Empire, in the Face of the whole World. The like Instance is hardly to be found in History.

The Emperor, tho' inform'd of his Excesses, and how he had liv'd with his Consort, Sister-in-Law to his Imperial Majesty, thought fit, however, upon his pressing Instances, to appoint a Place where he might reside; and he desired farther, that he might be so private there, that we might not come to the Knowledge of it.

Mean while his long Stay having made us fear, out of a tender and fatherly Affection, that some Misfortune had befallen him, we sent Persons several Ways to endeavour to get Intelligence of him, and after a great deal of Trouble, we were at last inform'd by the Captain of our Guard, *Alexander Romanzoff*, that he was privately kept in an Imperial Fortrefs in *Tyrol*: Whereupon we wrote a Letter with our own Hand to the Emperor, to desire that he might be sent back to us. But notwithstanding the Emperor's acquainting him with our Demands, and exhorting him to return to us, and submit to our Will, as being his Father and Lord; yet he alledg'd with a great many Calumnies against us, that he ought not to be deliver'd into our Hands, as if we had been his Enemy; and a Tyrant from whom he had nothing to expect but Death.

In short, he perswaded his Imperial Majesty instead of sending him back at that Time to us, to remove him to some remote Place in his Dominions, namely to *Naples in Italy*, and keep him

‘ there secretly in the Castle, under a borrow’d
‘ Name.

‘ Nevertheless we had Notice from our said Cap-
‘ tain of the Place where he was, and thereupon
‘ dispatch’d to the Emperor our Privy Councillor
‘ *Peter Tolstoy*, and the Captain of our Guard Ro-
‘ *manzoff* afore said, with a most pressing Letter, re-
‘ presenting how unjust it would be to detain our
‘ Son, contrary to all Laws divine and human;
‘ according to which private Parents, and with
‘ much more Reason those who are besides invested
‘ with a Sovereign Authority, as we are, have an
‘ unlimited Power over their Children, indepen-
‘ dently of any other Judge; and we set forth on
‘ one Side, the just and affectionate Manner with
‘ which we had always used our Son, and on the
‘ other his Disobedience; representing, in the Con-
‘ clusion, the ill Consequences and Animosities the
‘ Refusal of delivering up our said Son to us might
‘ occasion, because we would not leave this Affair
‘ in that Condition. We order’d at the same Time
‘ those we sent with that Letter to make verbal
‘ Representations even in more pressing Terms, and
‘ declare that we should be obliged to revenge, by
‘ all possible Means, such detaining of our Son.

‘ We wrote likewise to him a Letter with our
‘ own Hand, to represent to him the Horror and
‘ Impiety of his Conduct, and the Enormity of the
‘ Crime he had committed against us, his Father,
‘ and how God threatened in his Laws to punish
‘ disobedient Children with eternal Death.

‘ We threatened him as a Father with our Curse,
‘ and, as his Lord, to declare him a Traytor to
‘ his Country, unless he return’d and obey’d our
‘ Commands, and gave him Assurances, that if he
‘ did as we desired, and return’d, we would par-
‘ don his Crime.

‘ Our Envoys after many Solicitations, and the
‘ abovesaid Representations made by us in Writ-
‘ ing, and by them by Word of Mouth, at last ob-
‘ tained Leave of the Emperor to go and speak to
‘ our

‘ our Son, in order to dispose him to return Home.

‘ The Imperial Ministers gave them, at the same Time, to understand, that our Son had informed the Emperor that we persecuted him, and that his Life was not safe with us, whereby he had moved the Emperor’s Compassion, and induced him to take him into his Protection; but that the Emperor, taking now into his Consideration our true and solid Representations, promised he would give Orders to endeavour by all possible Means to dispose him to return to us, and would moreover declare to him that he could not in Justice and Equity refuse to deliver him up to his Father, and fall out with us on that Account.

‘ Our Envoys, upon their Arrival at *Naples*, having desired to deliver to him our Letter, written with our own Hands, sent us Word, that, he did not only refuse to admit them, but that the Emperor’s Viceroy had found Means, by inviting him Home to his House, to present them to him afterwards much against his Will.

‘ He did then indeed receive our Letter, containing our paternal Exhortation, and threatening our Curse, but without shewing the least Inclination to return; alledging still a great many Falsities and Calumnies against us, as if, by Reason of several Dangers he had to apprehend from us, he could not and would not return; and boasting that the Emperor had promised him not only to defend and protect him against us, but even to set him upon the Throne of *Russia* against our Will by Force of Arms.

‘ Our Envoys perceiving this evil Disposition, try’d all imaginable Ways to prevail with him to return: They intreated him, they expatiated by Turns upon the Graciousness of our Assurances towards him, and upon our Threats in case of Disobedience, and that we would even bring him away by Force of Arms. They declared to him, that the Emperor would not enter into a War

‘ with us on his Account, and many other such like
‘ Representations did they make him.

‘ But he paid no Regard to all this, neither
‘ shew’d an Inclination to return to us, till the Im-
‘ perial Viceroy, convinc’d at last of his Obstina-
‘ cy, told him in the Emperor’s Name, that he
‘ ought to return, for that his Imperial Majesty
‘ could not by any Law keep him from us, nor
‘ during the present War with *Turky*, and also in
‘ *Italy* with the King of *Spain*, embroil himself with
‘ us upon his Account.

‘ When he saw how the Case stood, fearing he
‘ should be delivered up to us whether he would
‘ or not, he at length resolv’d to return Home, and
‘ declared his Mind to our Envoys, and to the Im-
‘ perial Viceroy.

‘ He likewise wrote the same Thing to us, ac-
‘ knowledging himself to be a Criminal and blame-
‘ worthy.

‘ And in this manner he is arriv’d here. And
‘ albeit now our Son, by so long a Course of cri-
‘ minal Disobedience against us his Father and
‘ Lord, for many Years, and particularly for the
‘ Dishonour he hath cast upon us in the Face of the
‘ World, by withdrawing himself, and raising Ca-
‘ lumnies of us, as if we were an unnatural Fa-
‘ ther, and for opposing his Sovereign, hath de-
‘ serv’d to be punish’d with Death.

‘ Nevertheless our paternal Affection inclines us
‘ to have Mercy upon him, and we therefore par-
‘ don his Crimes, and exempt him from all Punish-
‘ ments of the same.

‘ But considering his Unworthiness, and the Se-
‘ ries of his irregular Conduct above described, we
‘ cannot in Conscience leave to him after us, the
‘ Succession to the Throne of *Russia*, foreseeing that
‘ by his vicious Courses he would entirely destroy
‘ the Glory of our Nation, and the Safety of our
‘ Dominions, which through God’s Assistance we
‘ have requir’d and establish’d by an incessant Ap-
‘ plication; for it is notorious, and known to every
‘ one,

‘ one, how much it hath cost us, and with what
 ‘ Efforts we have not only recover’d the Provinces
 ‘ which the Enemy had usurp’d from our Empire,
 ‘ but also conquer’d several considerable Towns
 ‘ and Countries, and with what Care we have
 ‘ caused our People to be instructed in all Sorts of
 ‘ Military and Civil Sciences, to the Glory and
 ‘ Advantage of the Nation and Empire.

‘ Now, as we should pity our States and our
 ‘ faithful Subjects, if by such a Successor we should
 ‘ throw them back into a much worse Condition
 ‘ than ever they were yet:

‘ So by the paternal Authority, in Virtue of
 ‘ which, by the Laws of our Empire, even any
 ‘ of our Subjects may disinherit a Son, and give
 ‘ his Succession to such other of his Sons as he
 ‘ pleases:

‘ And in Quality of Sovereign Prince, in Con-
 ‘ sideration of the Safety of our Dominions, we do
 ‘ deprive our said Son *Alexis*, for his Crimes and
 ‘ Unworthiness of the Succession after us, to our
 ‘ Throne of *Russia*, even though there should not
 ‘ remain a single Person of our Family after us.

‘ And we do constitute and declare Successor to
 ‘ the said Throne after us, our second Son *Peter*,
 ‘ though yet very young, having no Successor that is
 ‘ older.

‘ We lay upon our said Son *Alexis* our paternal
 ‘ Curse, if ever, at any Time, he pretends to, or
 ‘ reclaims the said Succession.

‘ And we desire our faithful Subjects, whether
 ‘ Ecclesiastick or Seculars, of all Ranks and Con-
 ‘ ditions, and of the whole *Russian* Nation, that
 ‘ in Conformity to this Constitution and our Will
 ‘ they acknowledge and consider our said Son *Pe-*
 ‘ *ter*, appointed by us to succeed, as lawful Succes-
 ‘ sor, and that agreeably to this our Constitution
 ‘ they confirm the Whole by Oath before the Holy
 ‘ Altar, upon the Holy Gospel, kissing the Cross.

‘ And all those who shall ever, at any Time, op-
 ‘ pose this our Will, and who from this Day for-

ward shall dare to consider our Son *Alexis* as Successor, or to assist him for that Purpose, we declare them Traytors to us and their Country. And we have order'd that these Presents shall be every where published and promulgated, to the End no Person may pretend Ignorance.

Done at *Moscow*, the third
of *February*, 1718, O.S.
Signed with our Hand,
and seal'd with our Seal.

On the 11th of *February* the *Czarewicz Alexis*, being arrived with the *Sieur Tolstoy* at *Moscow*, he waited the same Night on the Czar, his Father, with whom he had a long Conference. The next Day a great Council was held, and his Czarish Majesty having resolved to exert in a very solemn Manner his Justice upon the said Prince for his Disobedience and Breach of the Laws, Orders were given for the necessary Preparations to be made for that Purpose. Accordingly the 14th, before break of Day, the Regiment of Guards, and Garrison of the City, being under Arms, were posted round the Castle, so as to secure all the Gates and Avenues; and Orders were sent, at the same Time, to all his Majesty's Ministers, Boyars, and Counsellors, to repair to the great Hall in the Castle, and to the Clergy to assemble in the Cathedral. Then the great Bell was toll'd, and the Prince was brought in as a Prisoner, without his Sword; and being carried into the Czar's Presence, who was standing in the Hall, in the midst of the great Men of his Kingdom, presented a Writing to his Majesty, containing a Confession of his Crime, and in Tears fell at his Feet. The Czar gave the Paper to Baron *Schaffirof*, his Vice-Chancellor, and afterwards raising his unhappy Son from the Ground, demanded of him what was his Desire? The Prince implor'd his Mercy, and begged he would

would save his Life. His Majesty granted his Request, but told him he had cut himself off from the Hopes of inheriting his Crown; that he must solemnly renounce the Succession, and acknowledge the same under his Hand; which he answer'd he was ready to perform. The Czar then expostulated with him upon his Disobedience, and ask'd him who were the Advisers of his late Escape? Upon which the Prince drew near and whisper'd him, and they went together into an adjoining Room, where it is supposed he named the Persons, which is the more probable, because soon after three Couriers were dispatched several Ways.

His Majesty and the Prince being returned into the Hall, the Prince signed an Instrument, setting forth, that finding himself unqualified for Government, he therefore disclaimed any Right of Succession to the Crown. Then several Articles, containing a long Deduction of the Causes of his Majesty's excluding his eldest Son from the Succession, were read aloud. This being done, the Ministers, Boyars, Officers, and others, who were present, swore upon the Gospel, and subscribed an Oath, of which several printed Copies had been prepared, importing, that the Czar having by his Letters declared that he had excluded from the Crown the Czarewitz *Alexis Petrovitz*, and had appointed his second Son the Prince-Royal *Peter Petrovitz* to succeed him; they own'd the Legality of this his Majesty's Decree, acknowledged the said *Peter Petrovitz* to be the undoubted Successor to the Crown, engaged to stand by him with their Lives against any that should dare to oppose him, and never would, under any Pretence whatsoever, adhere to Prince *Alexis Petrovitz*, or assist him in the Recovery of the said Succession. Then the Company repair'd to the Cathedral, where the Czar, in a long Speech, set forth his Son's undutiful Behaviour, and evil Conduct; after which, the Clergy swore and subscribed the Oath above-mentioned; this being ended, the Company was dismiss'd, and

his Majesty returned to his Apartment. The said Oath was afterwards administer'd to all the publick Officers, and other Inhabitants of *Moscow*, who were not present at the Solemnity; and Orders were sent for doing the like all over the *Russian* Empire, and his Majesty's Armies abroad. The Prince was kept under Confinement, and no Body admitted to him but the Heer *Tolssoy*, and such others as were appointed by the Czar.

The Oath which the excluded Prince took on the 14th of *March*, when he renounced his Pretensions to the Succession, was as follows:

‘ I The underwritten promise upon the Holy Gospel, that as I am, through the Crime which I have committed against his Czarish Majesty, my Lord and Father, excluded by my own Fault from the Succession to the Throne of *Russia*, as is set forth in an Instrument for that Purpose, so I acknowledge and own that Exclusion to be just, having deserved the same by my Fault and Indignity; and I oblige myself, and swear before the Almighty God, as the Sovereign Judge, to submit in every Thing to the Will of my Father, never to sue for his Succession, pretend or desire the same, nor to accept it upon any Pretence whatsoever. And I acknowledge my Brother the Czarewitz, *Peter Petrowitz*, for his lawful Successor. In Testimony whereof, I kiss the Holy Cross, and subscribe these Presents with my own Hand.

ALEX. PETROWITZ.

The Oath appointed to be taken by all Officers and Magistrates throughout the Empire, was to this Effect :

‘ **I** *A. B.* oblige myself, upon the Holy Gospel, that whereas our most gracious Sovereign the Czar, PETER ALENOWITZ, has caused circular Letters to be published thro’ his Empire, to notify that he has thought fit to exclude his Son Prince *Alexis Petrowitz* from the Throne of *Russia*, and to appoint for his Successor to the Crown his second Son the Prince Royal *Peter Petrowitz* : I therefore swear before the Almighty God, that I acknowledge this Order and Regulation made by his Majesty in Favour of the said Prince *Peter Petrowitz*, to be just and lawful, and entirely conform and submit myself to the same, promising always to acknowledge the said Prince Royal *Peter Petrowitz* for his lawful Successor, and stand by him on all Occasions, even to the Loss of my Life, against all such who shall presume to oppose the said Succession ; and that I shall never, upon any Pretence whatsoever, assist the Prince *Alexis Petrowitz*, nor in any manner whatsoever contribute to procure him the Succession. And this I solemnly promise by my Oath upon the Holy Gospel, kissing the Holy Cross thereupon.

On the 18th of *February*, at Midnight, the House of *M. Kiken*, [at *Petersburgh*] Commissioner of the Admiralty, and formerly the Czar’s great Favourite, was surrounded by fifty Grenadiers ; the Czar’s Displeasure being signified to him in his Bed, he was forthwith put in Irons, and carry’d away in such Haste that he hardly had Time to take Leave in a few Words of his Lady. The *Siberian Czarowitz*, and all the Servants of the *Russian Czarowitz* had the same Fate, and were most of them carried away fetter’d on the 22d of *February* to *Moscow*.

Orders were sent at this Time, to Prince *Menzikoff*, at *Petersburgh*, to seize the Knees *Wassili Woldemirowitz Dolgoruki*, and to send him with a strong Guard to *Moscow*. He was Lieutenant-General, Colonel of the Guards of *Preobrazinski*, Knight of the *Danish* Order of the Elephant, and, till that Time, General Inquisitor or Director of the Commission established for enquiring into the Mismanagement of the Czar's Revenues. Accordingly, Prince *Menzikoff* went to his House with a good Number of Soldiers, and notified to him his Disgrace, upon which the Prince *Dolgoruki* delivered his Sword to him with these few Words: *I have a good Conscience, and but one Head to lose*. He was carried to the Fortress the same Evening, and in the mean Time Prince *Menzikoff* went with the like Commission to the Senator *Peter Matuewitz Apraxin*, the Great Admiral's Brother, who was afterwards clear'd; to *Abraham Fedrowitz Lopuchin*, who, till then, was only confined to his House; to the Senator *Samarin*; to *Woinoff*; to *Woroff*; to *Ivan Wassilewitz Kikin*, *Alexander Kikin's* Brother; and to nine other Persons.

Prince *Menzikoff*, after this, according to Orders sent from the Czar to him and the whole Senate at *Petersburgh*, called together the Army, and the States of the Nobility, of the Burghers, and of the Peasants, to take the Oath of Fidelity to Prince *Peter Petrowitz*, the Czar's second Son, as next Heir to the Crown, which Ceremony was accordingly performed with great Pomp on the 9th of *March*, in the Church of the Holy Trinity.

The Grand Inquisition at *Moscow* still went on with their Proceedings against the Prisoners brought thither from *Petersburgh*. There were two different Processes, one of which related to the *Czarewitz*, and the other to the late *Czarina*, (who had been carried from the Monastery of *Susdal* to *Moscow*) and Major-General *Gleboff*; the former of which Processes was finished at *Petersburgh*, and the

the latter at *Moscow*. The Concourse of People at *Moscow* was extraordinary on this Occasion. The whole Court was there, with the greater Part of the Generals and other superior Officers, the Chiefs of the Clergy and Nobility of all *Russia*, had also been summoned thither. The Processions of the Clergy, who, at different Times, went in their Coaches, and with their whole Train to the Czar's Palace, to the Trial of their Brother the Bishop of *Rostoff*, made a noble Appearance: But what most deserved every one's Attention was, to hear the Czar himself, contrary to the Custom of his Predecessors, make Speeches to the Clergy and the great Men of his Dominions in the great Hall, representing to them and the People, with his natural Eloquence (in which Accomplishment, as well as that of expressing himself in Writing, he had no Equal among his Subjects) the Danger to which his Government had been exposed, and the Horror of the Crime of High-Treason. Upon which, *Dossifei* the Bishop of *Rostoff*, and *Pustinoi* the Confessor of the late Czarina, were divested of their Ecclesiastical Habit, and deliver'd up to the secular Arm.

On these Solemnities the Czar appear'd in his usual Dress, nor could any Body remember to have seen him in that extraordinary Pomp in which his Predecessors used to appear, he being naturally an Enemy to all Pageantry, and affecting a plain Dress and small Retinue. Even at the Time we are speaking of, in the midst of the Disturbances in his own Family, he had never above two or three Servants attending his Sled, in which he was carried up and down the City, both Night and Day, he being the most active Person in the Affair of the Inquisition, though the Direction of it was committed to the Privy-Counsellor M. *Tolstoy*, and the Senator *Mussin Puschkin*.

The Senator *Samarin* was acquitted; as was also Count *Peter Matuewitz Apraxin*, Senator, and formerly Governor of *Astracan*, because nothing could be made out against the latter, except his advancing
three

three Thousand Roubles to the Czarewitz, upon his Departure from *Petersburgh* for *Germany*, without knowing what were his Designs. But the Prince *Wassili Wolodimirowitz Dolgoruki*, Lieutenant-General, was order'd to be continued under close Confinement.

The principal Persons involved in this Grand Inquisition, were (besides the Czarewitz and *Kikin*) the former Czarina *Ottokesa Federowna*, of the Family of *Lopuchin*; her Father Confessor; *Maria Alexewna*, the Czar's Sister by the half Blood; the Czarewitz of *Siberia*; the Boyar *Stepan Gleboff*; *Dossifei*, Bishop of *Rosteff*; and the Treasurer of the Monastery of *Susdal*, of which the Boyar *Gleboff*, the Bishop *Dossifei*, *Kikin*, the Treasurer of the Monastery of *Susdal*, and another *Russian*, were executed in the publick Market-Place of the City of *Moscow*, on the 26th of *March*; *Gleboff* was empaled alive, and the others broke on the Wheel; the Corpse of the Bishop was burnt, but his Head, with those of *Kikin*, and the other *Russian*, were put on high Poles, on the four Corners of a high square Wall erected for that Purpose, and the empaled Corpse of *Gleboff* placed in the middle. *Baklanofsky*, the Czar's Page, and some Nuns, had their Sentence mitigated, but suffered severe corporal Punishments. This *Baklanofsky* had been the Spy of *Kikin*, even in the Czar's Closet, and was engaged by him, for a Bribe of twenty Thousand Roubles, to send him timely Notice, in case of any approaching Danger, that he might make his Escape; accordingly, when the Czar was writing with his own Hand an Order to Prince *Menzikeff* to send *Kikin* Prisoner to *Moscow*, *Baklanofsky*, who had stood behind the Czar all that Time, went directly to the Post-House, and dispatched an Express to *Kikin* at *Petersburgh*, who arrived there almost at the same Time with the Courier of the Czar, but yet too late. The Czar suspecting the sudden disappearing of the Page, sent into the City to enquire what he had been doing,

and

and so his Practices were discovered, and he was confined with the rest of the Prisoners.

Euphrosine, the Czarewitz's Mistress, was set at Liberty, not only in Consideration of the open Confessions she had made, but also because she made it appear, that by her Persuasions she had much contributed to the Czarewitz's Return. She was of very mean Extraction, being a *Finlandish* Captive; and she pretended that the Czarewitz forced her to comply with his Will with a Knife drawn, and threatening her with Death. It is maintained by several, that after her first Lying-in, and upon her conforming with the *Russian* Faith, she was actually married to the Czarewitz, when they were on their Journey, by a *Grecian* Priest, who was likewise seized at *Leipzig*, and carried Prisoner to *Russia*. This Circumstance appeared the more probable, because the said Mistress having obtained his Czarish Majesty's full Pardon, and having had several Jewels restored to her, with this Declaration, that if she had a Mind to marry, she should receive a handsome Portion out of the Czar's Treasury; she made this Answer: *I first yielded to one Man's Will out of Force, henceforth no other shall come near my Side.*

The Emperor of *Germany* being not at all satisfy'd with some Expressions used in the Czar's Manifesto before-mentioned, particularly where it says, That his Imperial Majesty had not only advised that unfortunate Prince to return Home, but even threatened to refuse him his Protection, if he did not comply with his Father's Desires; his Imperial Majesty notified to the Diet of the Empire, That the Czar had been misinform'd in that Point; and that he had never persuaded that Prince to return Home: On the contrary, that if he had intimated to his Imperial Majesty his Resolution not to do so, he would not have refused him his Protection, to which he had so just a Claim, both by the Law of Nations, and by his being so nearly related to him. The Emperor wrote, on this Occasion, the following Letter to his Czarish Majesty.

CHARLES

‘ **C**HARLES VI. *Emperor of the Romans, &c.*
 ‘ As we cultivate your Serenity’s Friendship
 ‘ with a particular Affection, and are desirous con-
 ‘ stantly to preserve it, as much as in us lies, the
 ‘ Proof of your grateful Dispositions towards us, on
 ‘ Account of the Favours bestowed by us on Prince
 ‘ *Alexis* your Son, as is more at large expressed in
 ‘ your Serenity’s Letter to us of the 21st of *March*
 ‘ last, was very acceptable to us: But we were af-
 ‘ fected in a different manner, when we saw the
 ‘ Manifesto published by your Serenity, in several
 ‘ Passages of which it is said, that Prince *Alexis*
 ‘ had been prevailed upon by our Persuasion and
 ‘ Exhortation, to return into his own Country;
 ‘ and even, as the said Manifesto insinuates, by our
 ‘ Threatening him in some manner; when the
 ‘ Truth is, that we so far referred the whole Mat-
 ‘ ter to his own Judgment, that as we did not
 ‘ hinder him when he was willing to go Home, so
 ‘ likewise, in case he had refused to return, he
 ‘ should, according to the Law of Nations, and
 ‘ out of the Regard due to a Prince related to us,
 ‘ have found farther Protection and Refuge at our
 ‘ Hands, till some Means or other had offer’d for
 ‘ his Reconciliation: We have thought fit to give
 ‘ your Serenity this genuine Information of our
 ‘ past Behaviour, and present Sentiments in this
 ‘ Affair; and so we wish you all Sort of Prospe-
 ‘ rity.

Laxemburgh, near Vienna,

May 8, 1718.

His Czarish Majesty arrived at *Petersburgh* from *Moscow*, on the 4th of *April*, and immediately went to the Dock, and ordered the Men of War newly built there to be launch’d as soon as the Harbour was clear of Ice. His Majesty having taken Umbrage at the Armament made by the States-General of the United Provinces, at this Time, for the
Baltick,

Baltick, as if it was designed to compel *Sweden* to make a separate Peace with the King of *Great-Britain*, Prince *Kurakin*, his Ambassador, presented a Memorial to the States on that Subject, and their High Mightinesses being highly dissatisfy'd with some Expressions used by that Minister, it was resolved that their Deputies for foreign Affairs should make the following Answer to the said Memorial, which was communicated accordingly, in a Conference which those Deputies had with the *Russian* Minister, viz. ' That their High Mightinesses are extremely surprized at the Contents of the said Writing, and at the Information given to his Czarish Majesty, as if the Sea Armament of the State was made at the Instance of a foreign Potentate, to cause a separate Peace to be made in his Favour with the Crown of *Sweden*, and to engage, at the same Time, a Member of the Grand Northern Alliance into a separate Peace. ' That their High Mightinesses are obliged to complain of those who have given his Czarish Majesty an Information so abusive, and they can judge no otherwise than that such Informations must have been given by Persons who are ill affected to their State, or are jealous of the good Understanding which their High Mightinesses have the good Fortune to cultivate with his Czarish Majesty, and endeavouring thereby to excite a Diffidence and Misunderstanding between them. ' That their High Mightinesses, to express their sincere Sentiments thereupon, are obliged to declare, that they have not been solicited by any foreign Potentate whatsoever, to make the said Naval Armament, but that the frequent Troubles that have been given to the Navigation and Commerce of their Subjects, and their just Complaints upon that Account; have given Occasion, and is the true Cause of this Armament; and therefore it is designed for no other Purpose than to protect their Trading Subjects, and to maintain the Freedom of their Navigation and Trade to the Places

‘ Places of the North and in the *Baltick* Sea; and
 ‘ not at all to draw off from the Alliance any of
 ‘ his Czarish Majesty’s Allies, nor to cause a sepa-
 ‘ rate Peace to be made for him, or for any other.
 ‘ That their High Mightinesses have hitherto ob-
 ‘ served an exact Neutrality in Relation to the
 ‘ War in the North, and their Intention is to con-
 ‘ tinue the same, but that the Damage they have
 ‘ hitherto suffered by that War, has made them
 ‘ always wish that it might be entirely terminated,
 ‘ the sooner the better by a general Peace; and
 ‘ that if their High Mightinesses could in any man-
 ‘ ner contribute to it with the Consent of all the
 ‘ Parties that are in the War, they should be ex-
 ‘ tremely willing to do it.

About the latter End of *May*, the first Conference was held between the Plenipotentiaries of the Czar and the King of *Sweden*, at *Aland*, to which Place the Treaty was transferred from *Abo*, by the Desire of Baron *Gortz*; but more of this in the next Volume.

The *Russian* Fleet was also, at the same Time, ready to put to Sea from *Cronslot*, which the Czar intended to command in Person; and an Interview was likewise intended between the King of *Prussia* and his Majesty at *Memel*, but when his *Prussian* Majesty had been two Days at that Town, in Expectation of seeing him, his Czarish Majesty was obliged to send an Excuse on Account of some important Affairs which required his Presence at *Petersburgh*.

End of the SECOND VOLUME.





I N D E X

TO THE

SECOND VOLUME

OF THE

LIFE of *PETER I.*

A.



BO, in *Finland*, that Town taken by the *Russians*,

Page 158.

Academy, a new one set up at *Petersburgh*, 194.

Achmet, Sultan of the *Turks*, violates the thirty Years Peace con-

cluded between the Czar, and the Sultan *Mustapha*, 97.

Adrianople, the *Turkish* Army assembled there, 95.

— the Vizier *Baltagi Mabomet* magnificently received there, by the Dissimulation of the Grand Signior, who deposes and banishes him to *Mitylene*, 133. *Adrianople*,

I N D E X.

- Adrianople*, the Grand Signior comes thither with his whole Court, 145.
- The King of *Sweden* carried Prisoner thither by the Grand Signior's Order, 171.
- Aland*, that Island taken by the *Russians*, 166.
- Alexander Bekewitz*, Prince, goes on an Expedition near the *Caspian-Sea*, to take Possession of the River *Daria*, 258.
- is murdered, *ibid.*
- Alfeyndel*, Major-General, and other Officers, with almost all the *Livonians*, upon the Surrender of *Riga*, put themselves under the Czar's Protection, 66.
- Ali-Coumourgy*, the Grand Signior's Favourite, finds Means to renew a Peace with the Czar, 146.
- Allard*, the *Muscovite* Lieutenant-General, goes into *Courland*, and takes the Place of the *Swedish* Troops that were recalled, 33.
- Altena*, that City burnt by Count *Steinbock*, 149.
- the King of *Denmark* arrives there, 208.
- the Czar there, 219.
- Alt-Rastadt*, the Treaty concluded there, no Shadow of Equity in it, 9.
- Ambassador of Persia*, his publick Entry into *Moscow*, 142, 143.
- Ambassadors of France and Russia* have a Dispute at *Constantinople*, about Precedence, 86.
- Amsterdam*, the Czar expects his Consort there, 223.
- the Czarina arrives there, *ibid.*
- the Czar comes again to that City, where the Czarina had impatiently waited for his Return, 237.
- the King of *Great-Britain*, *George I.* sends Admiral *Norris*, and Mr. *Whitworth*, to the Czar there, 247.
- Anne* Queen of *Great-Britain*, and other Potentates, offer their Advice to the King of *Sweden*, to make Peace, 116, 117.
- makes Satisfaction to the Czar for the Affront put upon his Ambassador at *London*, in the Year 1708, 40.
- shews a particular Regard to, and entertains, at her own Expence, two *Muscovite*.

I N D E X.

- White Noblemen, Relations of the Czar,* 42.
Anne her Letter, delivered to the Czar, by Mr. Whitworth, her Ambassador-Extraordinary, 53 to 58.
Anna Ioanowna, the Czar's Niece, married to the Duke of Courland, 61.
Anna Petroowna, Princess, one of the Czar's Daughters, a Match proposed between her and the Pretender, 256.
Anne, a Princess of that Name, born to the Czar, 167.
Andrew, St. Patron of the Russian Order, the Day of his Feast celebrated with much Pomp, 130.
 — on the Feast Day of that Saint the Czarina appears with a Collar of the new Order of St. Catharine, 179.
Antin, Duke de, his Palace at Petitbourg in France, the Czar entertained there, 239.
Apaka Taquin, Prince of the Calmuck Tartars, the Czar makes a Treaty with him, and hires 25,000 Men of him, 96.
Apraxin, Admiral, attends the Czar to Kolomski; and from thence to Moscow, 37.
Apraxin, comes before the Town of Wybourg, and takes it, 63.
 — detains several Swedish Prisoners, contrary to the Articles of Capitulation, by way of Reprisal for the like Practices of the Swedes, *ibid.*
 — sent to oversee the demolishing the Works of Taiganrog, 134.
 — obtains a great Victory over the Swedes at Sea, 159, 160.
 — called to an Account for Male-Practices, 180.
Apraxin, Count Peter Matuewitz, formerly Governor of Astracan, accused of Male-Practices, and acquitted, 274.
Archireje, the Russian Archbishop so called, 198.
Archimandrites, Russian Abbots, *ibid.*
Areskine, Dr. the Czar's Physician, writes a Letter to the Abbot Bignon, President of the Academy of Sciences at Paris, to desire his Master might be admitted a Member of that Society, 159.
Arnfeldt, General, advancing to support the Swedish Horse, begins the Battle of Pulkona, 159.
Arnfeldt,

I N D E X.

- Arnfeldt*, repulsed by the
Russians, 162.
- Arnsberg*, in the Isle of
Oesel, taken by the *Muscovites*, 69.
- Articles of Agreement between the Czar and Queen of *Great-Britain*, on Account of the Affront put upon his Ambassador in *London*, 59, 60.
- of Peace between the *Turks* and the Czar, 124, 125.
- of a new Treaty with the *Turks*, 135.
- of a Treaty between General *Steinbock* and the Administrator of *Holstein*, to admit the *Swedish* Troops into the Fortrefs of *Tonningen*, 151, 156.
- delivered, on the Part of the Czar, to the Magistrates of *Dantzick*, 203, 204.
- of the Capitulation of *Wismar*, 205, 206, 207.
- Atscherbi*, the Name of the Ambassador from the *Usbeck Tartars*, 175.
- Augustus*, King of *Poland*, confers with the Kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia*, 3.
- his Manifesto preceding his Return to *Poland*, 4, 24.
- Augustus*, his Circular Letter, *ibid.* 25, 26.
- his Interview with the Czar at *Thorn*, 30.
- a fine Horse presented by him, made use of by the Czar in his publick Entry into *Moscow*, 38.
- holds a Diet at *Warsaw*, 62.
- the Czar's firm Adherence to him, 106.
- his Troops before *Stralsund* joined by those of the Czar, 138.
- marches with his Troops towards *Gustrow*, which he surprizes, 140.
- seems inclined to a Cessation of Arms with the *Swedes*, 141.
- the Czar and the King of *Denmark*, both jealous of his Designs, *ibid.*
- sends, with the Republick of *Poland*, a solemn Embassy to the Grand Signior, 145.
- applies to his old Friend the Czar for Succour, 200.
- Austria*, the King of *Sweden* passes through that Country in his Way home, 171.
- Azoph*, the Czar gives Orders for the Defence of it, 95.
- Azoph*,

I N D E X.

Azoph, the *Turks* do great
Mischief in the Neigh-
bourhood of that Place,

101.

— Boundaries of that
City settled,

107.

— the Czar provides
for its Defence,

115.

— the Works of the
Town began to be de-
molished; but after-
wards a Stop put to it,

132.

— that Place surren-
der'd to the *Turks*, 133.

B.

B *Aklanofsky*, the Czar's
Page, suffers corpor-
al Punishment, for
having been a Spy,
in his Majesty's Ca-
binet, for *Kikin*, Treas-
urer of the Mona-
stery of *Susdal*,

276.

Balck, General, takes all
the *Swedish* Garrison in
Elbing,

62.

Baltagi Mahomet, Grand
Vizier, espouses the
King of *Sweden's* In-
terest, and endeavours
to render the *Russians*
odious,

85.

Barabaski, a Port of the
Cossacks, so called, 124.

Baur, General, has his
Regiment entirely car-
ry'd off by the *Starost*
Grudzinski,

143.

Baur, gathers a Body of
Russians, and surprizes
Grudzinski, as he had
been surprized, him-
self,

144.

— sent by the Czar to
attack a Body of *Swedes*;
at the Bridge of *Hol-
lingstedt*,

149.

— enters with a Body
of Troops into *Meck-
lembourgh*,

209.

Bebra, a Town in the
Circle of *Thuringia*,
burnt by the *Swedes*,

14.

Bekewitz, Prince *Alexan-
der*, sent by the Czar
on an Expedition to
the *Caspian-Sea*;

258.

— deceived, and put
to Death by the *Tar-
tars*,

ibid.

Bellegarde, the Marquis
de, Son of the Duke
d' Antin, waits upon
the Czar, in the room
of his Father, to do
the Honours of the
Royal Houses in *France*,

240.

Belt, the Czar passes by
that, in his Way to
Lubeck,

217.

Bender, the Czar com-
plains of the King of
Sweden's not being sent
from thence,

83.

— the Czar is inform-
ed that an Army is
forming there,

90.

Bender

I N D E X

- Bender*, a Guard placed on the Road from that Place to *Constantinople*, with Orders to intercept all Letters to the King of Sweden, 132.
- the famous Action there, 147.
- what M. *Fontenelle* says of that Action, 171.
- before the King of Sweden's Departure from thence, he had agreed upon a new Project with the *Porte*, to fall upon the Czar, 181.
- Bergo* made a Place of Arms by the Czar, 158.
- Berlin*, the Czar arrives there *incognito*, 139.
- the Czar comes there again, 249.
- Bialocerkiew*, in the *Ukraine*, some of the Swedish Party, after raising Contributions, &c. retire thither, 112.
- Bignon*, Abbot, President of the Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, receives a Letter from the Czar, desiring to be admitted a Member of that Society, 244.
- Black-Sea*, the *Turks* make extraordinary Preparations near it, 115.
- Blommensdorf*, Count *Steinbock*, the Swedish General, passes the *Ribnitz* at that Place, on Bridges thrown over in Haste, 140.
- Blüker*, M. returns from *Persia*, with Assays of Gold Sand, found in the River *Daria*, 260.
- Bog*, the River, 112.
- Borysthenes*, some of the King of Sweden's Party disperse his Manifesto along the Borders of that River, *ibid.*
- Bothnick Gulph*, a Body of Horse, from the Russian Army in *Finland*, go round it, to penetrate into the Northern Provinces of Sweden, 193.
- Boyle*, Mr. Secretary of State to the Queen of Great-Britain, his Letter to M. *Matueof*, the Russian Ambassador, 41, 42, 43.
- Brancovan*, Prince of *Wallachia*, holds a secret Correspondence with the Czar, 113.
- deceives him, 115.
- of which he makes a Merit to the Grand Signior, 121.
- Bremen*, it is thought that the King of Sweden had a Design of renewing the War, to recover that Duchy, 172.
- Bremen*,

I N D E X.

Bremen, that Duchy made over to his *Britannick* Majesty, as Elector of *Hanover*, 193.
British Squadron arrives in the Road of *Copenhagen*, 210.
Bruce, Lieutenant-General, and others, attack the *Swedes*, and drive them from their Intrenchments near the Passage of *Pulkona*, 160.
 — accused of Misconduct, but his Excuse for the same is allowed of, 180.
Brunswick, a Congress appointed there, comes to nothing, 161.
 — the King of *Sweden* ought to have sent an Envoy thither, 191.
Brunswick-Lunenburgh, the Czar passes through that Country for *Pyrmont*, 299.
Budziack - Tartars, their Sultan makes an Offer to subject himself and People to the Czar, but is rejected, 100.

C.

C *Almuck-Tartars*, fifty Thousand of them brought into the Field by *Apaka-Taquin*, 96.
 — a hundred Thousand of them under the

Dominions of the Czar, 243.
Caminieck, the *Turks* complain of the Czar's building a Fortrefs there against the Ingress and Egress of the *Crim*, 92.
Cantemir, Prince *Antiochus*, Ambassador in *Great-Britain*, 126.
Cantemir, Prince *Demetrius*, appointed Prince of *Walachia*, under the Title of that of *Moldavia*, 114.
 — revolts to the Czar, *ibid.*
 — joins him in *Moldavia*, and publishes a Declaration, shewing the Reasons for so doing, 119, 120, 121.
 — the Czar's great Generosity and strict Honour towards him, 125, 126.
 — is secured from the *Turks*, after the Battle of the *Pruth*, in the Czarina's Coach, *ibid.*
 — is a Refugee at the Court of *Petersburgh*, 182.
Carelsbad, the Czar goes to drink the Waters of that Place, 128.
Carelsroon, the King of *Sweden* continues there, ordering new Levies, 194.
Carelsroon,

I N D E X.

- Carelscroon*, the Swedish Fleet returns from thence, to take in Provisions, 211.
- Carelsloio*, the Russians force the Passage there, 158.
- Carlowitz*, at the Congress there, the Turk, by Persuasion and Artifice, drew off several Potentates from the Czar's Alliance, 99.
- the Czar religiously observes the Trucemade there, 108.
- Catharine*, St. that Order of Knighthood first instituted, 179.
- Catharine*, the Empress, thinks of an Expedient to preserve her Husband, when greatly distressed on the Banks of the River *Pruth*, 122.
- her Marriage publicly solemnized with the Czar at *Petersburgh*, 134.
- comes with the Czar and *Czarewitz* into *Pomerania*, where the Czar had several Conferences with the King of *Poland*, 138.
- her Pity to the *Finland* and *Swedish* Prisoners, 178.
- brought to Bed of a Son, 196.
- Catharine*, arrives at *Amsterdam*, 123.
- goes to the *Hague*, *ibid.*
- waits for the Czar at *Amsterdam*, 237.
- goes with him to see the Province of *Utrecht* and the Palace of *Loo*, 246.
- leaves *Holland*, *ibid.*
- goes with the Czar to *Berlin*, *ibid.*
- Catharine*, Princess, eldest Daughter of the Czar *John*, a Marriage concluded with her and the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, 202.
- Catharine-Hof*, the *Czarina* brought to bed of a Daughter there, and where the Czar continues two Days, 167.
- Cederhielm*, the King of *Sweden*'s Secretary sent by the Czar to the Senate of *Stockholm*, with very moderate Proposals for a Peace, 2.
- Chaillot*, the Czar goes to visit the late Queen of *England* there, 241.
- Cham* of *Tartary*, receives Presents from the King of *Sweden*, whose Cause he espouses, 86.
- makes a long Speech, and influences the *Porte* in his Favour, 87, 88.
- Cham*

I N D E X.

- Cham* of *Tartary*, at his
Instigation the *Porte*
declares War with
Russia, 104.
— takes up his Resi-
dence at a House of
Pleasure near *Constan-*
tinople, that he might
be often with the
Grand Signior, 133.
— being appointed to
conduct the King of
Sweden home, is order-
ed not to deliver the
Purses the *Grand Sig-*
nior sent to defray his
Expences till he was
ready to depart, 147.
— but being deceived
by him, and having
delivered them, is
forced to write to ex-
cuse himself to the
Grand Signior, *ibid.*
— is suspected by the
King of *Sweden* to be
in a Plot to deliver
him up to his Enemies,
ibid.
Charles VI. Emperor of
Germany writes a Letter
to the Czar, not being
satisfied with some Ex-
pressions in his Mani-
festo relating to the
Czarewitz Alexis, his
Son, 277.
Charles XII. King of *Swe-*
den, tho' much distres-
sed, rejects all Offers
of Peace, and still
maintains his Pride and
Obstinacy, 2.
Charles XII. has great
Hopes of being assisted
by the *Turks*, 81.
— his Cause warmly
espoused by the *Cham*
of *Crim-Tartary*, 86, 87.
— is advised by Queen
Anne of *Great-Britain*
and other Potentates,
to make Peace, 116.
117.
— but rejects their
Offers, *ibid.*, 118, 119.
— comes *incognito* into
the *Grand Vizier's*
Tent near the *Pruth*,
and complains of the
Peace he had made
with the Czar, 123.
— leaves the *Vizier*
with Disdain, and re-
turns to *Bender*, 124.
— endeavours to per-
suade the *Sultan*, that
the *Vizier* had betray-
ed the Interests of the
Ottoman Empire, 132.
— finds means, by the
help of one *Savari* a
Banker at *Bender*, to
convey a Letter to the
Sultan's own Hands,
ibid.
— is made acquainted
in form with the Peace
concluded between the
Porte and the Czar;
and being prepossessed
with an Opinion, that
the

I N D E X.

- the *English* and *Dutch* Ministers had chiefly brought it about, by their good Offices, calls them *officious* Mediators, 137.
- Charles XII. complains loudly against the *Russians* (tho' his Party had been the first Aggressor) for having pursued some *Cossacks* quite into the *Turkish* Territories, which inclines the *Sultan* once more to break his Treaty with the Czar, 144.
- Orders are sent him positively to depart the Grand Signior's Dominions, 145.
- he is encamped at *Varnitsa*, when the *Seraskier* of *Bender* comes to acquaint him with this Order, *ibid*, 146.
- demands where-withal to pay his Debts, &c. which having obtained, persists in his Resolution of continuing where he was, *ibid*, 147.
- deceives the Cham of *Tartary* and Bashaw of *Bender*, whom he supposes to be in a Conspiracy against him, *ibid*.
- Charles XII. will not obey the Grand Signior's Orders, from whence followed the famous Action of *Bender*, fully described by M. de *Voltaire*, *ibid*.
- returns to his own Dominions, 171.
- arrives at *Stralsund*, *ibid*.
- his Conduct towards the King of *Prussia*, draws new Enemies upon him, 182.
- insists upon the Sequestration of *Stetin* being taken off, 188.
- makes all possible Preparations to put his Fleet to Sea, *ibid*.
- driven entirely out of *Germany*, by the Loss of *Stralsund* and *Rugen*, and repasses the *Baltick Sea*, 200.
- retires out of *Norway* with his Troops to oppose the intended Descent in *Schonen*, 217.
- Charlotta - Christina - Sophia, a Princess of the House of *Wolfembuttel* married to the *Czarewicz*, 128.
- Chinese Empire, the Czar speaks in Praise of it, 177.
- China*,

I N D E X.

- Chiva*, the Residence of the *Can*, or *Cham*, of the *Usbeck-Tartars*, *ibid.*
- Choisi*, the Czar entertained there by the Princess Dowager of *Conti*, 239.
- Chourleuly Ali - Bashaw*, Grand Vizier, forsakes the King of *Sweden's* Interest, and espouses the Czar's, 81.
- is deposed, *ibid.*
- Christiana*, the Capital of *Norway*, the King of *Sweden* advances towards it with an Army of twenty Thousand Men, 209.
- Circassians*, two and twenty thousand of them employed against the *Dorowski* and *Norowski-Tartars*, who were on the Borders and occupied the Rampart of *Crimea*, 96.
- Clagny*, in *France*, the Czar goes to see that Castle, 240.
- Colyear Count*, Dutch Ambassador at *Constantinople*, 137.
- Conference*, *Porte de la*, in *Paris*, the Czar lands there, 239.
- Copenhagen*, the Rendezvous of the Czar and the King of *Denmark's* Troops and Vessels at that Place, 209.
- Cossacks*, some of them rebellious to the Czar, had joined the King of *Sweden*, 82, 83.
- the *Donski*, engaged by the *Tartars*, their Neighbours, to revolt from the Czar, 112.
- send an Embassy to *Petersburgh* to make their Submission and treat for Pardon, which is granted them, 182.
- Courland*, *Frederick William* Duke of, married to the Czar's Niece, 61.
- Courlanders* make Complaints to the Czar of the Contributions raised by his Generals, which he moderates, 36.
- Cracow*, a Town in *Poland*, King *Augustus* orders his Troops to march out of it, 13.
- Crassan*, the Swedish General, in *Poland*, retires with King *Stanislaus* to the Frontiers of *Pomerania*, on hearing of the Defeat of the King of *Sweden's* Army, 27.
- the Czar and the King of *Poland* insist upon having the Troops under him disbanded, or put in-

I N D E X:

- to the Service of the high Allies, 80.
- Greutz* and *Cruss*, Major-Generals, *Swedish* Prisoners, march in Procession at the Czar's Entry into *Moscow*, 38.
- Crim*, the *Turks* complain that some *Calmuks* under the *Muscovites* had penetrated into that Country, robbing and murdering twenty innocent Persons, and hostilely carrying off seventeen hundred Horses from thence, 93.
- Crim - Tartars*, some of them assist the *Cossacks* the Czar's rebellious Subjects, 83.
- Groissy*, Count *de*, his Arrival at *Berlin* to offer the Mediation of the *French* King to reconcile the Differences between the Kings of *Sweden* and *Prussia*, 192.
- Cronslot*, several Gallies and Barks built there, 162.
- the Czar's Fleets got together under that Fortrefs, 164.
- Grossen*, in *Silesia*, the Czar entertained there three Days by the Prince-Royal of *Prussia*, 130.
- Cruys*, Vice-Admiral, one of the Bridegroom's Fathers at the Marriage of the Czar and *Czarina Catharine*, 135.
- Cuban-Tartars* assists the *Cossacks* against the Czar, 83.
- make an Irruption into the Kingdom of *Casan*, 199.
- fresh alarms from them, 257.
- Cujavia*, Bishop of, and others sign an Article for a longer Suspension of Arms on the Part of the King of *Poland*, 222.
- Gulm*, Bishop of, and others attend at the Marriage of the Duke of *Mecklenbourg* with the Czar's Niece, 202, 203.
- Cyr*, St. the Czar goes thither, to see *Madam de Maintenon*, 240.
- Czarewitz*, *Alexis*, designed for the Princess of *Wolfembuttel*, whom he afterwards married, 62, 129.
- a Son born to him, 194.
- his Consort dies, 196.
- his ill Usage of her, *Ibid.*
- brought to *Moscow*, by the *Sieur Tolstoy*, 270.
- Czarewitz*,

I N D E X.

Czarewitz, renounces the Succession to the Crown by Oath, 271.

Czarewitz of *Siberia*, seized at *Petersburgh*, 273.

Czeremetoff, the Velt-Mareschal, arrives with 52,000 Men near *Poloczka*, 32.

— answers the Complaints of Count *Stromberg*, in Writing, 34, 35, 36.

— resolves to reduce *Riga*, 63.

— gives Notice to the Governor of *Riga* of the Surrender of *Elbing*, 64.

— his Declaration on Account of not performing the Articles of Capitulation on the Surrender of *Riga*, 66 to 69.

— he receives an Addition of 30,000 Men, from the Czar's new Levies, 96.

— sent with Part of the *Russian* Troops into the *Ukrain*, 137.

— publishes an *Universal*, wherein he complains of the Conduct of the Nobles of the Palatinates of *Cracow*, *Siradia*, and *Calish*, who had joined the Enemies of his Master, 144.

Czeremetoff, is ordered to go with twelve or fifteen thousand Men into *Pomerania*, 193.

— has the Command of eight thousand Men for the intended Descent into *Schonen*, 209.

— receives Orders from the Czar to evacuate *Poland* with his Troops, 248, 249.

Czeremetoff, Count, one of the *Russian* Hostages obliged to depart *Constantinople*, 132.

— one of the Czar's Plenipotentiaries in *Turky*, promises that his Master's Troops shall evacuate *Poland*, 146.

Czeredejew, M. one of the Envoys at the *Porte*, who concluded a thirty Years Peace with the *Turks*, 100.

Czernioff, the Czar sends Troops to reinforce those that were in that Fortress, 182.

D.

D *Amgarten*, a Line cast up to that Place and *Triptee* from *Gripswald*, 139.

— General *Steinbock* passes the Morass formed by the *Ribnitz* within

I N D E X.

- within a Quarter of a
League of that Place,
140.
- Danes and Saxons* joined
by Prince *Menzikoff* in
Pomerania, 138.
- and *Hanoverians*
keep *Wismar* block'd
up, 194.
- Danish* Army beats the
Swedes at *Gadebusch*,
140.
- Dantzick*, the City of,
pays Prince *Menzikoff*
an hundred and fifty
thousand Crowns Con-
tribution Money, 161.
- the Czar's Niece
married there to the
Duke of *Meclenbourg*,
202.
- the King of *Poland*
meets the Czar there,
ibid.
- Danube*, the Czar comes
too late to hinder the
Turks passing that Ri-
ver, 115.
- sends to dispute their
Passage, 121.
- the *Turk* orders his
Troops to repair to
Iffaktze on that River,
133.
- D' Ayrolles*, M. Secretary
to the Queen of *Great-
Britain* at the *Hague*,
his Letter to the *Russi-
an* Ambassador, 46,
47, 48.
- Declaration* sent to all
the Czar's Ministers
in the Courts of *Eur-
ope* on Account of the
Turkish War, 109 to
111.
- Declaration* of Prince *Can-
temir* on his joining
the Czar, 119 to 121.
- Delisle*, *Monf. de*, the
Geographer, at *Paris*,
the Czar discourfes
much with him, 242.
- Demirtash*, the King of
Sweden sent back to
that Village, 171.
- Dermark*, the Czar stays
three Months there,
210.
- Denmark*, King of, pays
a Visit to King *August-
tus* at *Dresden*, and
goes with him to the
King of *Prussia* at *Ber-
lin*, 3.
- considerable Re-
mittances made to him
by the Czar, to push
on the War against
Sweden, 37.
- exhorted to keep a
watchful Eye upon the
Swedes, 139.
- advances with his
Army as far as *Gade-
busch*, 141.
- agrees with the
Czar to open the next
Campaign with the
Attack of *Rugen*, and
the Siege of *Stralsund*,
142.
- Denmark*,

I N D E X,

- Denmark*, King of, on what he founded his Pretensions of keeping the Country of *Holstein*, 150.
- seizes the Duchy of *Sleswick*, 151.
- makes the Czar a Present of the great Globe of *Gottorp*, 181.
- is Godfather to the Czar's new born Son, *Peter Petrowitz*, 196.
- has an Interview with the Czar at the Gardens of *Ham* and *Horn* near *Hambourg*, 208.
- meets the Czar and conducts him into *Copenhagen*, 210.
- holds a Council of War with the Czar, wherein the Dispositions were concerted for the Descent in *Schoonen*, 209.
- publishes a Manifesto complaining of the Czar's turning aside that Project to his great Detriment, 212 to 216.
- Dennis*, St. the Czar goes to see the Church, Treasury, &c. there, 240.
- Desalleurs*, M. the *French* Ambassador at the *Porte*, with the Cham of *Tartary* and the *Swedish* Party, prevail upon the *Turks* to declare War with the Czar, 144.
- Desalleurs*, delivers a Letter from the King of *Sweden* to the Grand Signior, which makes a new Face of Affairs in that Prince's Favour, 133.
- Dimotica*, the King of *Sweden* confined for some Time in that Borough, 171.
- Dolgoruki*, Prince, attends the Czar at *Lublin*, 27.
- rides on the left Hand of the Czar at his Triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, 38.
- and M. *Dazow* are employed by the Czar to reconcile *Poland* and their King, 200.
- Mediator in the Name of the Czar between the *Poles* and the *Saxons*, brings them to agree to an Armistice, 220.
- he, and the other *Russian* Ministers make an Agreement to terminate all Differences between the Czar and the City of *Dantzick*, 249.
- Dolgoruki*, the *Knees Wassili Wlodimirowitz*, seized

I N D E X.

- seized at *Petersburgh*, 274.
Drofszen, General of the *Cossacks*, his Treachery to the Czar *Theodore*, 98.
Dorpt, the Czar goes thither, 36.
Dessisei, Bishop of *Rostoff* deprived of the Ecclesiastical Habit, 275.
 — executed publicly in the Market-place at *Moscow*, 276.
Dreux, Marquis de, conducts the Merchants and Eschevins of *Paris*, to wait upon his Czarish Majesty, 238.
Dunamuden-Skantz taken by the *Muscovites*, 69.
During, Colonel, attends the King of *Sweden* on his Journey home from *Turkey*, 171.

E.

- E** *Ast-India Company* the Czar visits their Store-houses at *Amsterdam*, 223.
Edicul, the Prison of the seven Towers at *Constantinople*, so called, 97.
Effendis, Men of the Mahometan Law, 145.
Ehrenschild, the Swedish Rear-Admiral, summoned to surrender to Admiral *Apraxin*, but refuses, 166.
Elbe, the Czar comes by that River to *Ham-bourg* and *Altena*, 219.
Elbing, in Polish *Prussia*, taken by the Czar, 61.
Elizabeth-Sophia of *Brandenbourg*, Sister of *Frederick I.* King of *Prussia*, Mother to the Duke of *Courland*, who married the present Czarina *Joanowna*, 61.
England, Queen of, See *Anne*.
English and *Dutch* Ministers support the *Russian* Hostages in their Conferences with the Grand Vizier, 133.
Ermeland, the Bishop of, attends at the Ceremony of the Duke of *Mecklenbourg's* Marriage, 202.
Euphrosine, the *Czarewits's* Mistress set at Liberty on Account of her free Confession, &c. 277.
 — said to have been married to the *Czarewits*, *ibid.*
Eyder, the River, *Steinbock* repasses it, 149.

F.

- F** *Eriol*, Marquis de, the *French* Ambassador admitted to an Audience at the *Porte* before

I N D E X.

- before the Ambassador of *Russia*, 86.
- Finland*, the Czar makes a Descent into that Country, 157, 158,
- Flemming*, General, attends the King of *Poland* at the Marriage of the Dukes of *Mec-klenbourg*, 202.
- refuses to sign the Treaty for a Suspension of Arms between the King of *Poland*, and the Confederates of the Republic, till some Alterations are made in it, 222.
- Fontenelle* Mons. de, what he says of the King of *Sweden's* Behaviour at *Bender*, 171.
- France*, the Czar offers a Succour of twenty-five thousand Men against that Crown on Condition of his being admitted a Prince of the Empire, 131.
- the King of, pays a Visit to the Czar at the *Hotel de Lesdiguieres*, 238.
- Frederick-William*, Duke of *Courland*, married to the Czar's Neice, 61.
- Frederickstadt* taken by the Czar, 149.
- the Czar views that Town, 217.
- Frizeland*, a Boor of, the Czar, dressed in that Character at a Wedding celebrated in *Masquerade*, 184.
- Funck*, the King of *Sweden's* Minister at the *Porte*, 115.
- G.
- Gadebusch*, the Battle there, 141.
- Galga*, Sultan, the Title of the Cham of *Tartary's* eldest Son, 112.
- Galliczin*, the Prince, harasses the *Swedes* in *Finland*, 162.
- surprizes the Fortrefs of *Ula*, 194.
- Gardi*, Count de *la*, left, by the King of *Sweden*, to guard the Pass of *Swinfund*, 217.
- Georgia*, *Militetsky*, the deposed Prince of that Country, dies at *Moscow*, 182.
- German* Empire, thought to be in Danger from the Power of the Czar, 184.
- Gleboff*, Major-General, Process against him at *Moscow*, 276.
- Gobelins*, in *Paris*, the Czar goes to see the Tapestry Works there, 242.
- O.
- O.5* *Gollowin*,

I N D E X.

Gollowin, Prince, comes to *Lublin*, to attend the Czar, 27.
 — *Mr. Whitworth*, the *British* Ambassador, makes an End with him and other of the Czar's Ministers, of the Affair concerning the *Russian* Ambassador's being arrested in *London*, 59.
 — at the Battle of *Pul-kona*, 159.
Golofskin, Count, attends the *Persian* Ambassador in a Snow to *Gron-slot*, when they had like to have been cast away, 175, 176.
Goltz, General, has some Regiments sent by the Czar to join him in *Poland*, 26.
 — waits on the Czar at *Lublin*, 27.
Gertz, Baron, some Intrigues of his discovered in *England*, 224.
Gotland, the Czar sails thither, to shut up the Passage between *Stockholm* and *Pomerania*, 193.
Grotkufen, the King of *Sweden's* Treasurer, 147.
Grudzinski, the Starost makes an Irruption into *Poland* with 4000 *Cossacks*, &c. 143.

Grudzinski, carries off an entire Regiment, *ibid.*
 — is surprized and put to Flight, 144.
Gyllemburg, Count, put under Arrest at *London*, 224.

H.

H *Ague*, the Czar and Czarina come thither, 223.
Hambourg, the Czar passes thro' that City, 209.
 — comes thither again, 219.
Ham and *Horn* near *Hambourg*, Gardens there prepared for an Interview between the Czar and King of *Denmark*, 208.
Hanover, the Czar goes thither, 157.
Harbourgh, the Czar lyes there, 209.
Hassan-Bashaw, sends the Key of *Azoph*, by an Express to the *Porte*, on that Town's being surrendered, according to Treaty to the *Turks*, 134.
Havelberg, the Czar comes there, 218.
Helsingfos, *Russian* Troops land there, 158.
Hesse-Cassel, Landgrave of, lends his Forces to preserve the Peace of

I N D E X.

- of *Lower-Saxony*, &c. 172, 173.
- Hesse-Cassal*, the hereditary Prince, his Son married to the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora* the present Queen of Sweden, 173.
- offers to mediate between the Kings of Sweden and Prussia, 187.
- Hierasus*, the River now called *Pruth*, 121.
- Holfstein*, on what Account that Country was taken from *Charles-Frederick*, 150.
- put under Sequestration, 151.
- the Administrator thereof, his Treaty with General *Steinbeck*, *ibid.* to 156.
- Hemspetch*, Count de, Governor of *Namur*, his Reception of the Czar, 245.
- attends the Czar to see a Combat of Lances on the *Sambre*, and to view the Fortifications of *Namur*, 246.
- J.
- Agusinsky*, General, sent to invite the Company to the Czar's Wedding with *Catharine*, 134.
- Janus*, Colonel, sent, by the Czar, to dispute the Passage of the *Danube* with the *Turks*, 121.
- Jazy*, the Capital of *Moldavia*, 119.
- the Czar, waits there three Days, 121.
- Jefferies*, Mr. the Queen of Great-Britain's Minister, his Memorial presented to the King of Sweden, 115, to 117.
- Fernegan*, Mr. an English Roman Catholick, with the Duke of *Ormond* at *Mittaw*, in *Courland*, 256.
- Jews* sent for, by the King of Sweden, from *Bohemia*, to purchase Goods for a quarter of their Value, in *Saxony*, 16.
- Indostan*, 177.
- Ingria*, the Czar insists on keeping that Province, in the Proposals he made for Peace, 2.
- the *Terra Firma* of *Ingria* divided from *Petersburgh* by the *Neua*, 177.
- Iffaktze*, on the *Danube*, the Grand Signior's Troops encamped there, 133.
- Jesuf-*

I N D E X.

Jusaf-Basbaw appointed
Grand Vizier. 133.

Jutland, General *Steinbock*
there, 150.

Izum, the *Tartars* ra-
vage the Country a-
bout that Town, 112.

K.

K *Ameke*, M. sent by
the King of *Prussia*
to the Czar at *Carelsbad*,
128.

Kexholm, taken by the
Muscovites, 69.

Keyserling, the *Sieur*,
Envoy of the King
of *Prussia* waits on
the Czar at *Marienwer-*
der, 32.

Kikin, M. President of
the Admiralty his
Conduct enquired into,
180.

— arrested, and put
in Irons at his House
in *Petersburgh*, 273.

Kikin, *Juan Waffilewitz*
likewise seized,

Kiogerbocht, the united
Fleets of the *English*,
Dutch, *Danes*, and *Rus-*
sians come to an An-
chor there, 211.

Kiozw, the Czar falls ill
there, 3.

— the Czar reinforces
the Troops in that
Fortress, 182.

Kolomski, a Country Seat

of the Czar's about
five Miles from *Mos-*
cow, 37.

Koningsberg, the Czar
goes thither to review
some Vessels, and meets
the *Persian* Ambassa-
dor, 203.

Korsakoff, Vice - Gover-
nor of *Petersburgh* call-
ed to Account for his
Conduct, 180.

Kurakin, Prince, the Czar
and Czarina, at his
House, at the *Hague*,
receive the Compli-
ments of the States of
Holland, 223.

L.

L *Eipsick*, the Czar sets
out for that Town,
139.

Lescinsky, see *Stanistaus*.

Lefdiguieres, the Hotel de,
at *Paris*, his Czarish
Majesty lodged there,
237.

— the young King of
France pays him a Visit
there, 238.

Leuwenhaupt, General,
Prisoner in *Russia*, at-
tends the Czar's pub-
lick Entry into *Mos-*
cow, 38.

Lewis XIV. of *France*,
the Czar much irrita-
ted by him, 131.

Lewis-

I N D E X

**Lewis-Rodolphus, Duke of Brunswick-Wolfenbüt-
tel, Father to the Princess married to
the Czarewitz Alexis,**

Lilie, the Swedish Vice-Admiral, 164:

Livonia, the Czar Master
of that whole Pro-
vince; 71, 131.

Livonians, almost all of them put themselves under the Protection of the Czar, 66.

Lower-Saxony, the King
of Sweden's Design of
renewing the War
there, 172.

— this Country being in Danger, the King of Great-Britain, as Elector of Hanover, takes Measures with the Kings of Prussia and Denmark to preserve it, 193.

Lubeck, Prince Christian-Augustus Bishop of, appointed Administrator of *Holstein*, 150.

— the Czar and Czarina come to that City,

Lubekker, General, in Finland, retires to Abo, 158.

Lublin, the Czar arrives
there, 27.

M.

M *Adame of France;*
the Czar visits
her, . . . 239.

Maintenon, Madame de,
the Czar pays her a
Visit at St. Cyr, 240.

Maliwoloda, on the Ukrain, 112.

Mamanof, M. Athanasius de Dimitre of, attends Mr. Whitworth the Queen of Great-Britain's Ambassador, 49.

Manifesto, of Augustus King of Poland, published before his Return into that Country, 4 to 24.

— of the *Turks* declaring War against *Russia*, 91 to 95.

— of the Czar against
the *Turks*, 96 to 109.

Murielwerder, the Czar
and the King of Prussia
meet there, 32.

Marly, the Czar visits
that Place, 240.

*Matueof M. the Ambaf-
fador of Ruffia in Hol-
land, his Answer to
Secretary Boyle's Let-
ter,* 43 to 46.

— his Answer to Mr.
D' Ayrolle's Letter, 48,
49.

Matueof, Mr. Artemon
Sergiciewicz de, Fäther
of the Ambassador,
his

I N D E X.

- his Services to the Czar's Father and Grandfather commended, 60.
- Maurocordato*, *Nicholaus*, Hospodar of *Moldavia*, deposed, 114.
- Mazarin*, Cardinal, the College of four Nations in *France* founded by him, 241.
- Mazeppa*, the deposed Hettman of the *Cossacks*, a Refugee at *Constantinople*, demanded by the Czar to be delivered up to him, 81.
- dies very old in *Turky*, 81.
- Mecklenbourg*, that whole Duchy put under Contribution, 140.
- Duke of, married to the Czar's Niece, 202.
- a Project formed for putting him in Possession of *Wismar*, 205.
- none of the Czar's Forces in that Country suffered to be at the Siege of *Wismar*, 218.
- the Czar promises to withdraw his Troops from thence, 247.
- Memorial*, of the Czar's Minister in *England*, 224 to 231.
- Menzikoff*, Prince attends the Czar at *Lublin*, 27.
- Menzikoff*, at *Marienwerder*, 32.
- commands the Troops in chief in *Courland*, 33.
- comes to the Czar at *Moscow*, 37.
- attends him in his Publick Entry, 38.
- commands his Forces by Sea and Land in *Livonia*, *Ingria* and *Finland*, 95.
- carries the Marshal's Staff at the Czar's Marriage with *Catharine*, 135.
- goes into *Pomerania*, 138.
- He, and Prince *Karukin*, &c. have several Conferences at *Gripswalde* with Count *Flemming*, 139.
- has a great Share in the Victory of *Pulkona*, 160.
- keeps *Stetin* block'd up, *ibid.*
- forces the City of *Hambourg* to pay Contribution, 161.
- Menzikoff* Prince, called to Account for his Conduct by the *Grand Inquisition*, established to examine certain Lords and others, said to have defrauded the Czar, 180.
- Menzikoff*,

I N D E X.

- Menzikoff* his Excuse admitted, but is punished in his Purse, *ibid.*
- the Garrison of *Stetin* capitulate with him, 185, 186.
- orders sent to him to seize the Knees *Wassili Wolodimirowitz Dolgoruki*,
- calls together the Army, the States of the Nobility, Burghers and Peasants, to take the Oath of Fidelity to Prince *Peter Petrowitz*, 274.
- Mercovi*, a small Fort in the *Ukrain* taken by the Cham of *Tartary*, 112.
- Meudon*, the Czar regaled there by the Regent of *France*, 239.
- Meyerfeldt*, Major-General, a Prisoner in *Russia*, enlarged by the Czar, and sent with Proposals of Peace to the King of *Sweden*, his Master, 2.
- Governor of *Swedisch Pomerania*, will not consent to the *Sequestration* of *Stetin* and *Wismar*, 185.
- joins with the Court of *Holstein-Gottorp*, to make pressing Instances to the King of *Prussia* to take the *Sequestration* upon himself, 186.
- Mezetz*, a Frontier Place of *Persia*, 259.
- Michael*, Prince, eldest Son of Prince *Galiczin*, leads the Procession of the Czar's publick Entry into *Moscow*, 37.
- Militetski*, Prince of, *Georgia*, a Refugee at the Czar's Court, dies at *Moscow*, 182.
- Mittaw*, the Czar arrives there, 36.
- the Duke of *Ormond* there, 256.
- Mitylene*, the Grand Vizier *Baltagi Mahomet* banished thither, 133.
- Mogul*, the Great, an Account of his Government, and the odd Way of obtaining it, 177.
- Monbijoux*, a House of the King of *Prussia*, the Czar and Czarina lodged there, 249.
- Moscow*, a great Fire in the Neighbourhood of that City, 37.
- the Czar's publick Entry there, *ibid.*
- great Rejoicings there for several Days on Account of the Czar's Victories and Return, 40.
- the *British* Ambassador's publick Entry there, 49.
- Moscow*,

I N D E X.

Moscow, one third Part
of that City burnt to
the Ground, 138.

— the *Perſian* Ambaſ-
ſador makes his pub-
lick Entry there. 142.

— the Czar engages
the Czarina Dowager
to leave that City with
her Daughters, and
live at *Petersburgh*, 179.

— the *Czarewitz*,
brought by the *Sieur*
Tolſtoy into that City,
270.

— the Inhabitants of
that City ſubſcribe an
Oath, acknowledging
Peter Petrowitz, the
Czar's ſecond Son un-
doubted Succeſſor to
the Crown, 272.

Motraye, *M. de la*, what
he ſays of the Influence
of the *Britiſh* Miniſter
at the *Porte*, 137.

Muſti, at *Conſtantinople*
conſulted to know if
it was lawful by the
Alcoran to declare War
with *Ruſſia*, 88.

— his Answer, *ibid.*

N.

N *Amurè*, the Czar
arrives there, 245.

Naraskin, *M. Gentleman*
of the Bed - Chamber
receives *Mr. Whit-*
worth Ambaſſador at

the Foot of the Stair-
caſe, 50.

Narwa, the Czar gives
Orders for forming
Magazines in that
Town, 36.

Natalia, a Princeſs, Daugh-
ter of the *Czarewitz*
Alexis born, 178.

Negropont, the Grand Vi-
zier *Numan Coſprogly*,
banished to his Go-
vernment there, 82.

Neiſter, the River, the
Ruſſian Troops on the
Banks of it, 112.

— the Czar paſſes over
it, 119.

Neutrality, a Project for
one in the Empire,
ſigned at the *Hague*,
71 to 76.

— the Czar's Decla-
ration concerning it,
77 to 79.

— Envoy of *Sweden's*
Declaration and Re-
marks thereon, *ibid* &
80.

— King of *Sweden* un-
accountably proteſts
againſt it, tho' calcu-
lated for his Intereſt,
ibid & 81.

Niemiroaw, *Potocky* and
Sultan *Galga* penetrate
as far as that Town,
112.

Norris, Sir *John*, in the
Baltick, 211.
Norris,

I N D E X.

- Norris*, Sir *John*, sent by the King of Great-Britain, with Mr. *Whitworth*, to wait on the Czar at *Amsterdam*, 247.
- Nostitz*, Major-General, his brave Enterprize upon *Elbing*, 61, 62.
- Nôtre-Dame*, the Czar has a Prospect of *Paris* from the Towers of that Church, 242.
- Numan Couprougly*, Grand Vizier, at *Constantinople* during his short Administration, determined the Grand Signior to assist *Charles XII.* 82.
- Nyflot*, a Fortrefs in *Saxolaxia*, 163.
- a Visit to the Czar at *Paris*, 237.
- Orleans*, the Czar waits on him at the Palace-Royal, 238.
- Orlick*, the *Cossacks* of, 112.
- Ormond*, Duke of, 256.

P.

- P** *Almquist* M. the Minister of *Sweden* consents to the Act of Neutrality at the *Hague*, 80.
- Paris*, the Czar arrives there, 237.
- Pene*, the River, 189.
- Perevoloczna*, the Prisoners, made at the Surrender there, march in the Procession of the Czar's triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, 37.
- Pernau*, taken by the *Muscovites*, 69.
- Peter I.* makes offers of Peace to *Sweden*, 1, 2.
- falls sick at *Kiow*, 3.
- sends Troops into *Poland*, and others to block up *Riga*, 26.
- goes to *Lublin*, 27.
- publishes a Declaration, summoning the *Poles* to unite with the Republick and their lawful King, *ibid*, 28, 29.
- Peter*
- O** *Ckzakow*, the Czar gives Orders that his Troops should not approach that Place, when the King of *Sweden* was there, that he might not offend the *Turks*, 102.
- Oder*, the River, passed by King *Augustus* in his Way to *Tborn*, 29.
- Oginski*, Velt-Mareschal of *Lithuania*, arrives at *Lublin*, 27.
- Orleans*, the Duke of, pays

I N D E X.

Peter I. meets King Augustus at Thorn, 30.
 — visits every Part of the City on Foot, 32.
 — leaves *Thorn* to go and meet the King of *Prussia* at *Marienwerder*, *ibid.*
 — goes to *Mittau*, *ibid.*
 — hears the Complaints of the *Courlanders*, and lessens the Contributions levied upon them, 36.
 — goes to *Riga*, *ibid.*
 — from thence thro' *Livonia* to *Dorpt* and *Petersburgh*, *ibid.*
 — makes large Remittances to the King of *Denmark* to carry on the War, 37.
 — enters *Moscow* in Triumph, *ibid.*, 38.
 — an Excuse for his leading the *Swedish* Prisoners to grace his Triumph, 39.
 — causes great Rejoicings to be made there, *ibid.*
 — makes publick the Satisfaction he had received from the Queen of *Great-Britain* for the Affront offered his Ambassador at *London*, 40.
 — His Answer to the Queen's Letter, 58.

Peter I. marries his Neice to the Duke of Courland, 61.
 — receives an Account of the taking of *Elbing*, *ibid.*
 — undertakes to penetrate into the great Duchy of *Finland*, and to that End besieges *Wybourg*, 63.
 — makes himself Master of all *Livonia*, 69.
 — published a Proclamation to encourage Trade and Navigation, 70.
 — writes to the *Grand Signior*, complaining of the Countenance he gave the King of *Sweden*, 82 to 85.
 — writes another Letter to press the *Grand Signior* to send away the King of *Sweden* with a moderate Guard, 89 to 91.
 — prepares for War with the *Turks*, and sets out to *Moscow* to attend his new Levies, 95.
 — publishes a Manifesto against the *Turks*, 96 to 109.
 — arrives at *Soroka* with all his Court, 119.
 — and is joined by Prince *Cantemir*, *ibid.*
Peter

I N D E X.

Peter I. waits three Days
 at *Fazy* for the Pro-
 visions promised him
 by *Brancovan*, but finds
 himself deceived, 121.
 — sends Colonel *Fa-*
mus, but too late, to
 dispute the Passage of
 the *Turks* over the *Da-*
nube, *ibid.*, 122.
 — is drove to great
 Straits, and gives him-
 self over for lost, but
 is preserved by the
Czarina Catharine, *ibid.*
 — concludes a Peace
 with the *Turks*, 125.
 — will not forfeit his
 Honour, by delivering
 up Prince *Cantemir* to
 the *Turks*, *ibid.*
 — goes towards his
 own Dominions, 128.
 — comes to *Warsaw*,
Elbing, *Carelsbad*, and
Dresden, *ibid.*
 — from thence to *Tar-*
gau to celebrate the
 Marriage of his Son
 and Princess of *Wolfem-*
büttel, *ibid.*
 — goes into *Silesia*,
 130.
 — arrives at *Thorn* and
Elbing, *ibid.*
 — his Reception at
Riga, *ibid.*
 — goes from thence to
Revel, and afterwards
 to *Petersburgh*, 131.
 — desires to be admit-

ted a Prince of the Em-
 pire, *ibid.*
Peter I. sends Orders for
 the Surrender of *Azoph*
 to the *Turks*, 133.
 — his Marriage with
Catharine publicly so-
 lemnized at *Petersburgh*,
 134.
 — is married in the
 Habit of an Admiral,
 135.
 — has several Con-
 ferences with the King
 of *Poland* in *Pomerania*,
 138.
 — arrives at *Berlin*,
 and makes a Visit to
 the King of *Prussia*,
 139.
 — agrees with the
 King of *Denmark* upon
 the Operations of the
 next Campaign, 142.
 — is much concerned
 to see the Ruins of *Al-*
tana, lately burnt by
 the *Swedes*, and distri-
 butes a thousand *Rou-*
bles among the unfor-
 tunate Citizens, 149.
 — sends General *Baur*
 to attack the *Swedes* at
 the Bridge of *Holling-*
stadt, *ibid.*
 — takes *Frederickstadt*,
 150.
 — returns to his own
 Dominions by the Way
 of *Stade* and *Hanover*,
 157.
Peter I.

I N D E X.

- Peter I.* makes a Descent into *Finland*, 157.
 — takes *Abo*, 158.
 — returns to *Petersburgh*, 159.
 — causes a thousand Families to come from *Moscow* and settle in that City, 162.
 — endeavors to remove the Trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburgh*, *ibid.*
 — makes a triumphant Entry into *Petersburgh*, 167, 168.
 — makes a Speech, on board a Ship he went to see launched, to some of the old *Russians* that sat about him, 169, 170.
 — his great Qualities and Endowments, 171.
 — greatly augments his Fleet, 173.
 — makes an Order relating to the fair Sex, 174.
 — gives Audience to the Ambassador of the Can of the *Usbeck Tartars*, *ibid.*
 — invites him on board a Ship, 175.
 — asks him several Questions relating to his Country, 176.
 — gives Orders concerning the Fortifications and other Buildings at *Petersburgh*, 178.
Peter I. establishes a Grand Inquisition to examine into the several Frauds committed by certain great Men in *Russia*, 180.
 — sends to *Pillau* near *Koningsberg* for the great Globe of *Gottorp*, 181.
 — sends fresh Troops into the *Ukrain*, 182.
 — entertains his People with a humorous Wedding of one of his Jesters, 183, 184.
 — declares that he will not accept of the Mediation of any other, for the Peace of the North, than the King of *Great-Britain* and the States General, 193.
 — takes *Stralsund*, 194.
 — sets up a new Academy at *Petersburgh*, *ibid.*
 — receives Advice of the taking of *Rugen*, 197.
 — receives News of an Irruption made by the *Cubanski-Tartars* into the Kingdom of *Cassan*, 199.
 — goes into the *Lower-Saxony*, to meet the King of *Denmark*, 200.
 — sets out for *Germany*, 201.
 — attends the Marriage of his Niece to the

I N D E X:

- the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, at the City of *Dantzick*, 202.
 - Peter I.* has an Interview with the King of *Prussia* at *Stetin*, 204.
 - visits *Stralsund* and goes from thence into *Mecklenbourg*, 205.
 - has an Interview with the King of *Denmark* in the Gardens of *Ham* and *Horn*, 209.
 - leaves *Hambourg*, and crossing the *Elbe*, lyes at *Harburgh* in his Way to *Pyrmont*, *ibid.*
 - goes from *Pyrmont* to *Schwerin* in *Mecklenbourg*, and comes with the Czarina to *Rostock*, *ibid.*
 - commands the Fleet of four Nations, 210.
 - is nobly entertained at *Copenhagen*, 217.
 - leaves the Court of *Denmark*, and sets out with the Czarina for *Hambourg*; passes the Belt, and viewing *Tonningen* and *Frederickstadt*, proceeds to *Lubeck*, *ibid.*
 - has a private Interview with the King of *Prussia* at *Havelberg*, 218.
 - returns to *Hambourg* and continues some time at *Altena*, where
 - a Nephew of the famous *Mazeppa*, who was brought very young into the Party of *Sweden*, by his Uncle, comes to sue for his Pardon, and obtains it, the Czarina having promised to intercede for him, 219.
 - Peter I.* has a Sword set with Diamonds presented to him by the Magistracy of *Hambourg*, *ibid.*
 - arrives in *Holland*, 220.
 - visits several Places at *Amsterdam*, 223.
 - goes with the Czarina to the *Hague*, *ibid.*
 - arrives at *Paris*, 237.
 - receives Visits from, and returns them to the Duke of *Orleans* and the young *French King*, 238.
 - goes to *Fontainebleau*, 239.
 - and, having viewed several other Places and Curiosities in *France*, comes to *Namure*, 245.
 - the politic Views he had in his Journey to *France*, 247.
 - concludes a Treaty of Friendship with that Court, *ibid.*
- Peter I.*

I N D E X.

- Peter I.* returns to *Holland* and has a private Interview with Baron *Gortz* at *Loo*, 248.
- arrives at *Berlin*, 249.
- arrives at *Dantzick*, *ibid.*
- makes an Agreement with that City, *ibid.* to 253.
- comes to *Petersburgh*, *ibid.*
- redresses Disorders committed in the State, during his Absence, and punishes the Authors of them, 254.
- makes several Regulations in his Affairs, 255.
- enquires into the Crimes of his Son *Alexis*, 260.
- resolves to punish him, *ibid.*
- publishes a Manifesto to satisfy every one of the Reasons of his Conduct in that delicate Affair, 261 to 270.
- holds a Grand Council at *Moscow* to receive the Confession of his Son and causes the Oath to be administered, that excluded him from the Succession to the Crown, *ibid.* 271.
- Peter I.* goes to *Petersburgh*, 278.
- where he views his Fleet which he intended to command in Person, *ibid.*
- Petersburgh*, forty thousand Hands employed in raising new Works in that City, 178.
- Petricow*, King *Augustus's* Abdication dated there, 21.
- Pfingsten*, *George Ernestus*, one of the King of *Poland's* Plenipotentiaries at the Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt*, deceives his Master, 9.
- is committed to Prison, 11.
- Piper*, Count, the King of *Sweden's* Prime Minister, while Prisoner in *Russia*, writes to his Master to make Peace, but has no Success in it, 2.
- attends the Czar's triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, among the other Prisoners taken at the Battle of *Pultowa*, 38.
- Pishkiesh*, among the *Turks*, a Present demanded of a tributary Prince when he first Enters upon his Government, 114.
- Poland*,

I N D E X.

- Poland*, Kings thereof take an Oath not to abdicate the Throne without Consent of the States, 19.
- Poland* Queen of, present at the Marriage of the *Czarewicz*, and the Princess of *Wolffembuttel*, 129.
- Poland*, Affairs of that Kingdom, 220 to 223.
- the *Grandeess* of, send a Deputation to congratulate the Czar on the Defeat of his Enemy, 30.
- and desire him to appoint Commissaries for their Affairs, 31.
- Poloczka*, the Velt-Marschal *Czeremetoff* arrives near that Place with 52,000 Men, 32.
- Pomerania*, King *Stanislaus* and General *Crafsau* retire to the Frontiers of that Country, on the News of the Defeat of the *Swedish* Army, 27.
- the Danger that was apprehended of the Czar's reducing that Country to his Obedience, 71.
- a large Body of Troops sent thither, under the Command of General *Baur*, 128.
- the Czar and *Czarina* and *Czarewicz* all come into that Country, 138.
- Pomerania*, the King of *Sweden*, designs to raise 25,000 Men there, 172.
- Poniatowski*, Count, what the Grand Vizier says to him, concerning the King of *Sweden*, his Master, 81.
- instigates the *Cham* of *Tartary* to take the Part of *Sweden* against the Czar at the *Porte*, 87.
- makes pressing Instances to hasten the Preparation of the *Turks*, 115.
- his Advice to the grand Vizier, to starve out the *Muscovites* on the Banks of the *Pruth*, 122.
- Potocky*, the Palatine, advances against the Czar with an Army gathered from all Nations, 112.
- obliged to return to *Turky*, 113.
- Prinsbuys*, the House at *Sardam*, where his Czarish Majesty lodged, in his first Journey to *Holland*, now honoured with that Name, 223.
- Prussia*, King of, meets the

I N D E X.

- the Czar at *Marienwer-*
der, 32.
 - Prussia*, a Treaty con-
cluded with him in
favour of his Nephew
the Duke of *Courland*,
ibid.
 - receives from and
returns a Visit to the
Czar at *Berlin*, 139.
 - King of, just then
succeeded to the Crown
of his Father has an
Interview with the
Czar, 157.
 - assembles his Forces
to secure *Stetin*, and
preserve the Peace of
Lower-Saxony, 172.
 - publishes a Mani-
festo concerning his
taking the *Swedish Po-*
merania in Sequestra-
tion, 184.
 - is Godfather to the
Czar's new born Son,
Peter Petrowitz, 196.
 - comes to *Stetin in-*
cognito, to confer with
the Czar upon the Si-
tuation of Affairs in
the North, 204.
 - has a private Inter-
view with the Czar
at *Havelberg*, 218.
 - Pruth*, the Action there,
122.
 - Puchkin*, M. de *Mussin*,
Privy-Counsellor, com-
pliments Mr. *Whit-*
worth at his Publick
Audience, 50.
 - Pulkona*, the Battle there,
159.
 - Pultowa*, the Prisoners
taken in the Battle
there, attend his Cza-
rish Majesty's trium-
phant Entry into *Mos-*
cow, 37.
- R.
- R** *Agotski*, Prince ,
comes to wait up-
on the Czar at *Elbing*,
130.
 - Renschild*, the Velt-Ma-
reschal, taken Prisoner
in the Battle of *Pul-*
towa, attends the Pro-
cession of his Czarish
Majesty's triumphant
Entry into *Moscow*, 38.
 - Repnin*, Prince, with o-
ther Generals, con-
ducts the *Russian*
Troops cross *Poland*,
95.
 - enters *Mecklenbourg*
with a Body of Troops,
209.
 - Revel*, taken by the *Mus-*
covites, 69.
 - the Czar comes thi-
ther, 131.
 - Czar goes from
thence to *Gotland*, 193.
 - Richlien*, Cardinal de, his
Tomb

I N D E X.

- Tomb much admired
by the Czar, 242.
- Riga*, ordered to be block-
ed up by the Czar, 26.
- bombarded, 36.
- surrenders, 63.
- their Czarish Ma-
jesties there, 201.
- Romanodoskewski*, Prince,
ordered to advance
with the Militia a-
gainst the *Tartars*,
96.
- Ronne*, General, the
Troops under him go
into *Livonia*, *Courland*,
and *Pomerania*, 137.
- Rose*, Major-General,
one of the *Swedish* Pri-
soners attends on the
Czar's Entry into *Mos-
cow*, 38.
- Rostock*, their Czarish Ma-
jesties come thither,
209.
- Rostoff*, Bishop of, tried,
and divested of the Ec-
clesiastical Habit, 275.
- Rottenbourg*, Count de,
Minister of *France*, in
Prussia, 189.
- Rotterdam*, the Czarina,
accompanies the Czar
thither, 237.
- Rubick Merza*, offers to
come with a Body of
Cuban-Tartars to do
Homage to the Czar,
100.
- Rugen*, the Island of, ta-
ken by the *Russians*,
197.
- S.
- Amara*, a Town on
the *Volga*, six thou-
sand *Swedish* Prisoners
brought from thence
to assist in the Works
at *Petersburgh*, 178.
- Sapiehas*, the Subjects of
Augustus forbid to join
them, 28, 29.
- Savari*, a Banker at *Ben-
der*, finds Means to get
a Letter from the King
of *Sweden* convey'd to
the Sultan's own Hands,
132.
- Saxon*, Ministers make
their Compliments to
the Czar on the Suc-
cess of his Arms, 30.
- Schaffiroff*, the Czar's Am-
bassador at the *Porte*
sent Prisoner to the
Seven Towers, 145.
- Schampavies*, flat Boats
so called, 164.
- Schlippenbach*, Major-Ge-
neral, taken Prisoner
in the Battle of *Pul-
towa*; graces the Czar's
triumphant Entry in-
to *Moscow*, 38.
- Scholten*, General, the
Czar has several Con-
ferences with him con-
cerning
- P

I N D E X.

- cerning the Operations of the Campaign, 149.
- Schonen*, the Czar and the King of *Denmark* agree to make a Descent there, 209.
- Schonhausen*, the Czar and King of *Prussia* have an Interview there, 157.
- Schrendo*, the Czar joins his Army there, 158.
- Schubajeff*, Colonel, Governor of *Wybourg*, ordered to march with a Detachment of his Garrison to attack *Ny-slot*, 163.
- Schwartz*, Colonel, beats a Party of the *Cuban-ski Tartars*, and takes the *Cham's Son* Prisoner, whom he hangs, 199.
- Sendomir*, the Confederacy of, takes fresh Courage hearing of the Battle of *Pultawa*, 3.
- Silesia*, the Czar there, 130.
- Siradia*, the Palentine of, joined the Enemies of the King his Master, 144.
- Sleswick*, the Duchy of, seized on by the King of *Denmark*, 151.
- Soltikoff*, M. *Basilis de*, the Czar's chief Carver attends Mr. *Whitworth* in his Publick Entry at *Moscow*, 49.
- Solyman Basha*, made Grand Vizier, 145.
- Sonnestein*, the Fortrefs of, *Imhoff* and *Pfingsten* committed to Prison there, 11.
- Sorbonne*, the Doctors of that House, at *Paris*, visited by the Czar, 242.
- Stackleberg*, Major-General, one of the *Swedish* Prisoners marches in the Procession at the Czar's triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, 38.
- Stanislaus Lescinsky*, and his Family, formerly much obliged by King *Augustus*, 5.
- retires on hearing of the Defeat of the *Swedish* Army, to the Frontiers of *Pomerania*, 27.
- the Design of the Czar to drive him quite out of *Poland*, 63.
- Stecknis*, the River, the Czar passes it, 148.
- Steinbock*, Count, makes a Sally from *Stralsund* with Success, 140.
- takes Possession of *Rostock*, and puts the whole Duchy of *Mecklembourg*, under Contribution, *ibid.*
- Steinbock*,

I N D E X.

Steinbock, his victorious
Army caught in a Net,
148.

— burns *Altena*, 149.

— Articles of a Treaty found among his Papers, relating to the Admission of the *Swedish* Troops into *Tonningen*, 152 to 156.

Stetin, blocked up by the Czar's Troops, 138.

— taken in Sequestration by the King of *Prussia*. 186.

— garrison'd with half *Holstein* and half *Prussian* Troops, 187.

Stockholm, the Czar intends to make a Descent there, 167.

— the Passages between that City and *Pomerania* shut up by the Czar, 193.

Stolpe, the Czar comes to that Place in his Way to *Stetin*, 204.

Stralsund, agreed to be besieged by the Czar and King of *Denmark*, 137.

— King of *Sweden* arrives there, 171.

— taken, 194.

Stromberg, General, the *Swedish* Governor in *Riga*, recalls the Troops from *Courland* to defend that City, 32, 33.

— seeing himself sur-

rounded by the Enemy, sets fire to the Suburbs and demolishes Fort *Kobber*, *ibid*.

Stromberg, General, publishes a Piece full of Complaints against the *Muscovites*, *ibid*, 34.

— which is answered by the *Muscovite* General, *ibid*, 35, 36.

Sundermania, fifteen thousand Men landed on that Coast, by the *Russian* Fleet, 193.

Sutton, Sir Robert, 138.

Szembeck, the Primate of *Poland*, and others, send Deputies to invite *Augustus* to re-ascend the Throne, 3.

T.

T *Agusinsky*, Adjutant General, sent to summon the *Swedish* Rear-Admiral to surrender to Admiral *Apraxin*, 166.

Taiganrog, the Works there and at *Azoph*, beginning to be demolished, 132.

Targau, the *Czarewitz* *Alexis* married there, 129.

Tartars, Cham of, bribed into the King of *Sweden*'s Interest, 82.

P 2 *Tartars*,

I N D E X.

- Tartars*, Cham of, takes that Prince's Part at the *Porte*, 86, 87.
- Ternocka*, a little Fort in the *Ukrain*, 112.
- Tesse*, Mareschal de, conducts the Czar to the *Old Louvre* in *Paris*, 237.
- Thern*, a Town in Royal *Prussia*, 29.
- the Czar meets *Augustus* there, 30.
- the Czar arrives there again, 130.
- Thoulouse*, Count de, accompanies the Czar a hunting, 239.
- Tolstey*, Count, the Czar's Envoy, his good Management at *Constantinople*, 81.
- protests against the Determination of the *Porte* with Respect to the Precedence given to the *French* Ambassador, 86.
- imprisoned with his whole Family in the *Edicul*, 97.
- Tonningen*, the young Duke of *Holstein* pressed to give Orders to the Commandant of that Place to receive the *Swedish* Troops there, in case of Distress, 150.
- Articles of a Treaty between the Duke Administrator of *Holstein* and General *Steinbock* on that Account, 152 to 156.
- Topsi-Bashaw*, the Master of the Ordnance among the *Turks*, 113.
- Tresmes*, Duke de, attends the Czar, 240.
- Trianon*, in *France*, the Czar goes thither, *ibid.*
- Tuilleries*, Czar walks there, 239.
- Turks*, Transactions with them, 81.
- declare War with the Czar, 91 to 95.
- invade the *Ukrain*, are driven out, and sue for Peace, 98.
- Articles of Peace with them, 124, 125.
- fresh Difference with them, 130.
- a new Treaty with them, 135.
- War declared with them again, 145.
- and Peace renew'd 146.
- Tycozin*, a Town in *Poland*, 13.

V.

- V** *Ander-Cruys*, Vice-Admiral, sent to *Azoph*, 95.
- Varignon*, the famous Geometrician at *Paris*, the Czar

I N D E X.

- Czar discourses freely with him, 241.
Varnitsa, positive Orders sent thither to the King of *Sweden*, to depart the Grand Signior's Dominions, 146.
Ucrainskaw, M. the Czar's Envoy at the *Porte*, concludes a thirty Years Peace, 100.
Versailles, the Czar goes thither from *Paris*, 204.
Villeroy, Mareschal de, accompanies the King of *France* to visit the Czar at the *Hotel de Lesdiguieres*, 238.
Vistula, the Czar sends Troops to take a Post on that River, 27.
 — the Czar coming down the *Vistula* is met by the King of *Prussia*, 32.
Ukrania, invaded by the *Turks*, 98.
 — the Cham of *Tartary* makes an Irruption into that Country, 112.
 — Part of the Czar's Troops sent thither, under the Command of *Czeremetoff*, 137.
 — the Czar sends fresh Troops thither, 182.
Ula, the Fortrefs of, surprized by Prince *Galliczin*, 194.
Ulueringhen, Messieurs *Kurakin* and *Tolstoy* the Czar's Ministers come to that Place the Moment King *George* is going on board, so that he could not speak to them, 233.
Volhinia, Part of the Czar's Troops there, 137.
Voltaire, Mons. de. the Reader referred to his Account of the Action of *Bender*, 147.
Usbeck-Tartars, 174.
Usedom, the Isle of, attacked by the King of *Sweden*, 189.
Utrecht, their Czarith Majesties go to view that Province, 246.
- W.
- W** *Alachia* Prince of, See *Brancevan*.
Wallace, Mr. an English Occulist at *Paris*, Czar goes to see an Operation of his, 243.
Warsaw, the Czar sends a thousand Dragoons towards that City, 27.
 — King *Augustus* holds a Diet there, 62.
Wartemberg, Count, attends the Czar at his Entry into *Marienwerder*, 32.
Wenceslaus

I N D E X.

- Wenceslaus de Wratislaw*, Emperor of Germany's Minister, adjusts the Differences between his Master and the King of Sweden, 11.
- Wessellowski*, M. the Czar's Minister in Great-Britain, his Memorial, 224, to 231.
- answered, 232, to 237.
- Whitworth*, Mr. appointed Ambassador Extraordinary, to deliver the Queen of Great-Britain's Letter to the Czar, to make Excuse for the Affront offered to his Ambassador, 49.
- his publick Entry into Moscow, *ibid*, 50.
- his Audience of the Czar, *ibid*.
- his Speech, 51.
- reads the Queen of Great-Britain's Letter to the Czar, 53.
- has a Conference at the House of Count Gollowin, with him and other Ministers, in which the Business of the Affront done to the Russian Ambassador at London is terminated, 59.
- Wiesnowisky*, Prince, the Czar threatens all the Poles who join with that Traitor to his Prince, 28.
- Wiesnowisky*, the Grandees of Poland desires the Czar to set him at Liberty, with others whom he had imprisoned, 31.
- Wilkins*, Counsellor Michael, his fine Pleasure-House near Hambourg fitted up for the Reception of the King of Denmark, 208.
- Wismar* besieged, 205.
- surrenders, and the Articles of Capitulation, *ibid* to 207.
- Wolchinsky*, Prince of, Governor of Arch-Angel, shot to Death, 254.
- Wolcofz*, Brigadier, 165.
- Wolsebutt*, the Princess of, a Treaty of Marriage between her and the Czarewitz, 62.
- Wolgast*, the King of Sweden dislodges the Prussian Garrison from that Town, 189.
- Wolno* in the Ukraïn, 112.
- Wolokonski*, Major-General, at the Battle of Pulkona, 160.
- has the Knout given him, 180.
- Woznicni*, M. the Czar's Minister at Constantinople,

I N D E X.

ple, concludes a two
Years Truce with the
Turks, 100.
Wybourg, the Capital of
Swedish Carelia, besieged
and taken, 63.

Z.

Z Aporengian - Tartars,
some of them robb'd
certain Grecian Mer-

chants, and the Czar
causes the Loss to be
made good out of his
own Treasury, 100, 101.
Zeeland, the Czar passes
thro' it in his Way to
Antwerp, 237.
Zutphen, Baron Gortz, has
several Conferences
with the Swedish Re-
sident there, 248:

E R R A T A.

P A G E 10. Line 19. for *be*, read *we*. p. 26.
l. 27. for *comamand*, r. *command*. p. 66. l. 24.
for *Brois* r. *Boris*. p. 84. l. 4. for *Proportions*, r. *Pro-*
positions. p. 89. l. 14. for *ot*, r. *to*. p. 93. l. 17.
for *falicious*, r. *falacious*. p. *ibid.* l. 35. for *Treasury*,
r. *Treachery*. p. 149. l. 6. for *Strade*, r. *Stade*. p.
ibid. l. 10. for *Prussian*, r. *Russian*.

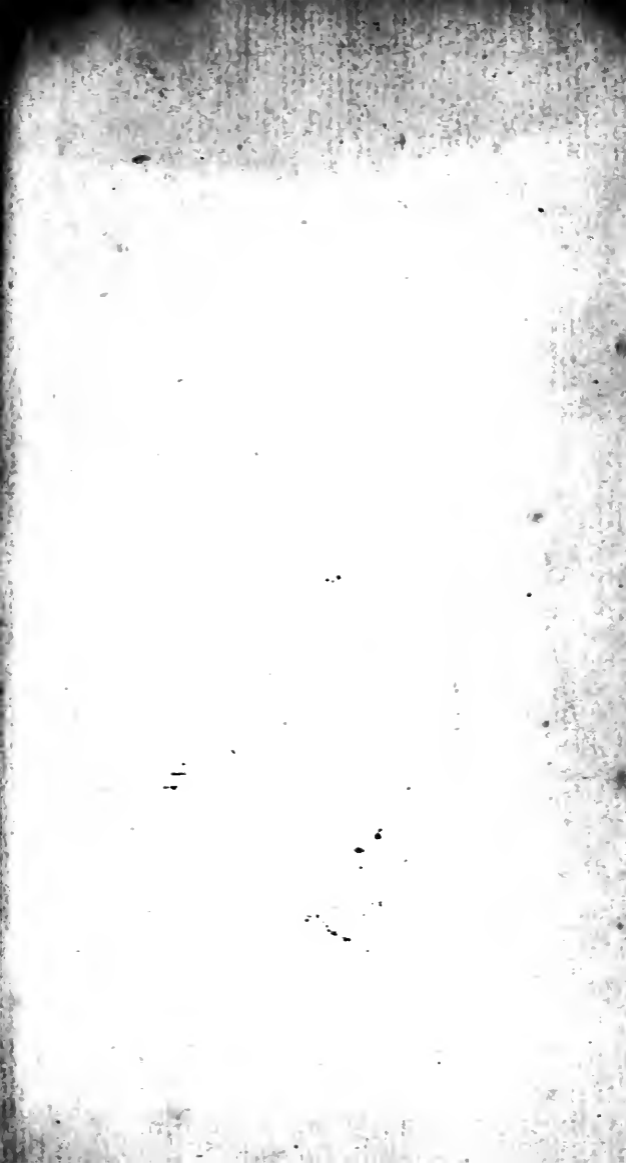
THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION
455 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK, N. Y.
10018

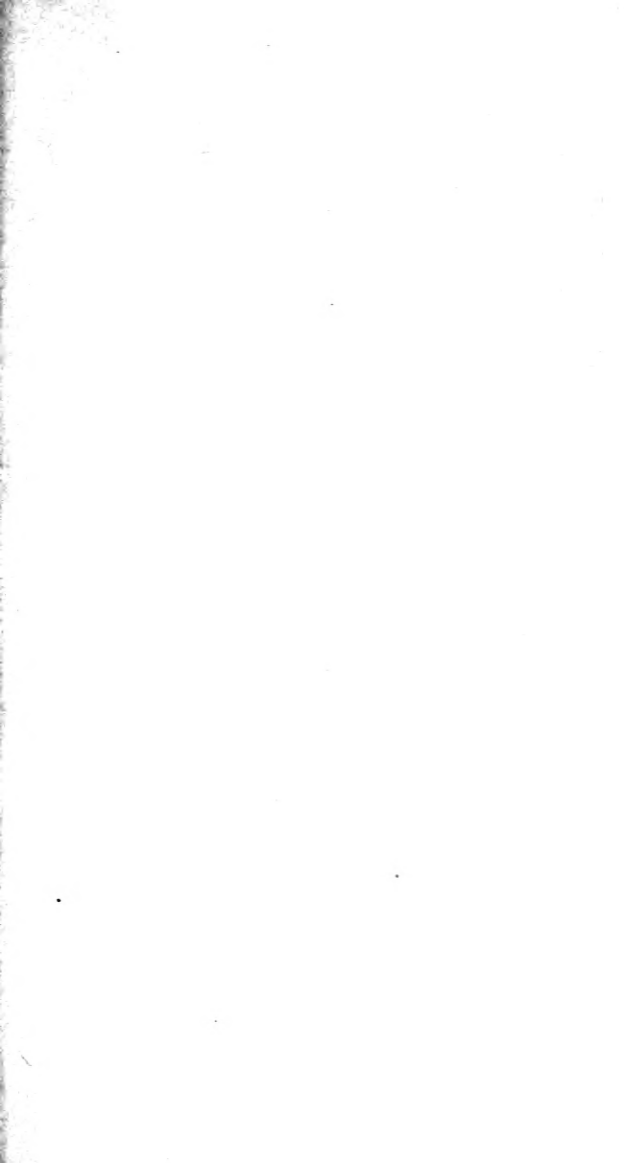
NEW YORK

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

7









FL 2-3-40

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

**Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED**

